

PC 2109

.P43

1815

Copy 1



Class PC 2109

Book P 43

1815











# GRAMMAR

OF THE

## FRENCH TONGUE,

GROUNDLED UPON THE DECISIONS

OF

### THE FRENCH ACADEMY;

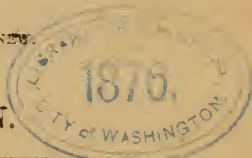
WHEREIN ALL THE NECESSARY

### RULES, OBSERVATIONS, AND EXAMPLES,

ARE

EXHIBITED IN A MANNER ENTIRELY NEW.

~~~~~  
BY JOHN PERRIN.




---

---

*Necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus.*

QUINTIL.

---

---

THE FIFTEENTH EDITION,

CAREFULLY REVISED

BY C. GROS.

EDITOR OF MR. PERRIN'S OTHER

71 LO

PC 2109

P43.

1815

## MILORD LYTTELTON.

MONSEIGNEUR,

**E**N dédiant cet ouvrage à VOTRE GRAND-DEUR, je ne débiterai pas par le panegyrique de la noblesse de votre naissance, et de votre rang : la flatterie ayant épuisé toutes les nouvelles manières de louer les Grands, la seule qui me reste pour célébrer vos qualités personnelles, c'est d'oser les passer sous silence.

Je laisse à votre Patrie la gloire d'applaudir l'homme d'Etat, le Conseiller privé de Sa Majesté, l'ornement de la Société Royale, le Lord qui s'occupe à l'enrichir de monumens plus durables que le marbre. Qu'il me soit permis d'admirer l'Historien, l'Auteur, l'Homme de Lettres. Oui, MONSEIGNEUR, l'Angleterre vous doit les recherches historiques les plus curieuses et les plus exactes. La force et la richesse de la langue Angloise paroissent dans tous vos écrits : Vous faites plus, MONSEIGNEUR, vous l'embellissez.

Tous les talens littéraires sont rehaussés en VOTRE GRANDEUR, par la protection qu'elle accorde aux Sciences et aux Arts. Le plus grand plaisir pour l'homme de Lettres, est d'encourager tout ce qui peut contribuer à la littérature ; c'est le caractère distinctif du grand homme ; c'est le vôtre, MONSEIGNEUR, qui ne recherchez pas les louanges, et qui faites tout ce qu'il faut pour les mériter.

Il ne m'auroit donc pas été facile de trouver un autre Mécène aussi célèbre par la supériorité reconnue de son esprit, pour lui présenter cet ouvrage, comme à un Juge éclairé et judicieux, qui connoît toutes les beautés réelles de la langue François, et dont l'approbation entraîne naturellement celle du public : mon ambition sera toujours de mériter la vôtre, et d'être avec le plus profond respect,

MONSEIGNEUR,

DE VOTRE GRANDEUR,

Le très-humble et très-obéissant Serviteur,

PERRIN.

## PREFACE.

---

**G**RAMMAR is universally allowed to be an object of extensive utility as the foundation of the Arts and Sciences, and a key to languages in general. An excellent production of this kind was the first work of the late FRENCH ACADEMY, who spared no pains to polish and improve their native language, and advance it as near as possible to a state of purity and perfection.

I am not insensible, that several authors consider it as an essential part of their prefaces to their respective works, to represent their own performances in the brightest colours, and treat those of others with the greatest severity; but I rather choose to give, on this occasion, a short analytical account of the present undertaking, and then humbly submit the whole to the candid and impartial opinion of the Public.

Having divided my Grammar into four parts, after a few preliminary observations, I begin the first with the French simple sounds, to which are subjoined all the sounds of the consonants; and I am fully convinced, that any pupil will acquire the genuine French accent with more ease and expedition, by repeating those invariable sounds with the assistance of a good master, than by the common tiresome rules of pronunciation, which, being grounded on nothing but arbitrary custom, are liable to all its changes and alterations.

The sounds of the French language are followed by an alphabetical list of many French adjectives, each agreeing in gender and number with a dif-



ferent substantive, to illustrate it's meaning. Another collection of adjectives, with the manner of placing them before or after their substantives, and their signification in either case, is likewise exhibited, which cannot fail of contributing towards the scholar's improvement.

The second part begins with a short analysis of the parts of speech, which will enable the pupil to form an idea of the nature and construction of the Grammars of other languages, as well as of that of the French Tongue: and the two chapters, showing the formation of the feminine gender of adjectives according to the termination, and that of the plural number of nouns, place these subjects in a new light, and are adapted to the meanest capacities.

As the verb is one of the principal parts of speech, it should always be considered as a primary object in all grammatical works: yet all grammars are defective in this point, though of the utmost importance. In order to do it all the justice in my power, I have fully conjugated, both in French and English, six regular verbs; and all those that are irregular, in an alphabetical manner. These are followed by particular observations upon defective verbs, and the manner of conjugating them.

The third part contains the theory and practice of the French language; the former comprehending the rules of syntax, with many new observations, illustrated by proper examples; and the latter giving separate and distinct exemplifications of the rules and observations of each part of speech, for the scholar's improvement.

Precepts and practice, rules and examples, must go hand in hand, to impart a thorough knowledge of any tongue whatever. As to the French language, the only way for the pupil to learn it to any valuable purpose is, to lay a good foundation, by becoming well acquainted with it's rules, and then to read proper books, or converse with those who speak it in it's



purity ; but neither reading nor conversation will ever enable him to speak or write it with propriety and elegance, if he be wholly unacquainted with it's fundamental principles.

In the fourth part are exhibited the practical irregularities of the French Tongue, alphabetically disposed, with the appropriate uses of particular words and phrases, warranted by the most approved authors, and especially by the decisions of the FRENCH ACADEMY. It is needless to point out the great utility of these important articles to those who have made a considerable progress in the language, since they manifestly contain the most elegant and curious of all the French idioms ; some of the rest are interspersed among the rules and observations exemplified in the third part of this work : and, to render the present undertaking more beneficial, I have in every part of it, and particularly in the conjugation of the verbs, not only in the orthography, but in other respects, had a due regard to the regulations of the ACADEMY.

Thus I have given a short account of my grammatical performance, which is far from being an easy task. A Grammar for the use of schools consists of such a variety of parts, and some of them so minute and intricate, that it is a very difficult matter to render it at once concise and comprehensive, and adapt it to the meanest capacities. The subject, perhaps may be deemed low and vulgar ; but *Virgil* observes, that there is *in tenui labor* ; that such subjects require pains and application. *Quintilian* also assures us, that such works *plus habent operis quàm ostentationis* ; that they are laborious, though not splendid, productions.

General utility was the object I principally regarded in the execution of my design. I have omitted no necessary rules or observations ; those that I have inserted are just, and illustrated by proper examples ; while, at the same time, I have had

brevity in view, as far as it could be pursued without obscurity and confusion. But, though I have taken all the care in my power to render the following sheets correct, I make no doubt, that unavoidable errors have escaped my utmost attention; for my own experience confirms the truth of what Mr. *Pope* asserts in the following words :

“ Whoever thinks a faultless piece to see,  
 “ Thinks what ne’er was, nor is, nor e’er shall be.”

However, if, upon a candid and impartial examination, the present should be found a well-conducted undertaking, I am not without hopes, that my involuntary errors will be favoured with the reader’s indulgence; which *Horace* represents as a reasonable practice, in these lines :

*Verùm ubi plura nitent——, non ego paucis  
 Offendar maculis, quas aut incuria fudit,  
 Aut humana parùm cavit natura.*

---

N.B. In this edition the less essential rules are printed in a smaller type than the more important, that the Scholar may perceive what he ought chiefly to consider and learn, leaving the minuter observations to a farther inquiry ; the Definitions have been somewhat altered, in order to attain greater perspicuity : and the Practical Examples have been numbered, so as to refer to the Rules, and to the Author’s Book of Exercises, both of which are numbered in like manner.

# CONTENTS.

---

|                                                                                                                                                           | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <i>PRELIMINARY Observations</i>                                                                                                                           | 1    |
| PART I.                                                                                                                                                   |      |
| CHAP. I.                                                                                                                                                  |      |
| <i>Of Pronunciation</i>                                                                                                                                   | 3    |
| CHAP. II.                                                                                                                                                 |      |
| <i>The Sounds of the Consonants</i>                                                                                                                       | 5    |
| CHAP. III.                                                                                                                                                |      |
| <i>An Alphabetical List of many of the French Adjectives, each agreeing in Gender and Number with a different Substantive, to illustrate it's Meaning</i> | 7    |
| CHAP. IV.                                                                                                                                                 |      |
| <i>A List of Adjectives, with the Manner of their being placed before or after their Substantives, and their Signification in either case</i>             | 23   |
| CHAP. V.                                                                                                                                                  |      |
| <i>Of the marks and Points used in writing French</i>                                                                                                     | 26   |
| CHAP. VI.                                                                                                                                                 |      |
| <i>Of Accents made use of in writing French</i>                                                                                                           | 27   |
| <i>A Vocabulary, French and English</i>                                                                                                                   | 31   |
| <i>Familiar and easy Dialogues for young Beginners</i>                                                                                                    | 37   |
| PART II.                                                                                                                                                  |      |
| CHAP. I.                                                                                                                                                  |      |
| <i>A short Analysis of the Parts of Speech</i>                                                                                                            | 51   |
| CHAP. II.                                                                                                                                                 |      |
| <i>Of Genders</i>                                                                                                                                         | 56   |
| CHAP. III.                                                                                                                                                |      |
| <i>Of the Formation of the Feminine Gender of Adjectives</i>                                                                                              | 60   |

## CHAP. IV.

|                                         |   |   |    |
|-----------------------------------------|---|---|----|
| <i>Of the Formation of Plural Nouns</i> | - | - | 61 |
|-----------------------------------------|---|---|----|

## CHAP. V.

|                                |   |   |    |
|--------------------------------|---|---|----|
| <i>The Declension of Nouns</i> | - | - | 62 |
|--------------------------------|---|---|----|

## CHAP. VI.

|                                             |   |   |     |
|---------------------------------------------|---|---|-----|
| <i>Of Pronouns</i>                          | - | - | 66  |
| SECT. I. <i>Of Personal Pronouns</i>        | - | - | ib. |
| SECT. II. <i>Of Possessive Pronouns</i>     | - | - | 68  |
| SECT. III. <i>Of Demonstrative Pronouns</i> | - | - | 69  |
| SECT. IV. <i>Of Relative Pronouns</i>       | - | - | 70  |
| SECT. V. <i>Of Interrogative Pronouns</i>   | - | - | ib. |
| SECT. VI. <i>Of Indefinite Pronouns</i>     | - | - | 71  |

## CHAP. VII.

|                                                                                                                                         |   |   |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|-----|
| <i>Of Verbs</i>                                                                                                                         | - | - | 72  |
| <i>Preliminary Observations</i>                                                                                                         | - | - | ib. |
| <i>Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs</i>                                                                                               | - | - | 73  |
| <i>Conjugation of the Regular Verbs</i>                                                                                                 | - | - | 77  |
| <i>Termination of the Primitive Tenses of the regular Verbs</i>                                                                         | - | - | ib. |
| <i>Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs, alphabetically</i>                                                                               | - | - | 88  |
| <i>Particular Observations upon some Verbs, chiefly defective, and their Manner of being conjugated and used, in Alphabetical Order</i> | - | - | 142 |

## PART III.

## CHAP. I.

|                                                                                        |   |   |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|-----|
| <i>Theory joined to Practice</i>                                                       | - | - | 147 |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon the Articles</i>                                        | - | - | ib. |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon the Articles exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> | - | - | 151 |

## CHAP. II.

|                                                                                  |   |   |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|-----|
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Nouns</i>                                         | - | - | 159 |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Nouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.</i> | - | - | 161 |

## CHAP. III.

|                                             |   |   |     |
|---------------------------------------------|---|---|-----|
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Pronouns</i> | - | - | 166 |
|---------------------------------------------|---|---|-----|



# CONTENTS.

xi

|                                                                          | PAGE |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| SECT. I. <i>Personal Pronouns</i> - -                                    | 166  |
| <i>Personal Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - -      | 171  |
| SECT. II. <i>Possessive Pronouns</i> - -                                 | 176  |
| <i>Possessive Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - -    | 178  |
| SECT. III. <i>Demonstrative Pronouns</i> - -                             | 182  |
| <i>Démonstrative Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - - | 183  |
| SECT. IV. <i>Relative Pronouns</i> - -                                   | 186  |
| <i>Relative Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - -      | 188  |
| SECT. V. <i>Interrogative Pronouns</i> - -                               | 191  |
| <i>Interrogative Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - - | 192  |
| SECT. VI. <i>Indefinite or Indeterminate Pronouns</i>                    | 194  |
| <i>Indeterminate Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - - | 199  |
| SECT. VII. <i>The Supplying Pronouns le, en, y</i>                       | 208  |
| <i>Supplying Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - -     | 209  |

## CHAP. IV.

|                                                                             |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>Rules and Observations upon the Degrees of Comparison</i> - -            | 212 |
| <i>The Degrees of Comparison exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - - | 216 |

## CHAP. V.

|                                                                           |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Verbs</i> - -                              | 222 |
| SECT. I. <i>The Use of Tenses</i> - -                                     | 224 |
| <i>The Tenses of Verbs exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - -     | 226 |
| SECT. II. <i>The Use of the Subjunctive Mood</i>                          | 231 |
| <i>The Subjunctive Mood exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - -    | 234 |
| SECT. III. <i>The Government of Verbs</i> - -                             | 240 |
| <i>The Government of Verbs exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i> - - | 243 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | PAGE |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| CHAP. VI.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Impersonal Verbs</i>                                                                                                                                                                                    | 249  |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Impersonal Verbs exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i>                                                                                                                                             | 252  |
| CHAP. VII.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |      |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon the Participles</i>                                                                                                                                                                                     | 255  |
| SECT. I. <i>The Active or Present Participle</i>                                                                                                                                                                                       | ib.  |
| SECT. II. <i>The Passive or Past Participle</i>                                                                                                                                                                                        | 259  |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Participles exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i>                                                                                                                                                  | 260  |
| CHAP. VIII.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |      |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Adverbs</i>                                                                                                                                                                                             | 265  |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Adverbs exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i>                                                                                                                                                      | 267  |
| CHAP. IX.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Prepositions</i>                                                                                                                                                                                        | 276  |
| <i>Remarks upon some Prepositions</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 276  |
| <i>Further Remark upon the Prepositions à and de</i>                                                                                                                                                                                   | 281  |
| <i>Rules and Observations upon Prepositions exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i>                                                                                                                                                 | 282  |
| CHAP. X;                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
| <i>Observations upon the Conjunctions si and que</i>                                                                                                                                                                                   | 293  |
| <i>The Conjunctions que exemplified for the Scholar's Practice</i>                                                                                                                                                                     | 294  |
| PART IV.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
| <i>Practical Irregularities of the French Tongue alphabetically disposed, with the appropriate Uses of particular Words and Phrases, warranted by the most approved Authors, and especially by the Decisions of the FRENCH ACADEMY</i> | 299  |

# GRAMMAR

## OF THE

### FRENCH TONGUE.

---

#### PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

**G**RAMMAR is a collection of observations, to which the manner of speaking or writing, used in a language, may be reduced.

This definition explains the nature of Grammar in general, and agrees both with the dead and living languages. However, to have a clear and exact idea of the FRENCH GRAMMAR, we may define it in the following manner :

The FRENCH GRAMMAR is a collection of observations drawn from approved custom, to which the manner of speaking or writing French may be reduced.

First, *The French Grammar is a collection of observations, established only by accident or fancy, independent of reason, like fashion in dress.* For a language is nothing more than the manner wherein a certain number of men have insensibly agreed to express their thoughts to each other.

Secondly, *Drawn from approved Custom,* which is the actual manner of speaking or writing used by the majority of persons eminent for wit and learning.

Thirdly, *To these observations the manner of speaking or writing French may be reduced:* for, as we convey our ideas not only by speech, but likewise by writing, so the manner of speaking or writing French is to be reduced to observations drawn from approved custom.

PRONUNCIATION is the manner of expressing by speech the several sounds of a language, agreeably to the most approved custom.

## THE ALPHABET.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O,  
P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r,  
s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

## THE VOWELS,

As they are pronounced in spelling,

a, é, i, o, u.

## ANOTHER SCALE.

a, e, é, è, i, o, u, ou.

The scale of vowels or simple sounds may be increased; for there are in French several other simple sounds, which are commonly represented by two letters, as by *eu* in *heureux*, *peureux*.

## THE CONSONANTS.

b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t,  
v, x, z.

The above characters may be pronounced according to the English way, by annexing to them any vowel either before or after.



## PART I.

## CHAP. I.

*Of Pronunciation.*

**I**N order to give a just and exact idea of the pronunciation of a language, it is principally necessary to distinguish, as clearly as possible, all the different sounds used in the language, without any regard to the letters made use of to express those sounds; because a language, as FRENCH, ENGLISH, &c., may express different sounds by the same characters, and the same sounds by different characters.

*The seventeen French simple Sounds, with the English Words in which the same Sounds are found.*

|     |                   |                  |                         |
|-----|-------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1.  | a short,          | sounded as a in  | bat                     |
| 2.  | a long,           | a                | all                     |
| 3.  | e                 | e                | battery                 |
| 4.  | é acute,          | a                | paper                   |
| 5.  | è grave.          | e                | met                     |
| 6.  | ê circumflex,     | e                | there                   |
| 7.  | i short or long,  | i                | big                     |
| 8.  | o short,          | o                | pot                     |
| 9.  | o long,           | o                | bone                    |
| 10. | u short or long,  | no similar sound |                         |
| 11. | eu short,         | u                | tub                     |
| 12. | eu long,          | no similar sound |                         |
| 13. | ou short or long, | o                | who                     |
| 14. | an                | }                | no exact similar sound. |
| 15. | in                |                  |                         |
| 16. | on                |                  |                         |
| 17. | un                |                  |                         |

In the above table of the French Sounds, there are six that cannot be exactly represented, and therefore must be heard from the master. Nevertheless, an idea may be given of their pronunciation, by the following observations.

To pronounce the tenth sound *u*, pronounce first *e*, as in English; and then, without the least change in the position of your organs, but simply closing the lips a little, you articulate the sound *u*.

The twelfth sound *eu* long, is pronounced by the same motion of the organs as the French *u*, only not closing so much the lips.

The four last sounds, which are called the *nasal* vowels, have this peculiarity, that the *n* is not heard at all; otherwise they should be sounded, *en* as *en* in the English word *encore*; *in* as *en*, in *entire*; *on* as *on*, in *bond*; and *un* as *un*, in *bunch*.

Several of these simple sounds may be combined together, and form in one syllable, a compound sound, called a diphthong.

The seventh sound *i* coalescing with the first, the fourth, the fifth, the eighth, the tenth, the eleventh, the thirteenth, the fourteenth, the fifteenth and the sixteenth, forms the diphthongs *ia*, *ié*, *iè*, *io*, *iu*, *ieu*, *jou*, *ian*, *ien* and *ion*, as in *fiacre*, hackney-coach; *amitié*, friendship; *bière*, beer; *violon*, violin; *relure*, binding; *mieux*, better; *chiourme*, galley's crew; *viande*, meat; *chrétien*, christian; and *passion*, passion.

The seventh sound *o* coalescing with the second, the fifth, and the fifteenth, forms the diphthongs *ôé*\*, *oi*\*, and *oin*, as *boîte*, box; *voisin*, neighbour; and *besoin*, want.

The tenth sound *u* coalescing with the first, the fourth, the fifth, the seventh, the eighth, the eleventh, the twelfth, the fourteenth, the fifteenth, and the sixteenth, forms the diphthongs *ua*, *ué*, *uè*, *ui*, *uo*, *ueu* short, *ueu* long, *uan*, *uin*, and *uon*, as *nuage*, cloud; *dénué*, stript; *menuet*, minuet; *buisson*, bush; *impétuosité*, impetuosity; *lueur*, glimmering;

\* In these two diphthongs, *é* and *i* lose their natural sound, to take *é* that of *a* long, and *i* that of *e* grave.

*majestueux*, majestic; *nuance*, shade; *Juin*, June; and *nous tuons*, we kill.

The thirteenth sound *ou* coalescing with the first, the fourth, the fifth, the seventh, the eleventh, the twelfth, the fourteenth, the fifteenth, and the sixteenth, forms the diphthongs *oua*, *oué*, *ouè*, *oui*, *oueu*, short, *oueu* long, *ouan*, *quin*, and *ouon*, as *ronage*, wheelwork; *déjoué* frustrated; *fouetter*, to whip; *cambouis*, coom; *boueur*, dustman; *nouveux*, knotty; *louange*, praise; *babouin*, baboon, and *nous jouons*, we play.

N. B. The greatest part of the seventeen simple French sounds may be represented by a coalition of other letters, for which see my PRACTICE OF THE FRENCH PRONUNCIATION.

## CHAP. II.

### *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

#### Sounds.

|     |      |    |                                   |
|-----|------|----|-----------------------------------|
| B   | has. | 1  | b, bouquet, a nosegay             |
|     |      | 3  | k, coffre, a trunk                |
| C,  |      |    | s, cierge, a wax-candle           |
|     |      |    | g, second, second                 |
| Ch. |      | 2  | sh, (English) chocolat, chocolate |
|     |      |    | k, écho, echo                     |
| D,  |      | 2  | d, donner, to give                |
|     |      | t, | que vend-il? what does he sell?   |
| F,  |      | 2  | f, vif, quick.                    |
|     |      | v, | neuf hommes, nine men             |
|     |      | 2  | 3                                 |

# 6 A GRAMMAR OF THE

## Sounds.

|                                   |    |                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| G,                                | 3  | g, gazon, <i>turf</i><br>j, géant, <i>a giant</i><br>k, bourg, <i>a borough</i><br>dignité, <i>dignity</i><br>stagnation, <i>stagnation</i>                                 |
| Gn, liquid,<br>not liquid,        |    |                                                                                                                                                                             |
| H, pronounced,<br>not pronounced, |    | héros, <i>a hero</i><br>héroïne, <i>a heroine</i>                                                                                                                           |
| L, liquid<br>not liquid,          |    | filles, <i>a girl</i><br>fil, <i>thread</i>                                                                                                                                 |
| M,                                | 2  | m, mon, <i>my</i><br>n, non, <i>a name</i><br>chien, <i>a dog</i><br>bien aise, <i>very glad</i>                                                                            |
| N, nasal,<br>not nasal,           |    |                                                                                                                                                                             |
| P,                                | 1  | précepteur, <i>a preceptor</i>                                                                                                                                              |
| Q, followed by u,                 | k, | quatre, <i>four</i>                                                                                                                                                         |
| R,                                | 1  | miroir, <i>a looking glass</i>                                                                                                                                              |
| S,                                | 2  | s, sage, <i>wise</i><br>z, rose, <i>a rose</i>                                                                                                                              |
| T,                                | 2  | t, amitié, <i>friendship.</i><br>s, patience, <i>patience</i>                                                                                                               |
| V,                                | 1  | vertu, <i>virtue</i>                                                                                                                                                        |
| X,                                | 4  | ks, sexe, <i>sex</i><br>gz, exemple, <i>an example</i><br>ss, soixante, <i>sixty</i><br>z, dixième, <i>the tenth, or</i><br>dix, <i>ten, followed by a</i><br><i>vowel.</i> |

All these sounds are exemplified by more words ranged in their respective classes, in my PRACTICE OF THE FRENCH PRONUNCIATION ALPHABETICALLY EXHIBITED, where you may find words in which such letters are either pronounced, or not pronounced.

## CHAP. III.

*An Alphabetical List of many of the French Adjectives, each agreeing in Gender and Number with a different Substantive to illustrate its meaning.*

Obs. Those adjectives marked thus † are generally placed before their Substantives.

| Adjectives.      | Gender of | Substantives.                                    |
|------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b> BJECTE, | F         | condition, <i>an abject condition</i>            |
| abominable,      | M         | crime, <i>an abominable crime</i>                |
| académique,      | M         | exercice, <i>an academical exercise</i>          |
| acariâtre,       | F         | humeur, <i>a petulant temper</i>                 |
| admirable,       | F         | invention, <i>a wonderful invention</i>          |
| adverse,         | F         | partie, <i>an adverse party</i>                  |
| affable,         | F         | demoiselle, <i>an affable lady</i>               |
| affairé,         | M         | homme, <i>a busy man</i>                         |
| affectées,       | F         | manières, <i>affected manners</i>                |
| affirmatif,      | M         | ton, <i>a positive tone</i>                      |
| âgée,            | F         | veuve, <i>an elderly widow</i>                   |
| agréable,        | F         | surprise, <i>an agreeable surprise</i>           |
| agreste,         | M         | fruit, <i>wild fruit</i>                         |
| aigrette,        | F         | sauce, <i>a sourish sauce</i>                    |
| aimable,         | F         | filles, <i>a lovely girl</i>                     |
| aisé,            | M         | ouvrage, <i>an easy work</i>                     |
| alimentaire,     | F         | pension, <i>an alimony</i>                       |
| alizés,          | M         | vents, <i>trade-winds</i>                        |
| alphabétique,    | F         | liste, <i>alphabetical list</i>                  |
| altier,          | M         | homme, <i>a proud man</i>                        |
| ambiguë,         | F         | parole, <i>an ambiguous word</i>                 |
| ambitieux,       | M         | projet, <i>an ambitious project</i>              |
| amère,           | F         | boisson, <i>a bitter drink</i>                   |
| amortissable,    | F         | rente, <i>a redeemable rent</i>                  |
| amoureuse,       | F         | filles, <i>an amorous girl</i>                   |
| amphibologique,  | F         | expression, <i>an ambiguous expres-<br/>sion</i> |
| anatomique,      | F         | dissection, <i>an anatomical dissection</i>      |



| Adjectives.   | Gender of | Substantives.                                                      |
|---------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ‡ ancien,     | M         | ami, <i>an ancient friend</i>                                      |
| Anglicane,    | F         | église, <i>the church of England</i>                               |
| animales,     | F         | facultés, <i>the sensitive faculties</i>                           |
| annuelle,     | F         | pension, <i>a yearly pension</i>                                   |
| anodins,      | M         | remèdes, <i>anodyne remedies</i>                                   |
| anonyme,      | M         | livre, <i>an anonymous book</i>                                    |
| anséatique,   | F         | ville, <i>a hanse town</i>                                         |
| antique,      | M         | château, <i>an antique castle</i>                                  |
| appétissante, | F         | viande, <i>savoury meat</i>                                        |
| âpre,         | M         | fruit, <i>harsh fruit</i>                                          |
| aquilin,      | M         | nez, <i>an aquiline nose</i>                                       |
| arbitraire,   | M         | pouvoir, <i>an arbitrary power</i>                                 |
| argentine,    | F         | voix, <i>a clear voice</i>                                         |
| ardent,       | M         | charbon, <i>a burning coal</i>                                     |
| argilleuse,   | F         | terre, <i>clayey ground</i>                                        |
| aromatique,   | F         | herbe, <i>an aromatic herb</i>                                     |
| atrabilaire,  | M         | tempérament, <i>an atrabilarious or<br/>melancholy temperament</i> |
| artificieux,  | M         | détour, <i>an artful evasion</i>                                   |
| Attique,      | M         | sel, <i>pslite genteel raillery</i>                                |
| avantageux,   | M         | poste, <i>an advantageous post</i>                                 |
| aveugle,      | M         | cheval, <i>a blind horse</i>                                       |
| auriculaire,  | M         | témoin, <i>an ear-witness</i>                                      |
| austère,      | F         | mine, <i>an austere mien</i>                                       |
| authentique,  | F         | loi, <i>an authentic law</i>                                       |
| auxiliaire,   | M         | verbe, <i>an auxiliary verb</i>                                    |
| Bachique,     | F         | chanson, <i>a drinking song</i>                                    |
| badine,       | F         | humeur, <i>a wanton humour</i>                                     |
| bai,          | M         | cheval, <i>a bay horse</i>                                         |
| barbare,      | F         | action, <i>a barbarous action</i>                                  |
| basse,        | F         | chambre, <i>a ground room</i>                                      |
| ‡ beau,       | M         | tapis, <i>a fine carpet</i>                                        |
| bègue,        | M         | enfant, <i>a stammering child</i>                                  |
| belliqueuse,  | F         | nation, <i>a warlike nation</i>                                    |
| bienséante,   | F         | parole, <i>a decent word</i>                                       |
| bilieux,      | M         | tempérament, <i>a bilious constitution</i>                         |
| bissextile,   | F         | année, <i>the leap year</i>                                        |
| bitumineuse,  | F         | matière, <i>bituminous matter</i>                                  |

# FRENCH TONGUE.

9

## Adjectives.

## Gender of

## Substantives.

|            |   |                                   |
|------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| bizaarre,  | M | esprit, <i>a whimsical mind</i>   |
| blanchê,   | F | chemise, <i>a clean shirt</i>     |
| bleu,      | M | ruban, <i>a blue ribbon</i>       |
| blonds,    | M | cheveux, <i>light hair</i>        |
| boiteux,   | M | cheval, <i>a lame horse</i>       |
| † bon,     | M | vin, <i>good wine</i>             |
| borgne,    | F | femme, <i>a one-eyed woman</i>    |
| bossu,     | M | homme, <i>a crooked man</i>       |
| botanique, | M | jardin, <i>a botanical garden</i> |
| bourbeux,  | M | passage, <i>a muddy passage</i>   |
| bourru,    | M | air, <i>a morose countenance</i>  |
| brave,     | M | soldat, <i>a brave soldier</i>    |
| brillant,  | M | esprit, <i>shining wit</i>        |
| brûlant,   | M | soleil, <i>a burning sun</i>      |
| brune,     | F | couleur, <i>a brown colour</i>    |
| brute,     | F | pierre, <i>an unheaved stone</i>  |
| bruyante,  | F | compagnie, <i>a noisy company</i> |
| burlesque, | F | poésie, <i>burlesque poetry</i>   |

|               |   |                                         |
|---------------|---|-----------------------------------------|
| Calamiteux,   | M | temps, <i>a calamitous time</i>         |
| calleuse,     | F | peau, <i>a callous skin</i>             |
| calomnieux,   | M | rapport, <i>a slanderous report</i>     |
| candi,        | M | sucre, <i>sugar-candy</i>               |
| capable,      | M | maître, <i>an able master</i>           |
| capricieuse,  | F | femme, <i>a capricious woman</i>        |
| captieux,     | M | discours, <i>a captious discourse</i>   |
| casuelle,     | F | entreprise, <i>a casual undertaking</i> |
| catégorique,  | F | réponse, <i>a categorical answer</i>    |
| catholique,   | F | église, <i>the catholic church</i>      |
| cavalières,   | F | manières, <i>blunt manners</i>          |
| caverneuse,   | F | montagne, <i>a hollow mountain</i>      |
| caustique,    | M | emplâtre, <i>an escharotic plaster</i>  |
| célèbre,      | M | auteur, <i>a celebrated author</i>      |
| céleste,      | M | bleu, <i>sky-blue</i>                   |
| chatouilleux, | M | homme, <i>a ticklish man</i>            |
| chaud,        | M | temps, <i>hot weather</i>               |
| chaude,       | F | main, <i>a warm hand</i>                |
| chauve,       | F | tête, <i>a bold head</i>                |
| † chère,      | F | sœur, <i>dear sister</i>                |
| cher,         | M | chapeau, <i>a dear hat</i>              |

| Adjectives.     | Gender of | Substantives.                                              |
|-----------------|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| chimérique,     | M         | projet, <i>a chimerical project</i>                        |
| chirurgicale,   | F         | opération, <i>a surgical operation</i>                     |
| circonspecte,   | F         | conduite, <i> wary behaviour</i>                           |
| circulaire,     | F         | lettre, <i>a circular letter</i>                           |
| clair,          | M         | jour, <i>a clear day</i>                                   |
| colossale,      | F         | statue, <i>a colossal statue</i>                           |
| combustible,    | F         | matière, <i>combustible matter</i>                         |
| commode,        | F         | maison, <i>a convenient house</i>                          |
| commun,         | M         | prix, <i>a common price</i>                                |
| compacte,       | M         | corps, <i>a compact body</i>                               |
| complet,        | M         | traité, <i>a complete treatise</i>                         |
| confuse,        | F         | idée, <i>a confused idea.</i>                              |
| conjecturale,   | F         | connoissance, <i>conjectural knowledge</i>                 |
| conjugale,      | F         | fidélité, <i>conjugal fidelity</i>                         |
| conscientieux,  | M         | négociant, <i>a conscientious merchant</i>                 |
| considérable,   | M         | bien, <i>a considerable estate</i>                         |
| constant,       | M         | ami, <i>a constant friend</i>                              |
| contagieuse,    | F         | maladie, <i>a contagious disorder</i>                      |
| comptant,       | M         | argent, <i>ready money</i>                                 |
| continuel,      | M         | bruit, <i>a continual noise</i>                            |
| contraire,      | F         | résolution, <i>a contrary resolution</i>                   |
| contradictoire, | F         | nouvelle, <i>contradictory news</i>                        |
| convenable,     | M         | logement, <i>a convenient lodging</i>                      |
| cordiale,       | F         | liqueur, <i>a cordial liquor</i>                           |
| corporelle,     | F         | punition, <i>corporal punishment</i>                       |
| correct,        | M         | ouvrage, <i>a correct work</i>                             |
| cruel,          | M         | tourment, <i>a cruel torment</i>                           |
| curieux,        | M         | tableau, <i>a curious picture</i>                          |
| Dangereux,      | M         | passage, <i>a dangerous passage</i>                        |
| décent,         | M         | habillement, <i>a decent dress</i>                         |
| décisive,       | F         | sentence, <i>decisive sentence</i>                         |
| délicate,       | F         | viande, <i>dainty meat</i>                                 |
| délicieuse,     | F         | poire, <i>a delicious pear</i>                             |
| démonstrative,  | F         | preuve, <i>a demonstrative proof</i>                       |
| déraisonnable,  | F         | demande, <i>an unreasonable request</i>                    |
| ‡ dernière,     | F         | place, <i>the last place</i>                               |
| désagréable,    | F         | conversation, <i>disagreeable conver-</i><br><i>sation</i> |
| désastreux,     | M         | jour, <i>an ill-fated day</i>                              |



| Adjectives.     | Gender of | Substantives.                                  |
|-----------------|-----------|------------------------------------------------|
| désavantageuse, | F         | situation, <i>a disadvantageous situation</i>  |
| déshonnête,     | F         | parole, <i>an immodest word</i>                |
| désirable,      | M         | bien, <i>a desirable blessing</i>              |
| despotique,     | M         | pouvoir, <i>despotic power</i>                 |
| dévote,         | F         | femme, <i>a devout woman</i>                   |
| diffamatoire,   | M         | libelle, <i>a defamatory libel</i>             |
| difficile,      | F         | langue, <i>a difficult tongue</i>              |
| † digne,        | M         | magistrat, <i>a worthy magistrate</i>          |
| diligent,       | M         | écolier, <i>a diligent scholar</i>             |
| discret,        | M         | ami, <i>a discreet friend</i>                  |
| disgracieux,    | M         | état, <i>a disagreeable situation</i>          |
| dispendieuse,   | F         | guerre, <i>an expensive war</i>                |
| distinctive,    | F         | marque, <i>a distinctive mark</i>              |
| docte,          | M         | professeur, <i>a learned professor</i>         |
| dogmatique,     | M         | style, <i>a dogmatical style</i>               |
| dominicale,     | F         | oraison, <i>the Lord's prayer</i>              |
| douloureuse,    | F         | condition, <i>a grievous condition</i>         |
| douce,          | F         | odeur, <i>a sweet smelling odour</i>           |
| droite,         | F         | main, <i>the right hand</i>                    |
| dure,           | F         | Pierre, <i>a hard stone</i>                    |
| durable,        | F         | prospérité, <i>lasting prosperity</i>          |
| Ecclésiastique, | F         | dignité, <i>an ecclesiastical dignity</i>      |
| économe,        | M         | mari, <i>a saving husband</i>                  |
| effectif,       | M         | héritage, <i>a real estate</i>                 |
| efficace,       | M         | moyen, <i>an efficacious mean</i>              |
| efficiente,     | F         | cause, <i>an efficient cause</i>               |
| effroyable,     | M         | incendie, <i>a dreadful fire</i>               |
| élastique,      | M         | corps, <i>an elastic body</i>                  |
| élégant,        | M         | compliment, <i>an elegant compliment</i>       |
| emblématique,   | F         | figure, <i>an emblematical figure</i>          |
| émollient,      | M         | remède, <i>an emollient medicine</i>           |
| emphytéotique,  | M         | bail, <i>a long lease</i>                      |
| empirique,      | M         | médecin, <i>a quack doctor</i>                 |
| énergique,      | F         | demande, <i>an energetical petition</i>        |
| enfantin,       | M         | discours, <i>a childish discourse</i>          |
| énigmatique,    | F         | proposition, <i>an enigmatical proposition</i> |
| entière,        | F         | semaine, <i>a whole week.</i>                  |

| Adjectives.     | Gender of | Substantives.                              |
|-----------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------|
| envieux,        | M         | artisan, <i>an envious tradesman</i>       |
| épais,          | M         | nuage, <i>a thick cloud</i>                |
| épidémique,     | F         | maladie, <i>an epidemical disorder</i>     |
| épineux,        | M         | procès, <i>an intricate lawsuit</i>        |
| épiscopal,      | M         | palais, <i>a bishop's palace</i>           |
| épique,         | M         | poème, <i>an epic poem</i>                 |
| épistolaire,    | M         | style, <i>epistolary style</i>             |
| exclusif,       | M         | droit, <i>an exclusive right</i>           |
| expéditif,      | M         | commis, <i>an expeditious clerk</i>        |
| expert,         | M         | médecin, <i>an able physician</i>          |
| expressif,      | M         | mot, <i>an expressive word</i>             |
| exquis,         | M         | mets, <i>a dainty dish</i>                 |
| extérieure,     | F         | partie, <i>the exterior part</i>           |
| extraordinaire, | M         | événement, <i>an extraordinary event</i>   |
| extrême,        | F         | différence, <i>a very great difference</i> |
| Fabuleuse,      | F         | histoire, <i>a fabulous story</i>          |
| facile,         | F         | langue, <i>an easy language</i>            |
| fantastique,    | M         | projet, <i>a fantastical project</i>       |
| farineuse,      | F         | lâpre, <i>a white letter</i>               |
| fastidieuse,    | F         | société, <i>a fastidious society</i>       |
| fatal,          | M         | moment, <i>an unlucky moment</i>           |
| favorable,      | F         | occasion, <i>a favourable opportunity</i>  |
| favori,         | M         | plaisir, <i>a darling pleasure</i>         |
| † fausse,       | F         | nouvelle, <i>false news</i>                |
| ferme,          | M         | pilier, <i>a firm pillar</i>               |
| féroce,         | F         | bête, <i>a fierce beast</i>                |
| fertile,        | F         | province, <i>a fertile province</i>        |
| fidèle,         | M         | amant, <i>a faithful lover</i>             |
| fier,           | M         | homme, <i>a haughty man</i>                |
| figuratif,      | M         | sens, <i>a figurative sense</i>            |
| fixe,           | M         | prix, <i>a set price</i>                   |
| flasques,       | F         | joues, <i>flabby cheeks</i>                |
| flatteur,       | M         | courtisan, <i>a fawning courtier</i>       |
| † foible,       | F         | santé, <i>ill health</i>                   |
| fortuit,        | M         | cas, <i>a mere chance</i>                  |
| frais,          | M         | air, <i>cool air</i>                       |
| † franc,        | M         | arbitre, <i>free will</i>                  |
| Françoise,      | F         | mode, <i>a French fashion</i>              |
| frauduleux,     | M         | commerce, <i>a fraudulent trade</i>        |

## Adjectives.

## Gender of

## Substantives.

|               |   |                                                   |
|---------------|---|---------------------------------------------------|
| friand,       | M | pâté, <i>a dainty pye</i>                         |
| froid,        | M | temps, <i>cold weather</i>                        |
| frugale,      | F | vie, <i>a frugal life</i>                         |
| frivole,      | M | conte, <i>a frivolous story</i>                   |
| fruitier,     | M | arbre, <i>a fruit tree</i>                        |
| funèbre,      | F | oraison, <i>a funeral sermon</i>                  |
| funeste,      | F | aventure, <i>a fatal adventure</i>                |
| Galantes,     | F | manières, <i>genteel manners</i>                  |
| gauche,       | F | main, <i>the left hand</i>                        |
| généreux,     | M | maître, <i>a generous master</i>                  |
| géographique, | F | carte, <i>a map</i>                               |
| géométrique,  | F | démonstration, <i>a geometrical demonstration</i> |
| glorieuse,    | F | entreprise, <i>a glorious undertaking</i>         |
| Gothique,     | F | lettre, <i>black letter</i>                       |
| gracieux,     | M | compliment, <i>a handsome compliment</i>          |
| grammaticale, | F | règle, <i>a grammatical rule</i>                  |
| † grand,      | M | verger, <i>a large orchard</i>                    |
| gras,         | M | jambon, <i>a fat ham</i>                          |
| grave,        | F | démarche, <i>a grave gait</i>                     |
| grenu,        | M | épi, <i>a full ear of corn</i>                    |
| † gros,       | M | paquet, <i>a large bundle</i>                     |
| grotesques,   | F | figures, <i>grotesque figures</i>                 |
| guéable,      | F | rivière, <i>a fordable river</i>                  |
| guerrier,     | M | peuple, <i>a warlike people</i>                   |
| gutturale,    | F | lettre, <i>a guttural letter</i>                  |
| † Habile,     | M | ouvrier, <i>an able workman</i>                   |
| habituel,     | M | vice, <i>an habitual vice</i>                     |
| hagards,      | M | yeux, <i>steepe eyes</i>                          |
| haïssable,    | M | objet, <i>a hateful object</i>                    |
| hardie,       | F | entreprise, <i>a bold undertaking</i>             |
| harmonieuse,  | F | période, <i>a harmonious period</i>               |
| † haute,      | F | montagne, <i>a high mountain</i>                  |
| héroïque,     | F | action, <i>a heroic action</i>                    |
| honorifique,  | M | titre, <i>an honourable title</i>                 |
| humide,       | M | linge, <i>wet linen</i>                           |
| hypocrite,    | F | mine, <i>a hypocritical mien</i>                  |

| Adjectives.      | Gender of | Substantives.                                           |
|------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Illégitime,      | M         | pouvoir, <i>an illegal power</i>                        |
| illicite,        | M         | contrat, <i>an illegal contract</i>                     |
| illustre,        | F         | famille, <i>an illustrious family</i>                   |
| imaginaire,      | M         | bonheur, <i>imaginary happiness</i>                     |
| immémorial,      | M         | temps, <i>time immemorial</i>                           |
| immodérée,       | F         | passion, <i>an immoderate passion</i>                   |
| immodeste,       | F         | posture, <i>an immodest posture</i>                     |
| impardonnable,   | F         | faute, <i>an unpardonable fault</i>                     |
| imparfait,       | M         | ouvrage, <i>an imperfect work</i>                       |
| impénétrable,    | M         | secret, <i>an impenetrable secret</i>                   |
| imprenable,      | F         | ville, <i>an impregnable city</i>                       |
| impraticable,    | M         | chemin, <i>an impassable road</i>                       |
| impropre,        | M         | terme, <i>an improper term</i>                          |
| imprudent,       | M         | avis, <i>an imprudent advice</i>                        |
| impudente,       | F         | conversation, <i>a shameful conversa-<br/>tion</i>      |
| inaccessible,    | F         | montagne, <i>an inaccessible mountain</i>               |
| incomparable,    | F         | beauté, <i>an incomparable beauty</i>                   |
| inconstant,      | M         | amour, <i>inconstant love</i>                           |
| incontestable,   | F         | vérité, <i>an incontestible truth</i>                   |
| incorrigible,    | M         | garçon, <i>an incorrigible lad</i>                      |
| incroyable,      | F         | nouvelle, <i>incredible news</i>                        |
| incurable,       | F         | maladie, <i>an incurable sickness</i>                   |
| indigent,        | M         | auteur, <i>an indigent author</i>                       |
| indigeste,       | M         | manger, <i>indigestible victuals</i>                    |
| indisciplinable, | M         | écolier, <i>an unruly scholar</i>                       |
| indispensable,   | M         | devoir, <i>an indispensable duty</i>                    |
| indubitable,     | M         | succès, <i>undoubted success</i>                        |
| inépuisable,     | F         | source, <i>an inexhaustible source</i>                  |
| inévitabile,     | M         | nauffrage, <i>an unavoidable shipwreck</i>              |
| inféodée,        | F         | rente, <i>a rentcharge</i>                              |
| infinie,         | F         | obligation, <i>an infinite obligation</i>               |
| ingénieuse,      | F         | invention, <i>an ingenious invention</i>                |
| inhabitable,     | F         | maison, <i>an uninhabitable house</i>                   |
| inhumaine,       | F         | dureté, <i>inhuman rigour</i>                           |
| inimitable,      | M         | sculpteur, <i>an inimitable carver</i>                  |
| inintelligible,  | F         | proposition, <i>an unintelligible propo-<br/>sition</i> |
| inique,          | F         | action, <i>a wicked action</i>                          |



# FRENCH TONGUE.

| Adjectives.    | Gender of | Substantives.                                |
|----------------|-----------|----------------------------------------------|
| injurieuse,    | F         | parole, <i>an injurious expression</i>       |
| inquiet,       | M         | esprit, <i>an unquiet mind</i>               |
| insatiable,    | M         | appétit, <i>an unsatiable appetite</i>       |
| iusolvable,    | M         | débiteur, <i>an insolvent debtor</i>         |
| insoutenable,  | F         | opinion, <i>an unwarrantable opinion</i>     |
| intime,        | M         | ami, <i>an intimate friend</i>               |
| intrinsèque,   | F         | qualité, <i>an intrinsic quality</i>         |
| invalide,      | F         | convention, <i>an invalid agreement</i>      |
| invariable,    | F         | amitié, <i>an unchangeable friendship</i>    |
| inventive,     | F         | imagination, <i>an inventive imagination</i> |
| invincible,    | M         | courage, <i>an invincible courage</i>        |
| inviolable,    | M         | attachement, <i>an inviolable attachment</i> |
| inutile,       | M         | travail, <i>a useless labour</i>             |
| irrévocable,   | M         | arrêt, <i>an irrevocable decree</i>          |
| isabelle,      | M         | cheval, <i>a yellow dun horse</i>            |
| ‡ Jeune,       | F         | beauté, <i>a young beauty</i>                |
| + jolie,       | F         | demoiselle, <i>a handsome lady</i>           |
| joyeuse,       | F         | filie, <i>a merry girl</i>                   |
| Judaïque,      | F         | coutume, <i>a Jewish custom</i>              |
| judiciaire,    | F         | astrologie, <i>judicial astrology</i>        |
| judicieux,     | M         | philosophe, <i>a judicious philosopher</i>   |
| juridique,     | F         | conviction, <i>a legal conviction</i>        |
| juste,         | M         | jugement, <i>a just judgment</i>             |
| justificative, | F         | pièce, <i>a voucher</i>                      |
| Laborieux,     | M         | jardinier, <i>a laborious gardener</i>       |
| labourable     | F         | terre, <i>arable land</i>                    |
| laconique,     | M         | style, <i>a laconic style</i>                |
| ‡ laide,       | F         | figure, <i>an ugly face</i>                  |
| lamentable,    | M         | cri, <i>a lamentable shriek</i>              |
| languoureuse,  | F         | situation, <i>a languishing situation</i>    |
| languissante,  | F         | santé, <i>weak health</i>                    |
| large,         | F         | rue, <i>a broad street</i>                   |
| lascif,        | M         | désir, <i>a lascivious desire</i>            |
| lent,          | M         | pas, <i>a slow step</i>                      |
| licentieuse,   | F         | conduite, <i>a licentious conduct</i>        |
| licite,        | F         | vente, <i>a lawful sale</i>                  |

| Adjectives. | Gender of | Substantives.                            |
|-------------|-----------|------------------------------------------|
| limitrophe, | M         | pays, <i>a neighbouring country</i>      |
| liquide,    | F         | médecine, <i>liquid physic</i>           |
| littérale,  | F         | traduction, <i>a literal translation</i> |
| litigieux,  | M         | droit, <i>a disputable right</i>         |
| livide,     | M         | teint, <i>a livid complexion</i>         |
| ‡ long,     | M         | discours, <i>a long discourse</i>        |
| lourd,      | M         | paquet, <i>a heavy burden</i>            |
| lucratif,   | M         | métier, <i>a lucrative trade</i>         |
| lugubre,    | M         | spectacle, <i>a mournful spectacle</i>   |
| lyrique,    | F         | poésie, <i>lyric poetry</i>              |

|                |   |                                         |
|----------------|---|-----------------------------------------|
| Magique,       | M | art, <i>magic art</i>                   |
| magnétique,    | F | vertu, <i>magnetic virtue</i>           |
| majestueux,    | M | port, <i>a majestic carriage</i>        |
| maigre,        | M | mouton, <i>lean mutton</i>              |
| majuscule,     | F | lettre, <i>a capital letter</i>         |
| malencontreux, | M | moment, <i>an ominous moment</i>        |
| malingre,      | M | cheval, <i>a sickly horse</i>           |
| malicieuse,    | F | femme, <i>a malicious woman</i>         |
| malpropres,    | F | manchettes, <i>dirty ruffles</i>        |
| malsaine,      | F | saison, <i>an unhealthy season</i>      |
| manifeste,     | F | vérité, <i>manifest truth</i>           |
| marchande,     | F | ville, <i>a trading town</i>            |
| marécageux,    | M | terrain, <i>marshy ground</i>           |
| marin,         | M | monstre, <i>a-sea monster</i>           |
| maritimes,     | F | puissances, <i>maritime powers</i>      |
| martiale,      | F | intrépidité, <i>warlike intrepidity</i> |
| massif,        | M | or, <i>solid gold</i>                   |
| matérielle,    | F | substance, <i>a material substance</i>  |
| maternelle,    | F | tendresse, <i>a motherly tenderness</i> |
| matrice,       | F | église, <i>the mother church</i>        |
| ‡ mauvaise,    | F | excuse, <i>a bad excuse</i>             |
| mécanique,     | M | art, <i>a mechanical art</i>            |
| ‡ méchante,    | F | créature, <i>a wicked creature</i>      |
| médicinale,    | F | potion, <i>a medicinal draught</i>      |
| mélancholique, | F | humeur, <i>a melancholy humour</i>      |
| mélodieuse,    | F | voix, <i>a melodious voice</i>          |
| mémorable,     | M | événement, <i>a memorable event</i>     |
| mesquine,      | F | économie, <i>stinginess</i>             |
| méthodique,    | M | discours, <i>a methodical discourse</i> |

| Adjectives.   | Gender of | Substantives.                                  |
|---------------|-----------|------------------------------------------------|
| militaire,    | F         | académie, <i>a military academy</i>            |
| minérale,     | F         | eau, <i>a mineral water</i>                    |
| mobiliaire,   | M         | bien, <i>a personal estate</i>                 |
| modeste,      | F         | fille, <i>a modest girl</i>                    |
| modique,      | M         | prix, <i>a moderate price</i>                  |
| moelleux,     | M         | drap, <i>a soft substantial cloth</i>          |
| momentané,    | M         | plaisir, <i>a momentary pleasure</i>           |
| monotone,     | F         | voix, <i>a monotonous voice</i>                |
| montagneux,   | M         | pays, <i>a hilly country</i>                   |
| † morne,      | M         | silence, <i>sullen silence</i>                 |
| mortelle,     | F         | fièvre, <i>a mortal fever</i>                  |
| municipal,    | M         | droit, <i>common law</i>                       |
| municipale,   | F         | ville, <i>a corporation town</i>               |
| mûr,          | M         | raisin, <i>ripe grapes</i>                     |
| musical,      | M         | air, <i>a musical tune</i>                     |
| mutuel,       | M         | amour, <i>mutual love</i>                      |
| mythologique, | M         | dictionnaire, <i>a mythological dictionary</i> |
| Natal,        | M         | air, <i>native air</i>                         |
| naturel,      | M         | penchant, <i>a natural inclination</i>         |
| naval,        | M         | combat, <i>a seafight</i>                      |
| navigable,    | F         | rivière, <i>a navigable river</i>              |
| nébuleux,     | M         | { temps, <i>foggy</i> } weather                |
| neigeux,      |           | { <i>snowy</i> }                               |
| nécessaire,   | F         | condition, <i>a necessary condition</i>        |
| net,          | M         | verre, <i>a clean glass</i>                    |
| neuve,        | F         | perruque, <i>a new wig</i>                     |
| noire,        | F         | culotte, <i>black breeches</i>                 |
| nonchalant,   | M         | domestique, <i>a careless servant</i>          |
| notoire,      | M         | vol, <i>a notorious robbery</i>                |
| † nouvelle,   | F         | mode, <i>a new fashion</i>                     |
| † nu,         | M         | pies, <i>barefoot</i>                          |
| Oblique,      | F         | ligne, <i>an oblique line</i>                  |
| obscène,      | F         | peinture, <i>an obscene picture</i>            |
| obstructif,   | M         | remède, <i>an astringent medicine</i>          |
| occulte,      | F         | qualité, <i>a hidden quality</i>               |
| oculaire,     | M         | témoin, <i>an eyewitness</i>                   |
| odoriférante, | F         | fleur, <i>an odoriferous flower</i>            |

| Adjectives.    | Gender of | Substantives.                             |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------|
| odieuse,       | F         | comparaison, <i>an odious comparison</i>  |
| oisif,         | M         | écolier, <i>an idle scholar</i>           |
| Olympiques,    | M         | jeux, <i>the Olympic games</i>            |
| Olympien,      | M         | Jupiter, <i>Olympic Jove</i>              |
| onéreuse,      | F         | charge, <i>a burdensome employment</i>    |
| opiniâtre,     | M         | homme, <i>an obstinate man</i>            |
| opulente,      | F         | ville, <i>a rich city</i>                 |
| orageux,       | M         | vent, <i>a stormy wind</i>                |
| orgueilleux,   | M         | mépris, <i>proud contempt</i>             |
| originel,      | M         | péché, <i>original sin</i>                |
| outrageux,     | M         | soupçon, <i>an offensive suspicion</i>    |
| Païenne,       | F         | religion, <i>the Pagan religion</i>       |
| pair,          | M         | nombre, <i>an even number</i>             |
| pâle,          | M         | visage, <i>a pale face</i>                |
| pacifique,     | M         | roi, <i>a peaceable king</i>              |
| panique,       | F         | terreur, <i>a panic fear</i>              |
| pardonnable,   | F         | méprise, <i>a pardonable mistake</i>      |
| paresseuse,    | F         | servante, <i>an idle maid</i>             |
| particulier,   | M         | soin, <i>particular care</i>              |
| patentes,      | F         | lettres, <i>letters patent</i>            |
| paternel,      | M         | devoir, <i>fatherly duty</i>              |
| pathétique,    | M         | ton, <i>a pathetic tone</i>               |
| patrimonial,   | M         | bien, <i>a patrimonial estate</i>         |
| pattu,         | M         | pigeon, <i>a rough-footed pigeon</i>      |
| pédantes,      | F         | manières, <i>pedantic manners</i>         |
| pénale,        | F         | loi, <i>a penal law</i>                   |
| pénates,       | M         | dieux, <i>household goods</i>             |
| pendable,      | M         | cas, <i>a hanging matter</i>              |
| pénible,       | M         | ouvrage, <i>a toilsome work</i>           |
| perceptible,   | F         | fausseté, <i>an evident untruth</i>       |
| péremptoire,   | M         | argument, <i>a peremptory proof</i>       |
| pernicieux,    | M         | jeu, <i>a pernicious game</i>             |
| perpétuel,     | M         | tourment, <i>a perpetual torment</i>      |
| personnelle,   | F         | faute, <i>a personal fault</i>            |
| pertinente,    | F         | réplique, <i>a pertinent reply</i>        |
| pesant,        | M         | paquet, <i>a heavy bundle</i>             |
| ‡ petit,       | M         | mouchoir, <i>a small handkerchief</i>     |
| philosophale,  | F         | pierre, <i>the philosopher's stone</i>    |
| philosophique, | F         | question, <i>a philosophical question</i> |



| Adjectives.     | Gender of | Substantives.                                         |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| pleine,         | F         | bouteille, <i>a full bottle</i>                       |
| poétique,       | M         | style, <i>a poetical style</i>                        |
| pointilleux,    | M         | critique, <i>a captious critic</i>                    |
| poissonneux,    | M         | étang, <i>a fish-pond well stored</i>                 |
| polie,          | F         | nation, <i>a polite nation</i>                        |
| polyglotte,     | F         | Bible, <i>a polyglot Bible</i>                        |
| pompeux,        | M         | équipage, <i>a pompous equipage</i>                   |
| punctuel,       | M         | homme, <i>a punctual man</i>                          |
| poreux,         | M         | bois, <i>porous wood</i>                              |
| posthume,       | M         | ouvrage, <i>a posthumous work</i>                     |
| poudreux,       | M         | souliers, <i>dusty shoes</i>                          |
| poussif,        | M         | cheval, <i>a broken-winded horse</i>                  |
| préalable,      | F         | convention, <i>a previous agreement</i>               |
| précieuse,      | F         | pierre, <i>a precious stone</i>                       |
| précis,         | M         | jour, <i>a determinate day</i>                        |
| précoces,       | M         | fruits, <i>early fruit</i>                            |
| préfixe,        | F         | heure, <i>a fixed hour</i>                            |
| préliminaire,   | F         | observation, <i>a preliminary observa-<br/>tion</i>   |
| prématuré,      | M         | esprit, <i>an untimely wit</i>                        |
| présomptueuse,  | F         | jeunesse, <i>presumptuous youth</i>                   |
| principale,     | F         | étude, <i>the chief study</i>                         |
| probable,       | M         | sentiment, <i>a probable opinion</i>                  |
| problématique,  | F         | proposition, <i>a problematical proposi-<br/>tion</i> |
| prochain,       | M         | printemps, <i>next spring</i>                         |
| prodigieux,     | M         | colosse, <i>a prodigious colossus</i>                 |
| profond,        | M         | fossé, <i>a deep ditch</i>                            |
| prolix,         | M         | discours, <i>a prolix discourse</i>                   |
| ‡ prompt,       | F         | colère, <i>sudden anger</i>                           |
| public,         | M         | affront, <i>a public affront</i>                      |
| puéril,         | M         | amusement, <i>childish amusement</i>                  |
| Quadrangulaire, | F         | place, <i>a square place</i>                          |
| querelleuse,    | F         | femme, <i>a quarrelsome wife</i>                      |
| quotidien,      | M         | pain, <i>daily bread</i>                              |
| Raboteuse,      | F         | planche, <i>a rough plank</i>                         |
| raisonnable,    | F         | demande, <i>a reasonable demand</i>                   |
| rapide,         | M         | cours, <i>a rapid stream</i>                          |

| Adjectives.    | Gender of | Substantives.                                      |
|----------------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------|
| rare,          | M         | oiseau, <i>an uncommon bird</i>                    |
| rebelle,       | M         | sujet, <i>a rebellious subject</i>                 |
| récente,       | F         | plaie, <i>a recent wound</i>                       |
| réci-proque,   | F         | fidé-lité, <i>reciprocal fidelity</i>              |
| récréative,    | F         | lecture, <i>an entertaining lecture</i>            |
| redoutable,    | F         | mort, <i>a dreadful death</i>                      |
| réelle,        | F         | perte, <i>a real loss</i>                          |
| réformé,       | M         | officier, <i>a half-pay officer</i>                |
| régulier,      | M         | plan, <i>a regular plan</i>                        |
| remarquable,   | F         | enseigne, <i>a remarkable sign</i>                 |
| répréhensible, | M         | procédé, <i>a blamable proceeding</i>              |
| respectueuse,  | F         | réponse, <i>a respectful answer</i>                |
| riche,         | F         | robe, <i>a rich gown</i>                           |
| ridicule,      | M         | habillement, <i>a ridiculous dress</i>             |
| rigoureuse,    | F         | peine, <i>a rigorous punishment</i>                |
| royal,         | M         | palais, <i>a royal palace</i>                      |
| rouge,         | M         | vin, <i>red wine</i>                               |
| roux,          | M         | cheveux, <i>red hair</i>                           |
| rubicond,      | M         | visage, <i>a ruddy face</i>                        |
| rude,          | M         | hiver, <i>a hard winter</i>                        |
| ruineuse,      | F         | dépense, <i>a ruinous expence</i>                  |
| rustique,      | F         | vie, <i>country life</i>                           |
| Sablonneuse,   | F         | terre, <i>sandy ground</i>                         |
| sage,          | F         | conduite, <i>prudent conduct</i>                   |
| sain,          | M         | fruit, <i>sound fruit</i>                          |
| Salique,       | F         | loi, <i>the Salic law</i>                          |
| sanguinaire,   | M         | conquérant, <i>a blood-thirsty con-<br/>queror</i> |
| satirique,     | M         | trait, <i>a satirical stroke</i>                   |
| savant,        | M         | ouvrage, <i>a learned work</i>                     |
| sauvage,       | M         | canard, <i>a wild duck</i>                         |
| scabreuse,     | F         | entreprise, <i>a dangerous undertak-<br/>ing</i>   |
| sec,           | M         | linge, <i>dry linen</i>                            |
| scientifique,  | F         | préface, <i>a learned preface</i>                  |
| scorbutique,   | F         | mala-lie, <i>a scorbutic disorder</i>              |
| secret,        | M         | art, <i>a secret art</i>                           |
| séditieux,     | M         | écrit, <i>a seditious writing</i>                  |
| sempiternelle, | F         | vieille, <i>an old woman</i>                       |

| Adjectives.     | Gender of | Substantives.                                       |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| sérieuse,       | F         | réprimande, <i>a serious reprimand</i>              |
| sévère,         | M         | ton, <i>a severe tone</i>                           |
| similaire,      | M         | son, <i>a similar sound</i>                         |
| sincère,        | M         | ami, <i>a sincere friend</i>                        |
| sinistre,       | M         | présage, <i>an unlucky omen</i>                     |
| soigneux,       | M         | jardinier, <i>a careful gardener</i>                |
| solide,         | M         | fondement, <i>a solid foundation</i>                |
| solitaire,      | F         | vie, <i>a retired life</i>                          |
| solvable,       | M         | débiteur, <i>a solvent debtor</i>                   |
| sombre,         | F         | matinée, <i>a gloomy morning</i>                    |
| soluble,        | M         | problème, <i>a soluble problem</i>                  |
| somptueux,      | M         | repas, <i>a sumptuous meal</i>                      |
| † sot,          | M         | marché, <i>a silly bargain</i>                      |
| spacieux,       | M         | jardin, <i>a spacious garden</i>                    |
| spécieux,       | M         | prétexte, <i>a specious pretext</i>                 |
| spiritueuse,    | F         | liqueur, <i>a spirituous liquor</i>                 |
| splendide,      | M         | repas, <i>a splendid repast</i>                     |
| stérile,        | M         | arbre, <i>a barren tree</i>                         |
| stoïque,        | F         | insensibilité, <i>stoical insensibility</i>         |
| studieux,       | M         | écolier, <i>a studious scholar</i>                  |
| suave,          | F         | odeur, <i>a sweet smell</i>                         |
| sublime,        | M         | style, <i>a sublime style</i>                       |
| subreptice,     | F         | dispense, <i>a surreptitious dispensa-<br/>tion</i> |
| succincte,      | F         | analyse, <i>a short analysis</i>                    |
| suffisant,      | M         | témoignage, <i>a sufficient testimony</i>           |
| superbe,        | M         | bâtiment, <i>a magnificent building</i>             |
| superstitieuse, | F         | pratique, <i>a superstitious practice</i>           |
| suraturel,      | M         | signe, <i>a supernatural sign</i>                   |
| suspect,        | M         | dessein, <i>a suspicious design</i>                 |
| Tacite,         | M         | consentement, <i>a tacit consent</i>                |
| tardifs,        | M         | raisins, <i>late grapes</i>                         |
| téméraire,      | M         | combat, <i>a rash combat</i>                        |
| tendre,         | M         | poulet, <i>a tender chicken</i>                     |
| terrible,       | F         | épouvante, <i>a terrible fright</i>                 |
| tiède,          | M         | thé, <i>lukewarm tea</i>                            |
| timide,         | M         | lièvre, <i>a fearful hare</i>                       |
| tolérable,      | M         | mal, <i>a tolerable evil</i>                        |
| tortueux,       | M         | ruisseau, <i>a winding rivulet</i>                  |
| touffue,        | F         | haie, <i>a bushy hedge</i>                          |

| Adjectives   | Gender of | Substantives.                               |
|--------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------|
| triennal,    | M         | bail, <i>a lease for three years</i>        |
| trionphal,   | M         | arc, <i>a triumphal arch</i>                |
| † triste,    | M         | souvenir, <i>a sad remembrance</i>          |
| tumultueuse, | F         | compagnie, <i>a tumultuous company</i>      |
| turbulente,  | F         | république, <i>a turbulent republic</i>     |
| Turque,      | F         | religion, <i>the Turkish religion</i>       |
| tyrannique,  | M         | pouvoir, <i>tyrannical power</i>            |
| Ultrérieur,  | M         | examen, <i>a farther examination</i>        |
| unanime,     | M         | consentement, <i>a unanimous consent</i>    |
| uniforme,    | M         | rapport, <i>a uniform report</i>            |
| unique,      | M         | fil, <i>an only son</i>                     |
| universelle, | F         | connoissance, <i>universal knowledge</i>    |
| urgente,     | F         | nécessité, <i>a pressing necessity</i>      |
| utile,       | F         | découverte, <i>a useful discovery</i>       |
| Vague,       | F         | signification, <i>a vague signification</i> |
| vaillant,    | M         | général, <i>a valiant general</i>           |
| vaine,       | F         | pensée, <i>a vain thought</i>               |
| valide,      | M         | contrat, <i>a valid contract</i>            |
| variable,    | M         | temps, <i>variable weather</i>              |
| † vaste,     | F         | prairie, <i>a large meadow</i>              |
| venimeux,    | M         | reptile, <i>a venomous reptile</i>          |
| vert,        | M         | tapis, <i>a green carpet</i>                |
| véreuse,     | F         | pomme, <i>a maggoty apple</i>               |
| véridique,   | M         | gazetier, <i>an honest news-writer</i>      |
| vertueuse,   | F         | femme, <i>a virtuous woman</i>              |
| viagère,     | F         | pension, <i>an annuity</i>                  |
| victorieuse, | F         | armée, <i>a victorious army</i>             |
| vide,        | M         | pot, <i>an empty pot</i>                    |
| † vieux,     | M         | pont, <i>an old bridge</i>                  |
| vigoureuse,  | F         | défense, <i>a vigorous defence</i>          |
| visible,     | F         | éclipse, <i>a visible eclipse</i>           |
| vocale,      | F         | musique, <i>vocal music</i>                 |
| volage,      | F         | jeunesse, <i>fickle youth</i>               |
| volontaire,  | M         | meurtre, <i>a wilful murder</i>             |
| vraie,       | F         | nouvelle, <i>true news</i>                  |
| vulgaire,    | F         | opinion, <i>a vulgar opinion</i>            |
| Zélé,        | M         | prédicateur, <i>a zealous preacher</i>      |



## CHAP. IV.

*A List of Adjectives, with the Manner of their being placed before or after their Substantives, and their Signification in either Case.*

|                                                             |                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>J</b> USTE prix, <i>a reasonable rate.</i>               | homme juste, <i>a just man.</i>                           |
| juste défense, <i>a just defence.</i>                       | action juste, <i>a just action.</i>                       |
| à bas prix, <i>at a low rate.</i>                           | action basse, <i>a mean action.</i>                       |
| le bas ventre, <i>the lower part of the belly.</i>          | les Pays-bas *, <i>the Low countries.</i>                 |
| une mûre délibération, <i>a mature deliberation.</i>        | du fruit mûr, <i>ripe fruit.</i>                          |
| maigre chère, <i>poor fare.</i>                             | viande maigre, <i>lean meat.</i>                          |
| vive douleur, <i>a sharp pain.</i>                          | esprit vif, <i>a lively wit.</i>                          |
| bon homme, <i>a man who means no harm, or a simple man.</i> | homme bon, <i>a good-natured man.</i>                     |
| pauvre homme, <i>a sorry fellow.</i>                        | homme pauvre, <i>a poor man.</i>                          |
| grand homme, <i>a great man.</i>                            | homme grand, <i>a tall man.</i>                           |
| certaine nouvelle, <i>a certain piece of news.</i>          | nouvelle certaine, <i>true or authentic intelligence.</i> |
| sage-femme, <i>a midwife.</i>                               | femme sage, <i>a prudent woman.</i>                       |
| grosse femme, <i>a large woman.</i>                         | femme grosse, <i>a woman with child.</i>                  |
| galant homme, <i>a complete gentleman.</i>                  | homme gallant, <i>a man fond of the ladies.</i>           |
| le grand monde, <i>the great world.</i>                     | air grand, <i>a noble mien.</i>                           |
| plaisant homme, <i>an impertinent fellow.</i>               | homme plaisant, <i>a pleasant man.</i>                    |
| vilain homme, <i>a disagreeable man.</i>                    | homme vilain, <i>a niggardly fellow.</i>                  |
| furieux animal, <i>a large creature.</i>                    | animal furieux, <i>a fierce creature.</i>                 |
| mort-bois, <i>wood of no value.</i>                         | bois mort, <i>dead trees.</i>                             |

\* In other cases, speaking of countries, the adjective goes before, as, le bas Languedoc, la basse Normandie, la basse Saxe, la haute Saxe, la basse Autriche, le bas Rhin, le haut Rhin, &c.

|                                                       |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| morte-eau, <i>the water at the bottom of the sea.</i> | eau morte, <i>standing water.</i>                 |
| en droite ligne, <i>straight along.</i>               | ligne droite, <i>a straight line.</i>             |
| franc coquin, <i>a very rogue.</i>                    | homme franc, <i>an honest downright man.</i>      |
| franc-salé, <i>an allowance of salt.</i>              | arbre franc, <i>an ungrafted or real tree.</i>    |
| franche vérité, <i>naked truth.</i>                   | marchandise franche, <i>free merchandise.</i>     |
| franc-tillac, <i>the lower deck.</i>                  | bourgeois franc, <i>a free citizen.</i>           |
| basse-cour, <i>an inner yard.</i>                     | voix basse, <i>a low voice.</i>                   |
| basse-fosse, <i>a dungeon.</i>                        | rivière basse, <i>a shallow river.</i>            |
| le bas bord, <i>the larboard side of a ship.</i>      | faire main basse, <i>to put all to the sword.</i> |
| les basses voiles, <i>the courses or lower sails.</i> | cœur bas, <i>a base mind.</i>                     |
| le bas peuple, <i>the mob.</i>                        | avoir la vue basse, <i>to be shortsighted.</i>    |
| les basses cartes, <i>the low cards.</i>              | esprit bas, <i>a mean wit.</i>                    |
| cher ami, <i>dear friend.</i>                         | habit cher, <i>a dear suit.</i>                   |
| clairs deniers, <i>clear or spare money.</i>          | du linon clair, <i>clear lawn.</i>                |
| un doux zéphir, <i>a gentle gale.</i>                 | un billet doux, <i>a love letter.</i>             |
| dure-mère, <i>the dura mater.</i>                     | viande dure, <i>tough meat.</i>                   |
| faux frais, <i>extraordinary expences.</i>            | cheval faux, <i>a stumbling horse.</i>            |
| fin matois, <i>a sly cunning fellow.</i>              | diamant fin, <i>a right diamond.</i>              |
| fol espoir, <i>a foolish hope.</i>                    | peintre fou, <i>a mad painter.</i>                |
| fol amour, <i>Cupid.</i>                              | poète fou, <i>a mad poet.</i>                     |
| le haut bout, <i>the upper end.</i>                   | la chambre haute, <i>the upper house.</i>         |
| menus plaisirs, <i>pocket money.</i>                  | jambes menues, <i>small slender legs.</i>         |
| molle condescendance, <i>a dull compliance.</i>       | vie molle, <i>an easy life.</i>                   |
| les pâles couleurs, <i>the green sickness.</i>        | visage pâle, <i>a pale face.</i>                  |
| rouge bord, <i>a bumper.</i>                          | des yeux rouges, <i>bloodshot eyes.</i>           |



rouge-gorge, *a robin red-bird.*

rase campagne, *an open field.*  
saine doctrine, *sound doctrine.*

la saine raison, *sound reason.*

de vains efforts, *vain endeavours.*

foible raison, *a weak reason.*  
vaine gloire, *vain glory.*

double bière, *strong beer.*

un vif ressentiment, *a lively remembrance.*

vive douleur, *a smart pain.*

vif-argent, *quicksilver.*

de vive voix, *by word of mouth.*

ferme résolution, *a firm resolution.*

de vastes desseins, *great designs.*

vieille mode, *an old fashion.*

la verte jeunesse, *youthful days.*

une verte réponse, *a sharp answer.*

une verte réprimande, *a sharp reprimand.*

un vert galant, *a brisk gallant.*

âpre combat, *a cruel combat.*

la tendre jeunesse, *tender youth.*

maigre repas, *pitiful cheer.*

maigre auteur, *a pitiful author.*

froide mine, *a cold look.*

ample pouvoir, *full power.*

à plus forte raison, *how much more.*

couleur rouge, *a red colour.*

velours ras, *shorn velvet.*

temps sain, *healthy weather.*

jugement sain, *sound judgment.*

peine veine, *unprofitable trouble.*

l'âge foible, *infancy.*

homme vain, *a vain glorious man.*

acte double, *duplicate of a writing.*

des yeux vifs, *sparkling eyes.*

cheval vif, *a mettlesome horse.*

couleur vive, *a lively colour.*

teint vif, *a florid complexion.*

muraille ferme, *a firm wall.*

un esprit vaste, *a great genius.*

vin vieux, *old wine.*

bois vert, *green wood.*

fruit vert, *unripe fruit.*

pois verts, *green pease.*

une tête verte, *a bare-brained fellow.*

un esprit âpre, *an austere man.*

l'âge tendre, *tender age.*

terroir maigre, *a barren soil.*

style maigre, *a poor style.*

viande froide, *cold meat.*

discours ample, *a diffuse discourse.*

raison forte, *a strong reason.*

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Marks and Points used in writing French.*

THE several marks used in writing French are the following.

A comma, *une virgule*, (,) separates the least parts of a sentence, and stops the reader's voice till he can count *one*.

A semicolon, *un point et une virgule*, (;) separates larger portions of a sentence. At this the reader must stop till he can count *two*.

A colon, *deux points*, (:) marks the larger divisions, of which a sentence is susceptible. At this the reader must stop till he can count *three*. Semicolons and colons are sometimes, but improperly, used promiscuously.

A period, or full point, *un point*, (.) is used when the sentence is fully ended, and requires a pause till the reader can count *four*.

A note of interrogation, *un point d'interrogation*, (?) is used in asking a question.

A note of admiration, *un point d'admiration*, (!) is used when we admire, wish, or wonder: it serves also to express some violent passion.

An apostrophe *une apostrophe*, (') is set over the place where some letter is left out; as *l'amour*, instead of *le amour*, love\*.

A hyphen, *un tiret*, ou *un trait d'union*, (-) joins words or syllables together; as, *parla-t-il*, did he speak? *parle-t-elle*, does she speak?

A cedilla, *une cédille*, (ç) is placed under *c*, when it is pronounced like *s*, before *a*, *o*, or *u*.

A parenthesis, *une parenthèse*, ( ) includes something not necessary to the sense, but brought in to explain or illustrate it, and is very seldom used.

A diæresis, *une tréma* (¨) parts two vowels coming to-

\* These two vowels, *a*, *e*, when the next word begins with a vowel or an *b*, not pronounced, are left out in French in the following words.

*Le, la, je, me, te, se, de, ce, ne, que; l', j', m', t', s', d', c', n', qu' jusqu', &c.*

gether, and signifies their making two syllables, as *Saül étoit roi d'Israël*, Saul was king of Israel.

It is likewise placed over *e* at the end of certain words ending in *gue*, to express that they must be pronounced *gu*, and not as in *fatigue*. Ex. *aiguë*, the feminine of *aigu*, sharp; *ciguë*, hemlock.

There are several other notes used by authors and printers; but it would be needless to trouble the learner here with any.

Obs. I. *Le, la, ce*, suffer no elision before *onze, onzième, oui*; neither in the imperative mood, as, *laissez-le aller*, let him go; except when followed immediately by *en* or *y*, as, *laissez-ly aller*, let him go thither.

Obs. II. *Si* suffers an elision only before *il* or *ils*.

Obs. III. *Là, there, and qui, who*, are never contracted.

Obs. IV. *e* in *grande* is contracted in some words beginning with a consonant, as *grand'mère*, grandmother, *à grand'peine*, with much ado, &c.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of Accents made use of in writing French.*

**A**N accent is a note put over a vowel, at the end of a syllable or word, to denote it's sound, quantity, nature, or signification.

An accent is either acute, *aigu*, ('); grave, *grave* ('); or circumflex, *circonflexe*, (^).

The first is placed upon *e*, when it has a slender sound; as in *été*, the summer; except in the words of the second person plural, because in these, *e* is joined with *x*, as *vous aimez*, ye love.

The second accent is sometimes put upon *e*, when it has an open sound; as in *salière*, saltcellar; in some monosyllables, ending with an *s*, *près*; near, *très*, very, &c.; also at the end of words of more than one syllable, as in *progrès*, progress; *après*, after. It is used in the last case, when an *s* follows.

This accent is likewise used to distinguish articles, adverbs, verbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, as in the following words:

*a, has,*

*là, the,*

*à, at or to,*

*là, there.*

de là, of, or from the.

dès, some, of, or from the.

ça, come on.

ou, or.

de là, thence.

dès que, as soon as.

ça, hither.

où, where.

N. B. Compounds follow the same rule, as, *là-haut*, above; *là-bas*, down there, below; *là-dessus*, upon that; *là-dessous*, under that, down there; *de là*, thence; *par là*, that way; *celui-là*, *celle-là*, that.

This accent is never placed in the beginning or in the middle of words, when an *e* is followed by a consonant, with which it makes a syllable.

The third is placed commonly upon a long vowel, as in *âge*, age; *fête*, a feast; and particularly upon those which were formerly spelt with an *s*, as in *abîme*, an abyss; *les nôtres*, ours, &c.

In some monosyllables, as in *mât*. a mast.

At the end of some words ending with *t*, as in *forêt*, a forest.

In the third person singular of the preterite subjunctive, as, *qu'il parlât*, that he might speak; to distinguish the subjunctive from the indicative, *il parla*, he spoke.

Observe, that verbs of the first conjugation take a *t*, beside the accent, in the conjunctive mood, and none in the indicative: but all other verbs have a *t* in the indicative and subjunctive moods.

| Cardinal Numbers.     | Numerical Letters. | Les Nombres Cardinaux. |
|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1, <i>one</i> .       | I.                 | un.                    |
| 2, <i>two</i> .       | II.                | deux.                  |
| 3, <i>three</i> .     | III.               | trois.                 |
| 4, <i>four</i> .      | IV.                | quatre.                |
| 5, <i>five</i> .      | V.                 | cinq.                  |
| 6, <i>six</i> .       | VI.                | six.                   |
| 7, <i>seven</i> .     | VII.               | sept.                  |
| 8, <i>eight</i> .     | VIII.              | huit.                  |
| 9, <i>nine</i> .      | IX.                | neuf.                  |
| 10, <i>ten</i> .      | X.                 | dix.                   |
| 11, <i>eleven</i> .   | XI.                | ouze.                  |
| 12, <i>twelve</i> .   | XII.               | douze.                 |
| 13, <i>thirteen</i> . | XIII.              | treize.                |



|                            |         |                     |
|----------------------------|---------|---------------------|
| 14, <i>fourteen.</i>       | XIV.    | quatorze.           |
| 15, <i>fifteen.</i>        | XV.     | quinze.             |
| 16, <i>sixteen.</i>        | XVI.    | seize.              |
| 17, <i>seventeen.</i>      | XVII.   | dix-sept.           |
| 18, <i>eighteen.</i>       | XVIII.  | dix-huit.           |
| 19, <i>nineteen.</i>       | XIX.    | dix-neuf.           |
| 20, <i>twenty.</i>         | XX.     | vingt.              |
| 21, <i>twenty-one.</i>     | XXI.    | vingt-et-un.        |
| 22, <i>twenty-two.</i>     | XXII.   | vingt-deux.         |
| and so on to               |         | <i>jusqu'à.</i>     |
| 30, <i>thirty.</i>         | XXX.    | trente.             |
| 31, <i>thirty-one.</i>     | XXXI.   | trente-et-un.       |
| 32, <i>thirty-two.</i>     | XXXII.  | trente-deux.        |
| and so on to               |         | <i>jusqu'à.</i>     |
| 40, <i>forty.</i>          | XL.     | quarante.           |
| 41, <i>forty-one.</i>      | XLI.    | quarante-et-un.     |
| 42, <i>forty-two.</i>      | XLII.   | quarante-deux.      |
| and so on to               |         | <i>jusqu'à.</i>     |
| 50, <i>fifty.</i>          | L.      | cinquante.          |
| 51, <i>fifty-one.</i>      | LI.     | cinquante-et-un.    |
| 52, <i>fifty-two.</i>      | LII.    | cinquante-deux.     |
| and so on to               |         | <i>jusqu'à.</i>     |
| 60, <i>sixty.</i>          | LX.     | soixante.           |
| 61, <i>sixty-one.</i>      | LXI.    | soixante-et-un.     |
| 62, <i>sixty-two.</i>      | LXII.   | soixante-deux.      |
| and so on to               |         | <i>jusqu'à.</i>     |
| 70, <i>seventy.</i>        | LXX.    | soixante-et-dix.    |
| 71, <i>seventy-one.</i>    | LXXI.   | soixante-et-onze.   |
| 72, <i>seventy-two.</i>    | LXXII.  | soixante-et-douze.  |
| and so on to               |         | <i>jusqu'à.</i>     |
| 80, <i>eighty.</i>         | LXXX.   | quatre-vingts.      |
| 81, <i>eighty-one.</i>     | LXXXI.  | quatre-vingt-un.    |
| 82, <i>eighty-two.</i>     | LXXXII. | quatre-vingt-deux.  |
| and so on to               |         | <i>jusqu'à.</i>     |
| 90, <i>ninety.</i>         | XC.     | quatre-vingt-dix.   |
| 91, <i>ninety-one.</i>     | XCI.    | quatre-vingt-onze.  |
| 92, <i>ninety-two.</i>     | XCH.    | quatre-vingt-douze. |
| and so on to               |         | <i>jusqu'à.</i>     |
| 100, <i>one hundred.</i>   | C.      | cent.               |
| 200, <i>two hundred.</i>   | CC.     | deux cents.         |
| 300, <i>three hundred.</i> | CCC.    | trois cents.        |



|                            |                                     |               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| 400, <i>four hundred.</i>  | CCCC.                               | quatre cents. |
| 500, <i>five hundred.</i>  | D, or I $\overline{5}$ .            | cinq cents.   |
| 600, <i>six hundred.</i>   | DC, or I $\overline{5}$ C.          | six cents.    |
| 700, <i>seven hundred.</i> | DCC, or<br>I $\overline{5}$ CC.     | sept cents.   |
| 800, <i>eight hundred.</i> | DCCC, or<br>I $\overline{5}$ CCC.   | huit cents.   |
| 900, <i>nine hundred.</i>  | DCCCC, or<br>I $\overline{5}$ CCCC, | neuf cents.   |
| 1000, <i>one thousand.</i> | M, or CI $\overline{5}$ .           | mille.        |

These numbers never vary their termination, except *un*, which makes *une* in the feminine; *cent*, which makes *cents* in the plural; *mille* is written *mil*, when we write the date of the year; in this case *cent* does not vary; as,

1796, *one thousand seven  
hundred and ninety-six.*

MDCCXCVI, mil sept-  
cent quatre-vingt-seize.

The words *septante*, *octante* and *nonante*, are obsolete; *buitante* and *neuvante* have been made use of only by some calculators. The advantage of admitting these words, *septante*, *buitante*, *neuvante*, which preserve their roots, is obvious enough to those who have numbers to put down in figures under the telling of another person. *Six-vingt*. (six score) was the common appellation for 120 in the last century, but has been abandoned: *quatre-vingt* (four score) will probably soon experience the same fate. These false numerical appellations are intirely rejected by mathematicians.

#### ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1st, *first.*  
2d, *second.*  
3d, *third.*  
4th, *fourth.*  
5th, *fifth.*  
6th, *sixth.*  
7th, *seventh.*  
8th, *eighth.*  
9th, *ninth.*  
10th, *tenth.*  
11th, *eleventh.*  
12th, *twelfth.*  
13th, *thirteenth.*

#### LES NOMBRES ORDINAUX.

1<sup>er</sup>. premier, M. première, F.  
2<sup>d</sup>. second, M. seconde, F.  
3<sup>e</sup>. troisième, M. & F.  
4<sup>e</sup>. quatrième.  
5<sup>e</sup>. cinquième.  
6<sup>e</sup>. sixième.  
7<sup>e</sup>. septième.  
8<sup>e</sup>. huitième.  
9<sup>e</sup>. neuvième.  
10<sup>e</sup>. dixième.  
11<sup>e</sup>. onzième.  
12<sup>e</sup>. douzième.  
13<sup>e</sup>. treizième.

14th, *fourteenth*.  
 15th, *fifteenth*.  
 16th, *sixteenth*.  
 17th, *seventeenth*.  
 18th, *eighteenth*.  
 19th, *nineteenth*.  
 20th, *twentieth*.  
 21st, *twenty-first*.  
 22d, *twenty-second*.  
 and so on, &c.

14<sup>e</sup>. quatorzième.  
 15<sup>e</sup>. quinzième.  
 16<sup>e</sup>. seizième.  
 17<sup>e</sup>. dix-septième.  
 18<sup>e</sup>. dix-huitième.  
 19<sup>e</sup>. dix-neuvième.  
 20<sup>e</sup>. vingtième.  
 21<sup>e</sup>. vingt-et-unième.  
 22<sup>e</sup>. vingt-deuxième.  
*et ainsi de suite.*

Once,  
 twice,  
 thrice, or three times,  
 four times,

une fois.  
 deux fois.  
 trois fois.  
 quatre fois.

First, or in the first place.

premièrement, ou en premier lieu.

secondly, or in the second place.

secondement, ou en second lieu.

thirdly, or in the third place.

troisièmement, ou en troisième lieu.

fourthly, or in the fourth place.

quatrièmement, ou en quatrième lieu.

### The MONTHS of the YEARS.

January, Janvier.  
 February, Février.  
 March, Mars.  
 April, Avril.  
 May, Mai.  
 June, Juin.  
 July, Juillet.  
 August, Août.  
 September, Septembre.  
 October, Octobre.  
 November, Novembre.  
 December, Decembre.

### The SEASONS of the YEAR.

The Spring, le printemps.  
 The Summer, l'été.  
 The Autumn, l'automne.  
 The Winter, l'hiver.

### The DAYS of the WEEK.

Monday, Lundi.  
 Tuesday, Mardi.  
 Wednesday, Mercredi.  
 Thursday, Jeudi.  
 Friday, Vendredi.  
 Saturday, Samedi.  
 Sunday, Dimanche.

## The FOUR ELEMENTS.

*Fire*, le feu.  
*Air*, l'air.  
*Earth*, la terre.  
*Water*, l'eau.

## The CARDINAL POINTS.

*The east*, l'orient, ou l'est.  
*The west*, l'occident, ou l'ouest.  
*The north*, le nord, ou le septentrion.  
*The south*, le midi, ou le sud.

## The FIVE SENSES.

*Sight*, la vue.  
*Hearing*, l'ouïe.  
*Feeling*, le toucher.  
*Taste*, le goût.  
*Smell*, l'odorat.

## The FOUR DIVISIONS of the WORLD.

*Europe*, l'Europe.  
*Asia*, l'Asie.  
*Africa*, l'Afrique.  
*America*, l'Amerique.

## Of the MOON.

*The new moon*, nouvelle lune.  
*The first quarter*, premier quartier.  
*The full moon*, pleine lune.  
*The last quarter*, dernier quartier.

## Of GEOGRAPHY.

Terms relating to the Land.

## I.

*A continent*, un continent.  
*An island*, une île.  
*A peninsula*, une presqu'île.  
*An isthmus*, un isthme.  
*A promontory*, un promontoire.  
*A mountain*, une montagne.  
*A coast, or shore*, une côte.

## II.

Terms relating to WATER.

*The ocean*, l'océan.  
*The gulf*, un golfe.  
*A strait*, un détroit.  
*A channel*, un canal.  
*A lake*, un lac.  
*A river*, une rivière.

## Of the WEATHER.

*Heat*, le chaud.  
*Cold*, le froid.  
*Rain*, la pluie.  
*Dew*, la rosée.  
*Hail*, la grêle.  
*Snow*, la neige.  
*Frost*, la gelée.  
*Thaw*, le dégel.  
*A fog, or mist*, un brouillard.  
*A storm*, un orage.  
*A flash of lightning*, un éclair.  
*Thunder*, le tonnerre.  
*The rainbow*, l'arc-en-ciel.  
*The wind*, le vent.

## The AGES of MEN.

*Birth*, la naissance.  
*Childhood*, l'enfance.  
*Youth*, la jeunesse.  
*Manhood*, la virilité.  
*Old Age*, la vieillesse.  
*Death*, la mort.

## ARTS and SCIENCES.

*Divinity*, la théologie.  
*Philosophy*, la philosophie.  
*Logic*, la logique.  
*Natural philosophy*, la physique.  
*Physic*, la médecine.  
*Surgery*, la chirurgie.  
*Law*, le droit.  
*Grammar*, la grammaire.  
*Rhetoric*, la rhétorique.  
*Poetry*, la poésie.  
*Mathematics*, les mathématiques.  
*Astronomy*, l'astronomie.  
*Chronology*, la chronologie.  
*Arithmetic*, l'arithmétique.  
*Geometry*, la géométrie.  
*Geography*, la géographie.  
*Surveying*, l'arpentage.  
*Architecture*, l'architecture.  
*Fortification*, les fortifications.  
*Navigation*, la navigation.  
*Music*, la musique.  
*Chemistry*, la chimie.  
*Painting*, la peinture.  
*Statuary*, la sculpture.  
*Dancing*, la danse.  
*Drawing*, le dessin.

## The PERIODS of TIME.

*An instant*, un instant.  
*A moment*, un moment.  
*A minute*, une minute.  
*A quarter of an hour*, un quart d'heure.  
*Half an hour*, une demi-heure.  
*An hour*, une heure.  
*A day*, un jour.  
*The morning*, le matin.  
*Noon*, midi.  
*Afternoon*, l'après-midi.  
*The evening*, le soir.  
*Midnight*, minuit.  
*A week*, une semaine.  
*A month*, un mois.  
*A year*, un an.  
*An age*, un siècle.  
*Eternity*, l'éternité.  
*The beginning*, le commencement.  
*The middle*, le milieu.  
*The end*, la fin.

## PARTS of the BODY.

*The head*, la tête.  
*The hair*, les cheveux.  
*The face*, le visage.  
*The forehead*, le front.  
*The features*, les traits.  
*The eyes*, les yeux.  
*The eyebrows*, les sourcils.  
*The eyelids*, les paupières.  
*The nose*, le nez.  
*The nostrils*, les narines.  
*The cheeks*, les joues.  
*The lips*, les lèvres.  
*The mouth*, la bouche.



*The teeth*, les dents.  
*The gums*, les gencives.  
*The jaw*, la mâchoire.  
*The throat*, le gosier.  
*The ears*, les oreilles.  
*The chin*, le menton.  
*The neck*, le cou.  
*The shoulders*, les épaules.  
*The arms*, les bras.  
*The elbow*, le coude.  
*The wrist*, le poignet.  
*The hand*, la main.  
*The fingers*, les doigts.  
*The thumb*, le pouce.  
*The nails*, les ongles.  
*The fist*, le poing.  
*The knees*, les genoux.  
*The legs*, les jambes.  
*The feet*, les pieds.  
*The heels*, les talons.  
*The hip*, la hanche.

## WEARING APPAREL.

*A coat*, un habit.  
*A waistcoat*, une veste.  
*The sleeves*, les manches.  
*The buttons*, les boutons.  
*The button-holes*, les boutonnières.  
*The pockets*, les poches.  
*The fob*, un gousset.  
*The lining*, la doublure.  
*A shirt*, une chemise.  
*The ruffles*, les manchettes.  
*A handkerchief*, un mouchoir.  
*Stockings*, des bas.  
*Garters*, des jarretières.  
*Shoes*, des souliers.  
*Buckles*, des boucles.  
*A hat*, un chapeau.

*A wig*, une perruque.  
*Gloves*, des gants.  
*A muff*, un manchon.  
*A comb*, un peigne.  
*A sword*, une épée.  
*Boots*, des bottes.  
*A ring*, une bague.  
*A watch*, une montre.  
*A snuff box*, une tabatière.  
*A purse*, une bourse.  
*Spectacles*, des lunettes.  
*A petticoat*, une jupe.  
*A gown*, une robe.  
*Linen*, du linge.  
*An apron*, un tablier.  
*A fan*, un éventail.  
*Ear-rings*, des boucles d'oreille.  
*A pin*, une épingle.  
*A needle*, une aiguille.  
*A pincushion*, une pelote.  
*Sweet water*, eau de senteur.  
*Powder*, de la poudre.  
*The powder-box*, la boîte à poudre.  
*Ribands*, des rubans.  
*Jewels*, des bijoux.  
*Scissars*, des ciseaux.  
*Pattens*, des patins.  
*Cloth*, du drap.  
*List*, de la lisière.  
*Muslin*, de la mousseline.  
*Lawn*, du linon.  
*Gauze*, de la gaze.  
*Buckram*, du bougran.  
*Dimity*, du basin.  
*Velvet*, du velours.  
*Camblet*, du camelot.  
*Druggett*, du droguet.  
*Ratten*, de la ratine.  
*Lustring*, du tafetas.



## HOUSEHOLD FURNITURE.

*A bed*, un lit.*The curtains*, les rideaux.*A warming-pan*, une bassinoire.*The bed-clothes*, les couvertures.*A pillow*, un oreiller.*A mattress*, un matelas.*A straw-bed*, une pailleasse.*A feather-bed*, un lit de plumes.*The head of the bed*, la tête du lit.*The tester*, le ciel du lit.*The bed's feet*, les pieds du lit.*A house*, une maison.*Hangings*, la tapisserie.*A looking-glass*, un miroir.*A chair*, une chaise.*A table*, une table.*A carpet*, un tapis.*A table-cloth*, une nappe.*A plate*, une assiette.*A napkin*, une serviette.*A knife*, un couteau.*A fork*, une fourchette.*A spoon*, une cuiller \*.*A salt-cellar*, une salière.*A dish*, un plat.*A basin*, { une écuelle.  
                  { un bassin.*A towel*, un essuie-main.*A bottle*, une bouteille.*A glass*, un verre.*A corkscrew*, un tire-bouchon.*A candle*, une chandelle.*A candlestick*, un chandelier.*A wax-light*, une bougie.*The snuffers*, les mouchettes.*A chest of drawers*, une commode.*A trunk*, un coffre.*A box*, une boîte.*A cradle*, un berceau.*The fire*, le feu.*The chimney*, la cheminée.*The hearth*, le foyer.*The bellows*, le soufflet.*A grate*, une grille.*A gridiron*, un gril.*The tongs*, les pincettes.*The fire-shovel*, la pelle.*The poker*, le fourgon.*The ashes*, les cendres.*The flames*, la flamme.*The smoke*, la fumée.*The soot*, la suie.*Matches*, des allumettes.*Tinder*, la mèche.*A tinder-box*, une boîte à fusil.*A flint*, une pierre à fusil.*The steel*, le fusil, le briquet.*A kettle*, un chaudron.*A pot*, un pot.*A pot-lid*, un couvercle.*A flesh-hook*, un crochet.*A trewet*, un trépied.*A skimmer*, une écumoire.*A frying-pan*, une poêle.*A pudding-pan*, une tourtière.*A spit*, une broche.*A jack*, un tournebroche.*A broom*, un balai.*A rubber*, un torchon.\* r is pronounced, and more properly spelt, *cuillère*.

*A dripping-pan*, une lèche-frite.

*A chafing-dish*, un réchaud.

*A sieve*, un tamis.

*A washing-tub*, une cuve.

*Pincers*, des tenailles.

*A nail*, un clou.

*A hammer*, un marteau.

*A cullender*, un couloir.

### HERBS, PLANTS, and FRUIT.

*Turnips*, des navets.

*Carrots*, des carottes.

*Red beets*, des betteraves.

*Radishes*, des raves.

*Spinage*, des épinards.

*Cabbages*, des choux.

*Cauliflowers*, des choux-fleurs.

*Artichokes*, des artichaux.

*Asparagus*, des asperges.

*Lettuce*, de la laitue.

*Endive*, de la chicorée.

*Celery*, du céleri.

*Parsley*, du persil.

*Purslain*, du pourpier.

*Cresses*, du cresson.

*Sorrel*, de l'oseille.

*Onions*, des oignons.

*Garlick*, de l'ail.

*Shallots*, des échalottes.

*Leeks*, des porreaux.

*Thyme*, du thym.

*Chervil*, du cerfeuil.

*Sage*, de la sauge.

*Melons*, des melons.

*Cucumbers*, des concombres.

*Gourds*, des citrouilles.

*Pumpkins*, des courges.

*Nettles*, des orties.

*Fern*, de la fougère.

*Thistles*, des chardons.

*A flower*, une fleur.

*A tulip*, une tulippe.

*A violet*, une violette.

*A pink*, un œillet.

*A clove gilliflower*, une giroflée.

*A poppy*, un pavot.

*Wild poppy*, du coquelicot.

*Holly*, du houx.

*A tree*, un arbre.

*A shrub*, un arbrisseau.

*A wall-tree*, un espalier.

*Brambles*, des ronces.

*A thorn*, une épine.

*Apples*, des pommes.

*Pears*, des poires.

*Cherries*, des cerises.

*Plums*, des prunes.

*Almonds*, des amandes.

*Peaches*, des pêches.

*Figs*, des figues.

*Chesnuts*, des châtaignes.

*Walnuts*, des noix.

*Hazel nuts*, des noisettes.

*Filberts*, des avelines.

*Oranges*, des oranges.

*Lemons*, des citrons.

*Grapes*, du raisin.

*Gonseberries*, des groseilles.

*Strawberries*, des fraises.

### Of the STUDY and the SCHOOL.

*Paper*, du papier.

*Blotting paper*, du papier brouillard.

*Brown paper*, du papier gris.

*Gilt paper*, du papier doré.

*A quire of paper*, une main de papier.

*A sheet of paper*, une feuille de papier.

*A ream of paper*, une rame de papier.

*A book*, une livre.

*A page*, une page.

*A leaf*, un feuillet.

*The margin*, la marge.

*The ink*, l'encre.

*The inkhorn*, l'écritoire.

*Cotton*, du coton.

*A pen*, une plume.

*The nib*, le bec.

*The slit*, la fente.

*A penknife*, un canif.

*Dust*, de la poussière.

*Sand*, du sable.

*A powder-box*, un poudrier.

*A lesson*, une leçon.

*Wax*, de la cire.

*Wafers*, des pains à cacheter.

*A seal*, un cachet.

*A pocket-book*, des tablettes.

*A ruler*, une règle.

*A writing*, une écriture.

*A letter*, une lettre.

*A syllable*, une syllabe.

*A word*, un mot.

*An accent*, un accent.

*A phrase*, un phrase.

*A sentence*, une sentence.

*A period*, une période.

*A theme*, un thème.

*A translation*, une traduction.

*Verses*, des vers.

*Prose*, de la prose.

*A desk*, un pupitre.

*Parchment*, du parchemin.

*Pasteboard*, du carton.

*A blot*, un pâté.

*A pencil*, un crayon.

## FAMILIAR AND EASY DIALOGUES

### FOR YOUNG BEGINNERS.

#### I.

*SIR*, your most humble servant.

*I have the honour to be yours.*

*I hope you are well?*

*To pay my respects to you.*

*To obey you.*

*How are all at home?*

*They are all well.*

*Ready to do you any service.*

*At your service.*

*And you, Madam, how do you do?*

*Pretty well. Very well.*

Monsieur, votre très-humble serviteur.

J'ai l'honneur d'être le vôtre.

Votre santé est-elle bonne?

A vous rendre mes devoirs.

A vous obéir.

Comment se porte-t-on chez vous?

Tout le monde s'y porte bien.

Prêt à vous rendre service.

A votre service.

Et vous, Madame, comment vous portez-vous?

Passablement bien. Très-bien.

*Is all your family well?*

*Perfectly well.*

*How is your mother?—your father—your sister?*

*You do them much honour; they are all in good health.*

*I am very glad to see you in good health.*

*And I to see you.*

*I am infinitely obliged to you.*

*I humbly thank you.*

*I am much indebted to you.*

*I give you a thousand thanks.*

*Madam, you jest; I do but my duty.*

*Now I think on it, how is your brother?*

*Exceeding well.*

*I am very glad of it.*

*Does he learn French?*

*Yes, Sir, and my sister likewise.*

*Does he go to school?*

*He goes to the Academy, and my sister is at a boarding-school.*

*I shall be very glad to see them at the next holidays.*

*Sir, they will not be less glad to see you.*

*Farewel, present my best respects to your father and mother.*

*Tout le monde se porte-t-il bien chez vous?*

*Parfaitement bien.*

*Comment se porte Madame votre mère?—Monsieur votre père?—Mademoiselle votre sœur?*

*Vous leur faites bien de l'honneur; ils sont tous en bonne santé.*

*Je suis bien charmé de vous voir en bonne santé.*

*Et moi pareillement.*

*Je vous suis infiniment obligé.*

*Je vous salue très-humblement.*

*Je vous suis bien redevable.*

*Je vous rends mille grâces.*

*Madame, vous vous moquez; je ne fais que mon devoir.*

*A propos, comment se porte Monsieur votre frère?*

*Parfaitement bien,*

*J'en suis bien aise.*

*Apprend-il le François?*

*Oui, Monsieur, et ma sœur aussi.*

*Va-t-il à l'école?*

*Il va à l'Académie, et ma sœur est dans une pension.*

*Je serai bien aise de les voir aux vacances prochaines.*

*Monsieur, ils ne seront pas moins charmés de vous voir.*

*Adieu, présentez mes très-humbles respects à Monsieur votre père et à Madame votre mère.*



*Tell them I will come and see  
them some day or other.*

*Well, good b'ye.*

Dites-leur que j'irai les voir  
un de ces jours.

{ Ah ça, au plaisir.  
Ah ça, à l'honneur.

## II.

*Sir, I am overjoyed to meet  
you here.*

*Sir, you are very kind.*

*How have you done since I  
had the pleasure to see  
you?*

*Very well; thank God.*

*My mother is sick.*

*Is she? indeed I am very  
sorry for it.*

*What is the matter with her?*

*She has the headach.*

*She has the toothach.*

*She has a fever.*

*She has not been out of doors  
this fortnight.*

*I am very sorry I have not  
time to see her to day.*

*What hinders you?*

*Indeed I cannot: I must go  
to Islington.*

*She would be very glad to  
see you.*

*To morrow, without fail, I  
will do myself the honour.*

*I am very sorry to hear she  
is ill.*

*Do not fail to call to mor-  
row.*

*No, no, I will not fail.*

Monsieur, je suis ravi de  
vous rencontrer ici.

Monsieur, vous avez bien de  
la bonté.

Comment vous êtes-vous  
porté depuis que je n'ai eu  
le plaisir de vous voir?

Toujours très-bien; Dieu  
merci.

Ma mère est malade.

Elle est malade! En vérité  
j'en suis très-fâché.

Qu'est-ce qu'elle a?

Elle a mal à la tête.

Elle a mal aux dents.

Elle a la fièvre.

Il y a quinze jours qu'elle  
n'est sortie.

Je suis très-fâché de n'a-  
voir pas le temps de la  
voir aujourd'hui.

Qu'est-ce qui vous en em-  
pêche?

En vérité, je ne puis: il  
faut que j'aille à Islington.

Elle seroit bien aise de vous  
voir.

Demain, sans faute, j'aurai  
cet honneur-là.

Je suis très-fâché d'appren-  
dre qu'elle se porte mal.

Ne manquez pas de venir  
demain.

Non, non; je n'y manque-  
rai pas.



*I rely on you.*

*You may depend upon me.*

*Farewell; I will tell her so.*

*Je compte sur vous.*

*Vous pouvez compter sur moi.*

*Adieu; je le lui dirai.*

### III.

*Let us speak nothing but French.*

*Agreed; it is the best means of learning a language.*

*Well; let us begin.*

*Do you speak French?*

*I speak it a little.*

*French is a very useful language.*

*It is now the universal language.*

*The French language is very difficult.*

*The English is still more so.*

*Are you very well versed in the French tongue?*

*Not much; I am beginning to learn it.*

*Do you understand what you read?*

*Better than I can speak.*

*I do not wonder at that: it is always easier to understand a language, than to speak it.*

*Who teaches you French?*

*Mr. A.*

*I know him; he is a very able man.*

*How many times a week does he attend you?*

*Ne parlons que François?*

*J'y consens; c'est le meilleur moyen d'apprendre une langue.*

*Hé bien; commençons.*

*Parlez-vous François?*

*Je le parle un peu.*

*Le François est une langue très-utile.*

*C'est aujourd'hui la langue universelle.*

*Le François est très-difficile.*

*L'Anglois l'est encore davantage.*

*Etez-vous bien savant dans la langue Française?*

*Pas beaucoup; je ne fais que de commencer.*

*Comprenez-vous ce que vous lisez?*

*Mieux que je ne parle.*

*Je ne m'en étonne pas: il est toujours plus facile de comprendre une langue que de la parler.*

*Qui est-ce qui vous enseigne le François?*

*C'est Monsieur A.*

*Je le connois; c'est un très-habile homme.*

*Combien de leçons vous donne-t-il par semaine?*

*As often as I am at leisure.*

Aussi souvent que j'en ai le temps.

*Almost every day.*

Presque tous les jours.

*How long have you been learning French?*

Combien y a-t-il que vous apprenez le François?

*Six months.*

Six mois.

*Indeed you have made a great progress.*

En vérité vous avez fait de grands progrès.

*Sir, you encourage me to make greater.*

Monsieur, vous m'encouragez à en faire de plus grands.

*You must always speak French.*

Il faut toujours parler François.

*I am afraid of making blunders.*

J'ai peur de faire des fautes.

*I should be laughed at.*

On se moqueroit de moi.

*O no; do not be afraid of being laughed at.*

Point du tout; ne craignez pas qu'on se moque de vous.

## IV.

*Where are you going?*

Où aller-vous?

*I am going to the Park, to church, to the play, to Greenwich, to Islington, &c.*

Je vais au Parc, à l'église, à la comédie, à Greenwich, à Islington, &c.

*Where do you come from?*

D'où venez-vous?

*I come from the Park, from church, from the play, from Greenwich, from Islington, &c.*

Je viens du Parc, de l'église, de la comédie, de Greenwich, d'Islington, &c.

*Was the king at the play?*

Le roi étoit-il à la comédie?

*Yes, and the queen too.*

Oui, et la reine aussi.

*How do you like the English language?*

Comment trouvez-vous la langue Angloise?

*The English tongue is very difficult for Frenchmen to learn.*

Je trouve que l'Anglois est très-difficile pour les François.

*Do you learn Latin?*

Apprenez-vous le Latin?

*I have been learning it these two years.*

Il y a deux ans que je l'apprends.

*What do you think of Latin?*  
*Sir, I think that Latin is*  
*more difficult than French.*

*You are right.*

*What French authors do you*  
*read?*

*I read the Adventures of*  
*Telemachus, the Age of*  
*Lewis XIV, the History*  
*of Charles XII, king of*  
*Sweden.*

*Do not you read sometimes*  
*la Fontaine's Fables?*

*Yes, Sir, my master told me*  
*he was the best author for*  
*fables.*

*What do you learn by heart?*

*I learn the articles, the pro-*  
*nouns, the verbs, &c.*

*You pronounce the French very*  
*well.*

*I take a great deal of pains.*

*Nothing is to be done without*  
*pains.*

*Que pensez-vous du Latin?*  
*Monsieur, je pense que le*  
*Latin est plus difficile que*  
*le François.*

*Vous avez raison.*

*Quels auteurs François lisez-*  
*vous?*

*Je lis les Aventures de Té-*  
*lémaque, le Siècle de*  
*Louis XIV, l'Histoire*  
*de Charles XII, roi de*  
*Suède.*

*Nelisez-vous pas quelquefois*  
*les Fables de la Fontaine?*

*Oui, Monsieur, mon maître*  
*m'a dit que c'étoit le mèil-*  
*leur auteur pour les fables.*

*Qu'apprenez-vous par cœur?*

*J'apprends les articles, les*  
*pronoms, les verbes, &c.*

*Vous prononcez très-bien le*  
*François.*

*Je prends beaucoup de peine.*

*On n'a rien sans peine.*

## V.

*Is it true?*

*Yes, it is true*

*Do you believe it?*

*It is but too true.*

*Believe me on my word.*

*I would not tell you a lie*  
*for all the gold in the*  
*world.*

*Did you see it?*

*Why did you not tell it me?*

*I can assure you,*

*I believe you.*

*Est-il vrai?*

*Oui, il est vrai.*

*Le croyez-vous?*

*Il n'est que trop vrai.*

*Croyez-moi sur ma parole.*

*Je ne voudrois pas vous dire*  
*un mensonge pour tout l'or*  
*du monde.*

*L'avez-vous vu?*

*Pourquoi ne me l'avez-vous*  
*pas dit?*

*Je puis vous assurer.*

*Je vous crois.*

*Do you speak in earnest ?*  
*I speak in earnest.*  
*Well, be it so.*  
*I will not oppose it.*  
*That is not true.*  
*You are mistaken.*  
*Did you guess it ?*  
*Who told it you ?*  
*Somebody you know.*

*Are you certain of it ?*  
*You may be mistaken.*  
*I do not believe I am mis-*  
*taken.*

*There is no such thing.*  
*Who doubts it ?*  
*I can never doubt it.*  
*There is no doubt of it.*  
*I will lay any thing you*  
*please.*

*I never lay any wager.*  
*When did you see him or*  
*her ?*

*When did you see them ?*  
*I saw him last week.*  
*I saw her last month.*  
*I have not seen them.*  
*What do you say ?*  
*I said nothing at all.*  
*I heard it.*

*Do not believe such a story.*  
*I do not believe it.*  
*When did you hear it ?*  
*To day, yesterday, the day*  
*before yesterday.*  
*Will you tell it him ?*  
*I shall never tell it him.*

*Parlez-vous sérieusement ?*  
*Je parle sérieusement.*  
*Hé bien, à la bonne heure.*  
*Je ne m'y opposerai pas.*  
*Cela n'est pas vrai.*  
*Vous vous trompez.*  
*L'avez-vous deviné ?*  
*Qui est-ce qui vous l'a dit ?*  
*C'est quelqu'un que vous*  
*connoissez.*

*Etes-vous sûr de cela ?*  
*Vous pouvez vous tromper.*  
*Je ne crois pas que je me*  
*trompe.*

*Il n'y a rien de cela.*  
*Qui est-ce qui en doute ?*  
*Je n'en douterai jamais.*  
*Il n'y a point de doute.*  
*Je gagerai tout ce qu'il vous*  
*plaira.*

*Je ne fais jamais de gageure.*  
*Quand l'avez-vous vu, or*  
*vue ?*

*Quand les avez-vous vus ?*  
*Je le vis la semaine passée.*  
*Je la vis le mois passé.*  
*Je ne les ai pas vus.*  
*Que dites-vous ?*  
*Je n'ai rien dit du tout.*  
*Je l'ai ouï dire.*

*Ne croyez pas un tel conte.*  
*Je ne le crois pas.*  
*Quand l'avez-vous ouï dire ?*  
*Aujourd'hui, hier, avant-*  
*hier.*  
*Le lui direz-vous ?*  
*Je ne le lui dirai jamais.*

## VI.

*Do you choose to drink a dish*  
*of tea ?*

*Souhaitez-vous prendre une*  
*tasse de thé ?*



*Sir, I am much obliged to you ;  
I never drink any.*

*What ! do you never drink  
tea ?*

*You like coffee better, per-  
haps ?*

*Do you know any news ?*

*I know of nothing worth your  
while to hear.*

*There is no talk of any thing.*

*When do you expect him ?*

*Did you ever know him ?*

*I know him by reputation.*

*Do you remember it ?*

*No, Sir, I do not remember  
it.*

*I have a very bad memory.*

*You forget easily.*

*Will you take a little walk ?*

*With all my heart.*

*Whither shall we go ?*

*Let us go into the Park ; we  
shall see the king there.*

*At what o'clock is he to be  
seen ?*

*About twelve o'clock.*

*I should be very glad to see  
him.*

*He is a very handsome man.*

*I shall be glad to see the queen  
likewise : every body speaks  
well of her.*

*Did you ever see the prince of  
Wales ?*

*They say he is a handsome  
young prince.*

*Monsieur, je vous suis très-  
obligé : je n'en prends ja-  
mais.*

*Quoi ! vous ne prenez ja-  
mais de thé ?*

*Vous aimez peut-être mieux  
le café ?*

*Savez-vous quelque nou-  
velle ?*

*Je n'en sais point qui soit  
digne de vous être rap-  
portée.*

*On ne parle de rien.*

*Quand l'attendez-vous ?*

*L'avez-vous jamais connu ?*

*Je le connois de réputation.*

*Vous en souvenez-vous ?*

*Non, Monsieur, je ne m'en  
souviens pas.*

*J'ai la mémoire très-mau-  
vaise.*

*Vous oubliez aisément.*

*Voulez-vous faire un petit  
tour de promenade ?*

*De tout mon cœur.*

*Où irons-nous ?*

*Allons au Parc ; nous y ver-  
rons le roi.*

*A quelle heure peut-on le  
voir ?*

*Vers midi.*

*Je serois bien aise de le  
voir.*

*C'est un très-beau prince.*

*Je serai bien aise de voir aus-  
si la reine : tout le monde  
en dit du bien.*

*Avez-vous jamais vu le  
prince de Galles ?*

*On dit que c'est un beau  
jeune prince.*



## VII.

*It is very fine weather.  
Do you believe it will rain to day?*

*I do not believe it will cease raining all the day long.*

*The sky is very clear and serene.*

*This is the best season of the year.*

*What season do you like best?*

*The summer is the most agreeable of all the seasons.*

*It is sometimes very cold in the spring.*

*I do not like winter at all.*

*Do you not go to the play?*

*I am to go thither this evening.*

*There is a new play.*

*There will be a great many people.*

*I have a mind to go thither likewise.*

*Do: I shall be very glad to accompany you.*

*Stay a little; I will be with you in an instant.*

*Finish your business; I will stay for you.*

*Now, I am ready.*

*Let us go.*

*Il fait très-beau temps.*

*Croyez-vous qu'il pleuve aujourd'hui?*

*Je ne crois pas que la pluie cesse d'aujourd'hui.*

*Le ciel est très-clair et très-serein.*

*Nous sommes à présent dans la meilleure saison.*

*Quelle saison aimez-vous davantage?*

*L'été est la plus agréable de toutes les saisons.*

*Il fait quelquefois très-froid au printemps.*

*Je n'aime pas du tout l'hiver. N'allez-vous pas à la comédie?*

*Je dois y aller ce soir.*

*Il y a une nouvelle pièce.*

*Il y aura un grand concours de monde.*

*J'ai dessein d'y aller aussi.*

*Venez: je serai bien aise de vous y accompagner.*

*Attendez un peu; je suis à vous dans l'instant.*

*Faites vos affaires; je vous attendrai.*

*A présent, je suis prêt.*

*Allons.*

## VIII.

*What o'clock is it?*

*What o'clock do you believe it is?*

*I believe it is not yet late.*

*Quelle heure est-il?*

*Quelle heure croyez-vous qu'il soit?*

*Je crois qu'il n'est pas encore tard.*

*Guess.*

*Nine o'clock.*

*It is past ten o'clock.*

*It is a quarter after ten.*

*It is half an hour after ten.*

*It is three quarters after ten.*

*Indeed, I did not think it was  
so late.*

*Time runs swiftly.*

*We are never dull in good  
company.*

*Let us go and take a walk in  
the garden.*

*With all my heart.*

*Have you any fine flowers in  
your garden?*

*Very fine ones.*

*Will you give me leave to  
gather some?*

*You may gather as many as  
you please.*

*Do you choose some pears, ap-  
ples, cherries, &c.*

*I am not fond of fruit.*

*Let us go home: it is almost  
dinner-time.*

*Are you hungry?*

*Have you a good appetite?*

*I do not know whether I  
shall be able to eat any  
dinner; I breakfasted very  
heartily.*

*Eating creates an appetite.*

*Devinez.*

*Neuf heures.*

*Il est dix heures passées.*

*Il est dix heures et un quart.*

*Il est dix heures et demie.*

*Il est onze heures moins un  
quart.*

*En vérité, je ne croyois pas  
qu'il fût si tard.*

*Le temps s'écoule avec ra-  
pidité.*

*On ne s'ennuie jamais en  
bonne compagnie.*

*Allons faire un tour au jar-  
din.*

*De tout mon cœur.*

*Avez-vous de belles fleurs  
dans votre jardin?*

*De fort belles.*

*Voulez-vous me donner la  
permission d'en cueillir?*

*Vous en pouvez cueillir au-  
tant qu'il vous plaira.*

*Souhaitez-vous des poires,  
des pommes, des cerises,  
&c.*

*Je ne suis pas grand amateur  
de fruit.*

*Allons au logis: il est bien-  
tôt temps de dîner.*

*Avez-vous faim?*

*Avez-vous bon appétit?*

*Je ne sais pas si je pourrai  
dîner; j'ai très-bien dé-  
jeûné.*

*L'appétit vient en mangeant.*

## X.

*Let us sit down to table.*

*Is dinner ready?*

*Mettons-nous à table.*

*Le dîner est-il prêt?*

*The meat is upon the table.*

*Sir, you are ceremonious;  
pray do not make any cere-  
mony.*

*What do you chosse to have?*

*What you please.*

*How do you like the roast  
meat?*

*It is exceeding good, and very  
tender.*

*Sir, if you be dry, call for  
something to drink.*

*You do not eat.*

*I beg your pardon; I eat  
very heartily.*

*This is all we have.*

*There is no need of any thing  
else.*

*I invited you to dinner, only  
to enjoy your company.*

*What do you choose to drink?*

*Sir, your health.*

*Madam, I have the honour to  
drink your health.*

*Shall I help you to a little bit  
of this leg of mutton?*

*I am infinitely obliged to you;  
I have eaten enough.*

*No more.*

*What shall we do after din-  
ner?*

*What the ladies please.*

*On a servi.*

*Monsieur, vous faites des cé-  
rémonies; de grâce, n'en  
faites point.*

*Que souhaitez-vous?*

*Ce qu'il vous plaira.*

*Comment trouvez-vous ce  
rôti?*

*Il est excellent, et très-ten-  
dre.*

*Monsieur, si vous avez soif,  
demandez à boire.*

*Vous ne mangez pas.*

*Je vous demande pardon; je  
mange de bon appétit.*

*C'est tout ce que nous avons.*

*Il ne faut rien de plus.*

*Je ne vous ai invité à dîner,  
que pour jouir de votre  
compagnie.*

*Que souhaitez-vous boire?*

*Monsieur, à votre santé.*

*Madame, j'ai l'honneur de  
boire à votre santé.*

*Vous servirai-je un petit  
morceau de gigot?*

*Je vous suis infiniment  
obligé; j'ai assez mangé.*

*Pas davantage.*

*Que ferons-nous après di-  
ner?*

*Ce qu'il plaira à ces dames.*

## X.

*We shall have a holyday to-  
morrow.*

*Show me your theme.*

*I will shew it to you after  
breakfast.*

*Nous aurons demain congé.*

*Montrez-moi votre thème.*

*Je vous le montrerai après  
déjeuner.*

*Who took my inkstand?*

*Give me my penknife.*

*I did not see it.*

*Do not blot your paper.*

*Who has any wafers?*

*Here, I will give you some.*

*They make a great deal of  
noise there.*

*Sit down in your place, and  
be quiet.*

*Indeed, I did not speak a  
word.*

*Learn your lesson.*

*I know it perfectly well.*

*Will you be pleased to make  
me a pen?*

*This is good for nothing.*

*Make your pens yourself.*

*Why is your theme so ill  
written.*

*Because the paper sinks.*

*It is wet; you must dry it by  
the fire.*

*What is the French for . . . ?*

*How do you say in French . . . ?*

*Why do you not shut the  
door?*

*I found it open.*

*Your stockings have holes in  
them.*

*I will get them mended.*

*I did not observe it when I  
put them on.*

*Tie up your garters; your  
stockings are about your  
heels.*

*Now come and say your les-  
son.*

*Qui est-ce qui a pris mon  
écritoire?*

*Donnez-moi mon canif.*

*Je ne l'ai pas vu.*

*Ne faites point de pâtés.*

*Qui est-ce qui a des pains à  
cacheter?*

*Venez, je vous en donnerai.*

*On fait beaucoup de bruit  
par-là.*

*Asseyez-vous à votre place,  
et soyez tranquille.*

*En vérité, je ne dis mot.*

*Apprenez votre leçon.*

*Je la sais parfaitement bien.*

*Vous plaît-il de me tailler  
une plume?*

*Celle-ci ne vaut rien du tout.*

*Taillez vos plumes vous-  
même.*

*Pourquoi votre thème est-il  
si mal écrit?*

*C'est que le papier boit.*

*Il est humide; il faut le faire  
sécher devant le feu.*

*Quel est le François de . . . ?*

*Comment dit-on en Fran-  
çois . . . ?*

*Pourquoi ne fermez-vous pas  
la porte?*

*Je l'ai trouvée ouverte.*

*Vos bas sont troués.*

*Je les ferai raccommoder.*

*Je n'y ai pas pris garde  
quand je les ai mis.*

*Attachez vos jarrettières;  
vos bas sont ravalés.*

*A présent, venez dire votre  
leçon.*



*I have but two words to write.*

*Give me leave to go out.*

*Go, and come back immediately.*

*I have lost my pencil.*

*You lose every thing.*

*You do not take care of any thing.*

*Somebody took it from me.*

*Look for it.*

*I have looked every where.*

*Lend me your book.*

*I want it myself.*

*Do not push me; I cannot write.*

*Who shakes the table?*

*I did not do it on purpose.*

*Well, let us see.*

*Je n'ai que deux mots à écrire.*

*Donnez-moi permission de sortir.*

*Allez, et revenez dans l'instant.*

*J'ai perdu mon crayon.*

*Vous perdez tout.*

*Vous ne prenez garde à rien.*

*Quelqu'un me l'a pris.*

*Cherchez-le.*

*Je l'ai cherché partout.*

*Prêtez-moi votre livre.*

*J'en ai besoin moi-même.*

*Ne me poussez pas; je ne puis écrire.*

*Qui est-ce qui remue la table?*

*Je ne l'ai pas fait exprès.*

*Ah ça, voyons.*

## XI.

*It is time to go to bed.*

*It grows late.*

*I never go to bed so early.*

*At what o'clock do you rise?*

*I have no fixed hour.*

*You may sit up as long as you please; for my part, I am going to bed.*

*I am used to go to bed sometimes.*

*Light a candle.*

*Where are my slippers?*

*I am going to fetch them.*

*Snuff the candle.*

*Draw the curtains.*

*Il est temps de s'aller coucher.*

*Il se fait tard.*

*Je ne me couche jamais de si bonne heure.*

*A quelle heure vous levez-vous?*

*Je n'ai point d'heure fixe.*

*Vous pouvez veiller tant qu'il vous plaira; - pour moi, je vais me coucher.*

*J'ai coutume de me coucher de bonne heure.*

*Allumez une chandelle.*

*Où sont mes pantoufles?*

*Je m'en vais les querir.*

*Mouchez la chandelle.*

*Tirez les rideaux.*



*Do not fail to wake me.*

Ne manquez pas de m'éveiller.

*I shall come sooner perhaps than you choose.*

Je viendrai, peut-être, plus tôt que vous ne voudrez.

*No; do not be afraid.*

Non; n'ayez pas peur.

*Gentlemen and ladies, I wish you a good night.*

Messieurs et Mesdames, je vous souhaite le bon soir.

*Sir, or Madam, I wish you a good night's rest.*

Monsieur, ou Madame, je vous souhaite une bonne nuit.

## XII.

*What! you are abed still?*

Quoi! vous êtes encore au lit?

*Do you sleep?*

Dormez-vous?

*No; I am awake.*

Non; je suis éveillé.

*You awake me too early; it is very dark yet.*

Nous m'éveillez de trop grand matin; il ne fait pas encore jour.

*Your curtains are drawn; you do not see the daylight.*

Vos rideaux sont tirés; vous ne voyez pas la clarté du jour.

*How did you sleep last night?*

Comment avez-vous dormi cette nuit?

*I did not sleep a wink all the night long.*

Je n'ai pas fermé l'œil de toute la nuit.

*No matter; I shall get up presently.*

N'importe; je me leverai dans l'instant.

*I am going to bid the servant light a fire.*

Je m'en vais dire au domestique de faire du feu.

*Bring me some water; I must wash my face, my mouth, and my hands.*

Apportez moi de l'eau; il faut que je me lave le visage, la bouche, et les mains.

*Where are my shoes?*

Où sont mes souliers?

*They are at the door.*

Ils sont à la porte.

*Are they clean?*

Sont-ils nettoyés?

*Give me some silk stockings.*

Donnez-moi mes bas de soie.

*Somebody knocks at the door; go and see who it is.*

On frappe à la porte; allez voir qui c'est.

*I am not ready to go out.*

Je ne suis pas encore prêt à sortir.

*Take care to keep a good fire in the parlour.*

Ayez soin de faire bon feu dans la salle.

*Tell Mr. A. I am coming down immediately.*

Allez dire à Mr. A. que je vais descendre dans l'instant.

*Sir, I am overjoyed to see you in good health.*

Monsieur, je suis ravi de vous voir en bonne santé.

*I am sorry to have made you wait so long.*

Je suis fâché de vous avoir fait attendre si long-temps.

*Not at all, you jest.*

Point du tout, vous vous moquez.

*Let us go and take a walk.*

Allons faire un tour de promenade.

## PART II.

### CHAP. I.

#### *A short Analysis of the Parts of Speech.*

**T**HERE are, in the French language, ten sorts of words, or parts of Speech, namely, the ARTICLE, the SUBSTANTIVE or NOUN, the ADJECTIVE or ADNOUN, the PRONOUN, the VERB, the ADVERB, the PARTICIPLE, the PREPOSITION, the CONJUNCTION, and the INTERJECTION.

I. The ARTICLE is a word prefixed to substantives to point them out, and to show how far the signification extends; as, *the study of history is useful and agreeable; l'étude de l'histoire est utile et agréable: the nature of man is unknown to man; la nature de l'homme est inconnue à l'homme: A bad man is ungrateful toward God and toward men; un méchant homme est ingrat envers Dieu et envers les hommes: A prince is not always so happy as the people believe: un prince n'est pas toujours aussi heureux que le peuple croit.*

Grammarians admit of two sorts of articles;

The definite (*the*) *le*, m. *la*, f. for the singular; *les*, plural for both genders.

The indefinite (*a* or *an*) *un*, m. *une*, f. for the singular, *des* instead of *quelques*, *plusieurs*, for the plural.

The definite article, 1st. restrains the signification of a general appellation; as *l'étude de l'histoire est utile et agréable*. *La nature de l'homme est inconnue à l'homme*.

2dly. Indicates the gender and number of substantives; and for this reason is used in French before a noun taken in it's widest sense; as *l'étude orne l'esprit*; study adorns the mind: *la nature a beaucoup d'observateurs, mais elle a peu de confidens*; nature has many observers, but she has few confidants. *Les princes ne sont pas toujours aussi heureux que le peuple croit*: princes are not always so happy as the people believe: *les exemples instruisent plus que les préceptes*; examples instruct more than precepts.

Substantives in French having no termination to distinguish sufficiently the plural from the singular, it has been necessary to prefix a particle, in order to denote the number of the things spoken of; and the article, which, as we have shown, limits the general signification of nouns, is also adapted to point out their gender and number.

The indefinite article is used in a vague sense, and restrains the signification of a general appellation to one or several objects in an indefinite or partitive sense; as, *un prince n'est pas toujours aussi heureux que le peuple croit*. *Nous voyons quelquefois des princes très-malheureux*; we sometimes see princes very unhappy. *Un homme de génie est sujet, comme un autre homme, à commettre des erreurs et des fautes*; a man of genius is subject, like another man, to commit (some) errors and faults.

II. A SUBSTANTIVE, or noun, is a word which expresses the name of any thing that exists, or that we conceive to be existing; as, the earth,—a house,—man,—Peter,—virtue,—prudence. *La terre,—une maison,—l'homme,—Pierre,—vertu,—prudence*.

To Substantives belong gender, number, and case. The Gender is either *masculine* or *feminine*; as, *le père*, *la mère*; *le jardin*, *la maison*. There is no neuter in the French language.

The number is either *singular* or *plural*.

The *singular* signifies one thing; as, *le père, la mère*.—  
The *plural* more than one; as, *les pères, les mères*.

The *case* signifies the different states, or the different circumstances of a noun.

A noun in a proposition is to be considered either as subject or object, *that is to say*, as governing or governed. The governing case, called also the *nominative*, expresses the subject of the verb, and is placed in French, as it is in English, before the verb, except in asking a question.

III. An **ADJECTIVE** is a word added to a substantive to express it's quality; as, a *diligent* scholar, *un écolier diligent*. In French the adjective is declinable, and agrees in gender and number with the substantive, to which it is joined or refers; as, *un petit homme, une petite femme*; a little man, a little woman.

The feminine of adjectives is formed by adding an *e* (called mute or feminine) to the masculine gender; as, *un petit homme, une petite femme*; but if the primitive masculine end with an *e* mute, then there is no alteration, and the feminine is like the masculine; as, *un champ fertile, une terre fertile*. See chap. III, page 60.

IV. The **PRONOUN** supplies the place of a noun, and prevents the unpleasant effect of a frequent repetition; as, *j'ai vu mon frère, il étoit très-malade*; instead of *mon frère étoit très-malade*, I saw my brother, *he* was very sick; instead of *my brother* was very sick.

Pronouns are of six kinds, viz. personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and improper or indefinite.

The personal pronoun is used instead of the name of a person; as, *je, tu, il*, m.; *elle*, f.; for the singular; *nous, vous, ils*, m.; *elles*, f.; for the plural.

The possessive pronouns mark possession; they are of two sorts, conjunctive and absolute.

The conjunctive pronouns are used only with substantives; as, *mon, ma, mes; ton, ta, tes; son sa, ses; notre, nos; votre, vos; leur, leurs*.

The absolute pronouns are used by themselves, their substantives being understood, as, *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes; le tien, la tienne; les tiens, les tien-*



*nes* ; le *sien*, la *sienne* ; les *siens*, les *siennes* ; le *nôtre*, la *nôtre*, les *nôtres* ; le *vôtre*, la *vôtre*, les *vôtres* ; le *leur*, la *leur*, les *leurs*.

The demonstrative pronouns are used to particularise persons or things, as if pointed at by the finger.

The relative pronouns refer to persons or things spoken of in a former part of a sentence.

The interrogative pronouns are used in asking questions.

The indefinite pronouns are used in a vague sense ; as, *tout*, *quelque*, *chaque*, &c.

V. A VERB is a word which signifies to be or to do ; as, *Thomas est studieux*, *Thomas is studious* ; *Thomas étudie*, *Thomas studies*.

The proper definition of the verb is, that it is a word which signifies *affirmation* ; for its proper office is, to *affirm some attribute* of the subject (or nominative) of the proposition. But if we join its principal accidents, it may thus be defined : a word which signifies *affirmation with the designation of the person, number, and time* : which definition agrees properly with the verb substantive *to be* (*être*). But, since men have frequently united certain attributes to the affirmation, for the sake of brevity, the verb (active or neuter) may be again defined thus ; a word signifying *the affirmation of some attribute, with the designation of person, number, and time*.

Verbs are divided, first into regular and irregular, personal and impersonal.

When a verb follows the rule of its conjugation, it is called regular ; but if it deviate from it, it is called irregular.

Personal verbs are those which are conjugated, with the personal pronouns, *je*, *tu*, *il*, *elle*, &c.

Impersonal verbs are those which are conjugated only in the third person singular with the pronoun *il*, it.

Secondly, verbs are divided into active, passive, neuter, and pronominal.

The active verb marks the action of its subject, or nominative case ; and makes good sense with the accusative of it's object, or the thing on which it acts ; as, *je mange du pain*, I eat bread ; *tu bois de la bière*, thou drinkest beer ; *il chante une chanson*, he sings a song.

The passive verb marks the passion or suffering of its subject ; *je suis aimé*, I am loved ; *tu es puni*, thou art punished ; *il est banni*, he is banished.



A neuter verb is a word denoting the action of it's subject or nominative, which action remains in the subject, and does not with propriety admit an accusative after it; as, *Je dors*, I sleep; *il court*, he runs.

The pronominal verbs receive their name from being conjugated with a double pronoun, as *je me repens*, I repent.

There are also two auxiliary or helping verbs, *être*, to be, and *avoir*, to have; these are called auxiliary, from their helping in the conjugation of other verbs.

Four things are to be distinguished in verbs; the mood, the tense, the number, and the person.

The mood expresses the different manner and uses made of a verb positively, conditionally, or in an unspecified manner. There are five moods, infinitive, indicative, conditional, subjunctive, and imperative.

The infinitive is the root of the verb: it expresses the action or passion in an indefinite sense, without any particular circumstance of time, number, or person.

The indicative expresses the action or passion in a direct and positive manner, in a time present, past, or future. We shall have a more precise idea of the indicative in comparing it with the subjunctive mood.

The conditional expresses the action or passion with dependence on a condition.

The subjunctive is a manner of expressing the action or passion with a modified affirmation or negation, always supposing another verb, which it follows, or to which it belongs, or some conjunction by which it is governed\*.

\* The differences between the indicative and the subjunctive are chiefly: 1. The tenses of the subjunctive affirm or deny indirectly, always supposing another verb affirming or denying directly; as in this phrase: I will have you do your duty, *je veux que vous fassiez votre devoir*. *Je veux* is a direct affirmation, and independent of any other; whereas *que vous fassiez votre devoir* is but an indirect affirmation, and depending on the first. 2. The tenses of the subjunctive are so depending on the words or conjunctions that are before them, that they cannot be separated from them without having an undetermined sense, consequently do not make a simple affirmation. So if from the foregoing example you take away *je veux que*, what follows, *vous fassiez votre devoir*, has no determined sense, and could not be put in the beginning of a phrase: whereas the tenses of the indicative may be separated, and make by themselves, without the help of the conjunction a clear and determinate sense; as, I believe we shall have some rain, &c.

The imperative expresses the action or passion by commands, prohibitions, desires, &c.

The future tense has sometimes the signification of the imperative mood, when it commands or forbids; as, thou shalt love the Lord thy God, *tu aimeras le Seigneur ton Dieu.*

The tenses express the period of time, in which an action or passion is, was, or shall be. They are properly three, the present, the past, the future.

Each tense has two numbers, singular and plural; and each number has three persons.

VI. A PARTICIPLE partakes something of the nature of a verb, and something of an adjective.

Beside the quality or attribute, which is the property of the adjective, the participle expresses *time*, together with a consideration of *acting*, or *being acted upon*; whence the participle *present* or *active* and the participle *past* or *passive*, as,

*Les hommes craignant Dieu. Dieu craint par les hommes.*

VII. An ADVERB marks the difference and circumstance of an action or passion.

VIII. A PREPOSITION is a word placed before those nouns and pronouns which it governs, or before some verb, in order to connect words one with another, and to show the relation between them.

IX. A CONJUNCTION serves to connect one word with another, and sentences with sentences.

X. An INTERJECTION expresses the emotions or passions of the soul, as joy, grief, admiration, &c.

The last four parts of speech are undeclinable.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of Genders.*

TO give rules for knowing the Gender of Substantives would be useless and puzzling. The best and easiest way is to learn them in a dictionary. And, in-

*crois que nous aurons de la pluie*; take away *je crois que*, what follows, *nous aurons de la pluie*, has a determined sense, and is understood without any other word.

deed, rules would be of no advantage to the learner. However, as some substantives are of the masculine gender in one sense, and of the feminine in another, it will not be amiss to give a list of these.

## MASCULINE.

un aigle, *an eagle.*  
 un aire, *an eyry, or nest of a bird of prey.*  
 un aune, *an alder tree.*  
 un barbe, *a barb, (a horse.)*  
 un Basque, *a Basque, (a man of Biscay.)*  
 un coche, *a stage coach.*  
 un cornette, *a cornet of a troop of horse.*  
 un couple, *a married couple.*  
 un cravate, *a Croatian soldier.*  
 un délice, *a pleasure, delight.*  
 un espace, *a space, a distance.*  
 un enseigne, *an ensign, (an officer.)*  
 un exemple, *an example.*  
 le fin d'une affaire, *the main, or chief part of a business.*  
 le foudre de Jupiter, *Jupiter's thunderbolt.*  
 un garde, *one of the guards.*  
 le greffe, *the rolls.*  
 un guide, *a guide.*  
 un livre, *a book.*  
 le gueule, *gules (in heraldry.)*  
 un iris, *iris, (a plant.)*  
 un loutre, *a sort of hat.*

## FEMININE.

les aigles Romaines, *the Roman eagles.*  
 une aire, *a threshing-floor.*  
 une aune, *an ell.*  
 une barbe, *a beard.*  
 une basque, *a skirt.*  
 une coche, *a sow.*  
 une cornette, *a woman's nightcap.*  
 une couple, *a pair (two things together.)*  
 une cravate, *a cravat or neckcloth.*  
 des délices, *delights.*  
 une espace, *a space used by printers.*  
 une enseigne, *a sign.*  
 une exemple, *a copy for writing.*  
 la fin d'une affaire, *the end of a business.*  
 la foudre, *thunder.*  
 une garde, *a guard; also a sick person's nurse.*  
 une greffe, *a graft of a tree.*  
 une guide, *a rein.*  
 une livre, *a pound.*  
 la gueule, *the mouth of a dog, cat, lion, &c.*  
 une Iris, *Iris, rainbow.*  
 une loutre, *an otter.*

## MASCULINE.

## FEMININE.

un manœuvre, *a labourer.*un manche, *a handle.*un mémoire, *a bill, a memorandum.*un mestre de camp, *a colonel of horse.*un mode, *a mood, (a philosophical term.)*un môle, *a mole, a pier.*un moule, *a mould.*un mousse, *a cabin-boy.*un office, *an office for business.*le grand-œuvre, *the philosopher's stone.*un page, *a young page.*un paillasse, *a clown.*un palme, *a hand's breadth.*Pâques, *Easter Sunday.*un parallèle, *a comparison.*un pendule, *a pendulum.*un période, *a period, a course, degree.*personne, *no body, any body.*un pique, *a spade, (at cards.)*un pivoine, *a bulfnch.*un poêle, *a stove, a pall.*un plane, *a plane-tree.*le ponte, *ponto (at cards.)*un poste, *a post, an employment.*le pourpre, *the purples.*la manœuvre, *the working of a ship; in the plur. the rigging of a ship.*une manche, *a sleeve.*la mémoire, *memory.*la mestre de camp, *the first company of a regiment of horse.*une mode, *a fashion.*une môle, *a mole (formless concretion of extravasated blood.)*une moule, *a muscle.*de la mousse, *moss.*une office, *a buttery.*une œuvre de piété, *a work of piety.*une page, *a page of a book.*une paillasse, *a straw-bed.*une palme, *a branch of a palm-tree.*La Pâque, *the Passover.*une parallèle, *a parallel line.*une pendule, *a pendulum-clock.*une période, *a period (in discourse.)*une personne, *a person.*une pique, *a pike.*une pivoine, *a piony.*une poêle, *a frying-pan.*une plane, *a plane.*la ponte, *laying of eggs.*la poste, *the post, the post office.*la pourpre, *the purple, (mark of royalty,) &c.*



MASCULINE.

FEMININE.

|                                                    |                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| d'un beau pourpre, <i>of a fine purple colour.</i> | de la pourpre Tyrienne, <i>Tyrian purple.</i>                           |
| un quadrille, <i>quadrille (a game at cards.)</i>  | une quadrille, <i>quadrille, (a troop of a horse for a tournament.)</i> |
| un quatrième, <i>a fourth part.</i>                | une quatrième, <i>a quarter or sequence of four cards at piquet.</i>    |
| le réclame, <i>the sign to call back a hawk.</i>   | la réclame, <i>the catch-word.</i>                                      |
| un satyre, <i>a satyr, a heathen demigod.</i>      | une satire, <i>a satire (in poetry.)</i>                                |
| le solde, <i>the balance of an account.</i>        | la solde, <i>soldier's pay.</i>                                         |
| un somme, <i>a sleep, a nap.</i>                   | une somme, <i>a sum.</i>                                                |
| un souris, <i>a smile.</i>                         | une souris, <i>a mouse.</i>                                             |
| un triomphe, <i>a triumph.</i>                     | une triomphe, <i>a trump at cards.</i>                                  |
| un trompette, <i>a trumpeter.</i>                  | une trompette, <i>a trumpet.</i>                                        |
| un tour, <i>a turn, a trick.</i>                   | une tour, <i>a tower.</i>                                               |
| un teneur de livres, <i>a book-keeper.</i>         | la teneur d'un acte, <i>the tenor or contents of writing.</i>           |
| un vase, <i>a jar, a vessel, a vase.</i>           | la vase, <i>mud, ooze.</i>                                              |
| un vigogne, <i>a hat made of vicuna wool.</i>      | de la vigogne, <i>vicuna, the wool of the Peruvian sheep.</i>           |
| un voile, <i>a veil.</i>                           | une voile, <i>a sail.</i>                                               |

*The following Substantives are*

Rather MASCULINE.

Rather FEMININE.

|                                          |                                                  |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| amour, <i>love.</i>                      | absinthe, <i>wormwood.</i>                       |
| amours, <i>cupids.</i>                   | amours, <i>intrigues.</i>                        |
| bronze, <i>bronze.</i>                   | alcove, <i>an alcove.</i>                        |
|                                          | caque, <i>a cag or barrel.</i>                   |
| cloaque, <i>a common sewer, or sink.</i> | épitase, <i>the épitasis, or plot of a play.</i> |
|                                          | épitaphe, <i>épitaph.</i>                        |

Rather MASCULINE.

Rather FEMININE.

Comté, *country*.duché, *a duchy*.épisode, *an episode*.épithalame, *an epithalamium*.orgue, *an organ*.amulette, *an amulet*.sphinx, *a sphinx*.holocauste, *a burnt sacrifice*.horoscope, *a horoscope*.hymne \*, *a hymn*.énigme, *a riddle*.idyle, *an idyl*.{ anagramme, *an anagram*.  
épigramme, *an epigram*.orgues †, *organs*.parallaxe, *parallax*.thériaque, *treacle*.horloge, *a clock*.équivoque, *an equivocation*.

\* According to the FRENCH ACADEMY, this word is feminine when we speak of hymns in churches, otherwise it is masculine.

† This word is masculine in the singular, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY.

## CHAP. III.

*Of the Formation of the Feminine Gender of Adjectives.*

## GENERAL RULE.

**A**DJECTIVES take an *e* mute for the formation of their feminine; as, aimé, *aimée*; écrit, *écrite*; constant, *constante* \*. ADJECTIVES ending with an *e* mute

## EXCEPTIONS.

\* Favori, *favorite*; bénin, *bénigne*; malin, *maligne*; frais, *fraiche*; épais, *épaisse*.

1. Grec, *Grecque*; Turc, *Turque*; public, *publique*; caduc, *caduque*.

2. Civil, *civile*; subtil, *subtile*; puéril, *puérile*.

3. Vieux, *vieille*; antérieur, *postérieur*, *citérieur*, *ultérieur*, *intérieur*, *extérieur*, *majeur*, *mineur*, *supérieur*, *inférieur*, *meilleur*, follow the general rule.

4. Ras, *rase*; clos, *close*.

5. Secret, *secrète*; complet, *complète*; discret, *discrète*; inquiet, *inquiète*; replet, *replète*; dévot, *dévôte*.

6. Jaloux, *jalous*; roux, *rousse*.

N.B. The FRENCH ACADEMY write first, cru, *raw*; nu, *naked*; vert, *green*; and not crud, nud, verd. Secondly, bénit, and béni, *ble sed*, *holy*, both follow the general rule. Thirdly, tors, and not tort, *twisted*, *worung*. This adjective makes in it's feminine both *torte*, and *torse*; for we say, *une colonne torse*, *de la soie torse*; and popularly we say, *une jambe torté*, *une bouche torte*, *une gueule torti*.

have no variation in their feminine, without exception ; as, admirable, m. *admirable*, f. ; aimable, m. *amiable*, f.

Other adjectives form their feminine according to their termination, as in the following *Concise Table*.

| Adjectives ending    | form their Feminine.           |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| in                   | <i>in</i>                      |
| c, (1)               | che.                           |
| f,                   | ve.                            |
| g,                   | gue.                           |
| el, eil, ol, ul, (2) | elle, eille, ille, olle, ulle. |
| on,                  | onne.                          |
| ien,                 | ienne.                         |
| eur, } (3)           | euse.                          |
| eux, }               |                                |
| as, es, os, (4)      | asse, esse, osse.              |
| ous,                 | oute.                          |
| et, ot,              | ette, otte.                    |
| eau,                 | elle.                          |
| ou,                  | olle.                          |
| oux, (6)             | ouce.                          |
| aux,                 | ausse.                         |

#### CHAP. IV.

##### *Of the Formation of the Plural of Nouns.*

##### GENERAL RULE.

**N**OUNS in general form their plural by adding an *s* to the singular ; as *homme*, *hommes* \*.

**POLYSYLLABLES** ending in *nt* in the singular, form their plural by changing the final *t* into *s* ; as, *enfant*, *enfants* ; but **MONOSYLLABLES** follow the general rule.

**NOUNS** ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, are alike in both numbers. **NOUNS** ending in *ail*, or *al*, change *ail* and *al* into *aux*, in the plural ; as, *travail*, *travaux* ; *cheval*, *chevaux* †.

##### EXCEPTIONS.

\* *Tout* makes *tous*.

† *Ail*, *aux*.

*Bal*, *carnaval*, *local*, *pal*, *régat*, and proper names ending in *al*, likewise these nouns, *attirail*, *camail*, *détail*, *éventail*, *mail*, *épouvantail*, *gouvernail*, *portail*, *séail*, follow the general rule.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, *eau*, *ieu*, and *ou*, make their plural by adding an *x* to their singular\*.

N. B. Œil makes *yeux*; aïeul, aïeux; gentilhomme, gentilshommes; monsieur, messieurs; madame, mesdames; monseigneur, messeigneurs; ciel, heaven, makes *cieux*. However, we say, *des ciels de lit*, testers of beds; *les ciels d'un tableau*, the sky of a picture; *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.

## CHAP. V.

### *Of the Declension of Nouns.*

**A**S the *nominative* in nouns is like the *accusative*, the *genitive* is like the *ablative*; we shall call the *nominative* the *first case*, the *genitive* the *second case*, and the *dative* the *third case*.

Nouns substantive of the *masculine* gender, and beginning with a *consonant*, are thus declined.

#### SINGULAR.

- 1st. le livre, *the book.*
- 2d. du livre, *of or from the book.*
- 3d. au livre, *to the book.*

#### PLURAL.

- les livres, *the books.*
- des livres, *of or from the books.*
- aux livres, *to the books.*

Nouns substantive of the *feminine* gender, and beginning with a *consonant*, are thus declined:

#### SINGULAR.

- 1st. la table, *the table.*
- 2d. de la table, *of or from the table.*
- 3d. à la table, *to the table.*

\* *Pieu*, *trou*, *clou*, *cou*, *matou*, *lieu*, *bibou*, *fou*, and *oup* *garçu*, follow the general rule.



## PLURAL.

les tables, *the tables.*

des tables, *of or from the tables.*

aux tables, *to the tables.*

Nouns substantive of *either* gender, beginning with a *vowel*, or an *h* mute, are thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

1st. l'homme, *the man.*

2d. de l'homme, *of or from the man.*

3d. l'homme, *to the man.*

## PLURAL.

les hommes, *the men.*

des hommes, *of or from the men.*

aux hommes, *to the men.*

Nouns substantive of the *masculine* gender, and beginning with a *consonant*, are thus declined with the *indefinite* article :

## SINGULAR.

1st. un miroir, *a looking-glass.*

2d. d'un miroir, *of or from a looking-glass.*

3d. à un miroir, *to a looking-glass.*

## PLURAL.

des miroirs, *looking-glasses.*

de miroirs, *of or from looking-glasses.*

à des miroirs, *to looking-glasses.*

Nouns substantive of the *masculine* gender, and beginning with a *vowel*, or an *h* mute, are thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

1st. un accident, *an accident.*

2d. d'un accident, *of or from an accident.*

3d. à un accident, *to an accident.*

## PLURAL.

dès accidens, *accidents.*

d'accidens, *of or from accidents.*

à des accidens, *to accidents.*

Nouns substantive of the *feminine* gender, and beginning with a *consonant*, thus :

## SINGULAR.

- 1st. une peine, *a pain.*
- 2d. d'un peine, *of or from a pain.*
- 3d. à une peine, *to a pain.*

## PLURAL.

- des peines, *pains.*
- de peines, *of or from pains.*
- à des peines, *to pains.*

Nouns substantive beginning with a *vowel*, or an *h* mute, and of the *feminine* gender, thus :

## SINGULAR.

- 1st. une aiguille, *a needle.*
- 2d. d'une aiguille, *of or from a needle.*
- 3d. à une aiguille, *to a needle.*

## PLURAL.

- des aiguilles, *needles.*
- d'aiguilles, *of or from needles.*
- à des aiguilles, *to needles.*

But in the *plural* number, when a noun substantive of *either* gender is preceded by an *adjective* beginning with a *consonant*, it is thus declined :

## PLURAL.

- 1st. de malheureux accidens, *unhappy accidents.*
- 2d. de malheureux accidens, *of unhappy accidents.*
- 3d. à malheureux accidens, *to unhappy accidents.*

Before an *adjective* beginning with a *vowel*, or an *h* mute, thus :

- 1st. d'indignes amis, *unworthy friends.*
- 2d. d'indignes amis, *of or from unworthy friends.*
- 3d. à d'indignes amis, *to unworthy friends.*

Proper names of *men*, *women*, *cities*, *villages*, &c., take no articles before them ; but in the 2d and 3d cases they take the prepositions *de* and *à*, thus :

- 1st. Jean, *John.*
- 2d. de Jean, *of or from John.*
- 3d. à Jean, *to John.*

When they begin with a *vowel*, or an *h* mute, thus :

- 1st. Alexandre, *Alexander*.
- 2d. d'Alexandre, *of or from Alexander*.
- 3d. à Alexandre, *to Alexander*.

Observe : *Some* in English, expressed or understood before a noun taken in a partitive sense, is expressed in French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, for the singular, and *des* for the plural, or *de* for both genders and numbers, in the following manner :

When the word of the masculine gender begins with a *consonant*, thus :

- 1st. du sel, *some salt*.
- 2d. de sel, *of or from some salt*.
- 3d. à du sel, *to some salt*.

When the word, either masculine or feminine, begins with a *vowel*, or *h* mute, thus :

- 1st. de l'argent, *some money*.
- 2d. d'argent, *of or from some money*.
- 3d. à de l'argent, *to some money*.
- 1st. de l'huile, *some oil*.
- 2d. d'huile, *of or from some oil*.
- 3d. à de l'huile, *to some oil*.

When the noun is feminine, thus :

- 1st. de la salade, *some sallad*.
- 2d. de salade, *of or from some sallad*.
- 3d. à de la salade, *to some sallad*.

Before an adjective of either gender or number, thus :

- 1st. de bon pain, *some good bread*.
- 2d. de bon pain, *of or from some good bread*.
- 3d. à de bon pain, *to some good bread*.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of Pronouns.*

THE construction of the pronouns being the most difficult part of our language, I shall here, for the sake of perspicuity, nearly follow the denomination which other grammarians have given them, though many of the pronouns may be looked upon as adjectives.

## SECTION I.

*Of Personal Pronouns.*

These are of two kinds: conjunctive and disjunctive.—The first generally precede the verb; the second commonly follow the verb. The first takes no preposition before them; the second takes in their second case the preposition *de*, and commonly in their third case the preposition *à*.

*The Conjunctive Pronouns.*

All nouns and pronouns, as we have hinted before, have three cases: the first answering to the Nominative and Accusative; the second to the Genitive and Ablative; the third to the Dative. The three cases of the conjunctive personal pronouns alone, and the three cases of the third person indeterminate, when they take no preposition before them, do not answer the three cases of other nouns; therefore we shall call the first the Nominative case, the second the Dative case, and the third the Accusative case.

## The first Person.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. Je, *I*.  
 Dat. me, *to me*.  
 Acc. me, *me*.

## PLURAL.

Nom. nous, *we*.  
 Dat. nous, *to us*.  
 Acc. nous, *us*.



## The Second Person.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. tu, *thou*.  
 Dat. te, *to thee*.  
 Acc. te, *thee*.

## PLURAL.

Nom. vous, *you, ye*.  
 Dat. vous, *to you*.  
 Acc. vous, *you*.

## The Third Person Masculine.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. il, *he or it*.  
 Dat. lui, *to him, or to it*.  
 Acc. le, *him or it*.

## PLURAL.

Nom. ils, *they*.  
 Dat. leur, *to them*.  
 Acc. les, *them*.

## The Third Person Feminine.

## SINGULAR.

Nom. elle, *she or it*.  
 Dat. lui, *to her or to it*.  
 Acc. la, *her or it*.

## PLURAL.

Nom. elles, *they*.  
 Dat. leur, *to them*.  
 Acc. les, *them*.

## The Third Person indeterminate.

Nom. on, *one\*, they, or people*.  
 Dat. se, *to one's self\*, to himself, to herself, to itself, to themselves, or to one another*.  
 Acc. se, *one's self\*, himself, herself, itself, themselves, one another*.

## The third Person supplying and governed.

1st. le, *it, so*.  
 2d. en, *of him, of her, of it, some, of them, from them, by them, with them*.  
 2d. y, *to it, there, therein, in it, in them, about it, or them*.

## The Disjunctive Pronouns.

## The First Person,

## SINGULAR.

1st. moi, *I, me*.  
 2d. de moi, *of or from me*.  
 3d. à moi, moi, *to me*.

## PLURAL.

1st. nous, *we, us*.  
 2d. de nous, *of or from us*.  
 3d. à nous, nous, *to us*.

\* The use of *one* in this sense, and of *one's self*, is a vulgarism.

## The Second Person.

|                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1st. toi, <i>thou, thee.</i>        | 1st. vous, <i>you, ye.</i>          |
| 2d. de toi, <i>of or from thee.</i> | 2d. de vous, <i>of or from you.</i> |
| 3d. à toi, <i>to, thee.</i>         | 3d. à vous, <i>to you.</i>          |

## The Third Person Masculine.

|                                           |                                    |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1st. lui, <i>him, he, or it.</i>          | 1st. eux, <i>they, them.</i>       |
| 2d. de lui, <i>of or from him, or it.</i> | 2d. d'eux, <i>of or from them.</i> |
| 3d. à lui, <i>to him or it.</i>           | 3d. à eux, <i>leur, to them.</i>   |

## The Third Person Feminine.

|                                           |                                     |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1st. elle, <i>she, her, or it.</i>        | 1st. elles, <i>they, them.</i>      |
| 2d. d'elle, <i>of or from her, or it.</i> | 2d. de soi, <i>of or from them.</i> |
| 3d. à elle, <i>lui, to her or it.</i>     | 3d. à elles, <i>leur, to them.</i>  |

## The Third Person indeterminate.

|                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1st. soi, <i>himself, herself, or itself.</i>              |
| 2d. de soi, <i>of or from himself, herself, or itself.</i> |
| 3d. à soi, <i>to himself or itself.</i>                    |

*Note:* Their compounds have the same cases as their simples; as,

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| moi-même, <i>myself.</i>     | nous-mêmes, <i>ourselves.</i>    |
| toi-même, <i>thyself.</i>    | vous-mêmes, { <i>yourselves.</i> |
| lui-même, <i>himself.</i>    | { <i>yourself.</i>               |
| elle-même, <i>herself.</i>   | eux-mêmes, { <i>themselves.</i>  |
| soi-même, <i>one's self.</i> | elles-mêmes, {                   |

## SECTION II.

*Of Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns.*

| SING.       |        | PLUR.   |                        |
|-------------|--------|---------|------------------------|
| MAS.        | FEM.   |         |                        |
| 1st. mon,   | ma,    | mes,    | <i>my.</i>             |
| 2d. de mon, | de ma, | de mes, | <i>of or from my.]</i> |
| 3d. à mon,  | à ma,  | à mes,  | <i>to my.</i>          |

After the same manner are declined.

|                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ton, ta, tes, <i>thy.</i>                                                     |
| son, sa, ses, <i>his or hers it's.</i>                                        |
| notre, nos, <i>our</i> ; votre, vos, <i>your</i> ; leur, leurs, <i>their.</i> |

Observe, first, the conjunctive pronouns come always before a noun to which they are joined.

Observe, secondly, the following absolute possessive pronouns, being used by themselves, are declined with the definite article, thus :

### *Of Absolute Pronouns.*

#### SING.

#### PLUR.

##### MAS.

##### FEM.

##### MAS.

|               |               |                                  |
|---------------|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 1st. le mien, | la mienne,    | les } miens. } <i>mine.</i>      |
| 2d. du mien,  | de la mienne, | des } F. } <i>of mine.</i>       |
| 3d. au mien,  | à la mienne,  | aux } miennes. } <i>to mine.</i> |

After the same manner, are declined,

le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes, *thine.*  
 le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes, *his or hers.*  
 le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres, *ours.*  
 le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres, *yours.*  
 le leur, la leur, les leurs, *theirs.*

## SECTION II.

### *Of Demonstrative Pronouns.*

#### SING.

#### SING.

##### MASC.

##### FEM.

|                                  |                                           |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1st. ce, or cet, before a vowel. | cette, <i>this or that.</i>               |
| 2d. de ce, or de cet.            | de cette, <i>of or from this or that.</i> |
| 3d. à ce, or à cet.              | à cette, <i>to this or that.</i>          |

#### PLUR.

M. and F.

|             |                                   |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1st. ces,   | <i>these or those.</i>            |
| 2d. de ces, | <i>of or from these or those.</i> |
| 3d. à ces,  | <i>to these or those.</i>         |

After the same manner is declined,

#### SING.

#### PLUR.

M. celui, F. celle, *she.* M. ceux, F. celles, *those.*

N. B. The foregoing demonstrative pronouns are used

speaking of persons or things. *Ceci* and *cela* are used speaking of things only.

- |                                      |                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1st. <i>ceci, this.</i>              | <i>cela, that.</i>               |
| 2d. <i>de ceci, of or from this.</i> | <i>de cela, of or from that.</i> |
| 3d. <i>à ceci, to this.</i>          | <i>à cela, to that.</i>          |

## SECTION IV.

### *Of Relative Pronouns.*

Most Pronouns in French have a relative signification; but those which are properly so called are the following;

#### SING. and PLUR.

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1st. <i>qui, que,</i>        | <i>who, whom, or which.</i> |
| 2d. <i>de qui, or dont,</i>  | <i>of whom, or whose.</i>   |
| 3d. <i>à qui,</i>            | <i>to whom.</i>             |
| 1st. <i>quoi, qui, que,</i>  | <i>what.</i>                |
| 2d. <i>de quoi, or dont,</i> | <i>of what or which.</i>    |
| 3d. <i>à quoi,</i>           | <i>to what.</i>             |

#### SING. MASC. SING. FEM.

- |                                 |                  |
|---------------------------------|------------------|
| 1st. <i>lequel, laquelle,</i>   | <i>which.</i>    |
| 2d. <i>duquel, de laquelle,</i> | <i>of which.</i> |
| 3d. <i>auquel, à laquelle,</i>  | <i>to which.</i> |

#### PLUR. MASC. PLUR. FEM.

- |                                   |                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1st. <i>lesquels, lesquelles,</i> | <i>which.</i>             |
| 2d. <i>desquels, desquelles,</i>  | <i>of which or whose.</i> |
| 3d. <i>auxquels, auxquelles,</i>  | <i>to which.</i>          |

## SECTION V.

### *Of Interrogative Pronouns.*

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1st. <i>qui, who, or whom.</i>      | <i>que, what.</i>                |
| 2d. <i>de qui, of or from whom.</i> | <i>de quoi, of or from what.</i> |
| 3d. <i>à qui, to whom.</i>          | <i>à quoi, to what.</i>          |

After the same manner is declined.

#### SING.

#### PLUR.

- |                |                   |                  |                          |
|----------------|-------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| M. <i>quel</i> | F. <i>quelle,</i> | M. <i>quels,</i> | F. <i>quelles, what.</i> |
|----------------|-------------------|------------------|--------------------------|

This pronoun is always followed by a substantive.



SING. MASC. SING. FEM.

1st. lequel, laquelle, *which*.2d. duquel, de laquelle, *of or from which*.3d. auquel, à laquelle, *to which*.

PLUR. MASC. PLUR. FEM.

1st. lesquels, lesquelles, *which*.2d. desquels, desquelles, *of or from which*.3d. auxquels, auxquelles, *to which*.

## SECTION VI.

*Of Indefinite Pronouns.*

SING.

PLUR.

MASC. and FEM.

MASC. and FEM.

1st. quelque.

quelques, *some*.

2d. de quelque.

de quelques, *of or from some*.

3d. à quelque.

à quelques, *to some*.

After the same manner are declined,  
 quelqu'un, *masc. sing.*; quelqu'une, *fem. sing.*; quelques-uns, *masc. pl.*; quelques-unes, *fem. pl.*; *some, somebody*.  
 chaque, chacun, chacune, *every, each*.  
 quiconque, qui que ce soit, *whoever*.  
 pas un, aucun, nul, personne, *nobody*.  
 rien, *nothing*; plusieurs, *many*.

SING. MASC.

SING. FEM.

1st. l'un l'autre.

l'une l'autre, *one another*.

2d. l'un de l'autre.

l'une de l'autre, *of one another*.

3d. l'un à l'autre.

l'une à l'autre, *to one another*.

PLUR. MASC.

PLUR. FEM.

les uns les autres.

les unes les autres, *one another*.

les uns des autres.

les unes des autres, *of one another*.

les uns aux autres.

les unes aux autres, *to one another*.

SING. MASC.

SING. FEM.

1st. l'un et l'autre.

l'une et l'autre, *both*.

2d. de l'un et de l'autre.

de l'une et de l'autre, *of both*.

3d. à l'un et à l'autre.

à l'une et à l'autre, *to both*.

## PLUR. MASC.

les uns et les autres.  
des uns et des autres.  
aux uns et aux autres.

## SING. MASC.

1st. l'un ou l'autre,  
2d. de l'un ou de l'autre.  
3d. à l'un ou à l'autre.

## PLUR. MASC.

les uns ou les autres.  
des uns ou des autres.  
aux uns ou aux autres.

## SING. MASC.

1st. ni l'un ni l'autre.  
2d. ni de l'un ni de l'autre.  
3d. ni à l'un ni à l'autre.

## PLUR. MASC.

ni les uns ni les autres.  
ni des uns ni des autres.  
ni aux uns ni aux autres.

## PLUR. FEM.

lès unes et les autres, *both*.  
des unes et des autres, *of both*.  
aux unes et aux autres, *to both*.

## SING. FEM.

l'une ou l'autre, *either*.  
de l'une ou de l'autre, *of either*.  
à l'une ou à l'autre, *to either*.

## PLUR. FEM.

les unes ou les autres, *either*.  
des unes ou des autres, *of either*.  
aux unes ou aux autres, *to either*.

## SING. FEM.

ni l'une ni l'autre, *neither*.  
ni de l'une ni de l'autre, *if neith*.  
ni à l'une ni à l'autre, *to neither*.

## PLUR. FEM.

ni les unes ni les autres, *neither*.  
ni des unes ni des autres, *of neith*.  
ni aux unes ni aux autres, *to nei*.

## CHAP. VII.

## OF VERBS.

*Preliminary Observations.*

1. **A**LL personal verbs are conjugated with these pronouns, *je, tu, il, or elle*, for the singular, and *nous, vous, ils, or elles*, for the plural.

2. All pronominal verbs are conjugated with these pronouns, *je me, tu te, il se, or elle se; nous nous, vous vous, ils se, or elles se; e*, in *me, te, se*, is omitted, and an apostrophe is put in it's place, when the following word begins with a vowel.

3. All active verbs are conjugated in this manner when the action returns upon the agent that produces it. It is properly what is called a reflected verb.

4. Reflected verbs, in a reciprocal sense, are used in the plural only; as, *ils se contrarient*, they contradict one another.

5. All active verbs are conjugated in their compound tenses by the help of the auxiliary *avoir*, as is likewise the verb *être*.

6. Reflective and reciprocal verbs are always conjugated in their compound tenses by the help of *être*; as are also these following verbs, *aller, aborder, arriver, accourir, décider, descendre, entrer, monter, mourir, naître, partir, retourner, sortir, tomber, venir*, and their derivatives, except when used actively.

7. In all the verbs of the first conjugation, terminating in *ger*, *e* is retained through all the tenses and moods whenever *g* is to be followed by *a* or *o*; as *manger*, to eat, *mangeant*, eating; *nous mangeons*, we eat.

8. The compound regular and irregular verbs commonly follow the conjugation of the simple, from which they are derived.

9. The termination of the tenses B, D, E, (*see page 78*) is the same in all verbs, both regular and irregular.

10. Custom requires, that an *s* should be added to the second person of the imperative mood in verbs of the first conjugation, when they are followed by the particles *en* and *y*; as, *disposes-en*; *penses-y*; *vas-y*; the latter takes *t*, when it is followed by *en*; as, *va-t'en*.

### Conjugation

Of the auxiliary verb AVOIR, *to have*.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

AVOIR, *to have*.

### PARTICIPLES.

#### PRESENT.

Ayant, *having*.

#### PAST.

| Eu, *had*.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

J'ai, *I have*,  
tu as, *thou hast*,  
Il \*, *he has*.

#### PLURAL.

| Nous avons, *we have*,  
vous avez, *you have*,  
ils + ont, *they have*.

\* Oe elle, she, in the third person singular of all verbs.

+ Oe elles, for the feminine, in all verbs in the third person plural.

## Imperfect.

J'avois, *I had,*  
tu avois, *thou hadst,*  
il avoit, *he had.*

Nous avions, *we had,*  
vous aviez, *you had,*  
ils avoient, *they had.*

## Preterit.

J'eus, *I had,*  
tu eus, *thou hadst,*  
il eut, *he had.*

Nous eûmes, *we had,*  
vous eûtes, *you had,*  
ils eurent, *they had.*

## Future.

J'aurai, *I shall or will*  
tu auras, *thou shalt*  
il aura, *he shall*

} *have.*

Nous aurons, *we shall*  
vous aurez, *you shall*  
ils auront, *they shall*

} *have.*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

J'aurois, *I should \**  
tu aurois, *thou shouldst*  
il auroit, *he should*

} *have.*

## PLURAL.

Nous aurions, *we should*  
vous auriez, *you should*  
ils auroient, *they should*

} *have.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Aye, *have thou,*  
qu'il ait, *let him have,*  
qu'elle ait, *let her have.*

## PLURAL.

Ayons, *let us have,*  
ayez, *have you, [them have.*  
qu'ils, or qu'elles aient, *let*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## que SINGULAR.

J'aye, *that I may*  
tu ayes, *thou mayest*  
il ait, *he may*

} *have.*

## que PLURAL.

Nous ayons, *we may*  
vous ayez, *you may*  
ils aient, *they may*

} *have.*

## Preterit.

J'eusse, *that I might †*  
tu eusses, *thou mightest*  
il eût, *he might*

} *have.*

Nous eussions, *we might*  
vous eussiez, *you might*  
ils eussent, *they might*

} *have.*

\* Or *I could, would, or might have.*

† Or *I had or could, would or should have.*



Now, to have the compound tenses, you need on'y add, after each person, the participle past, *eu*, for the French, and *had*, for the English, through all the tenses and moods; as *j'ai eu*, I have had, and so on.

## Conjugation

Of the auxiliary verb *ETRE*, *to be*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*ETRE*, *to be*.

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

*Etant*, *being*.

## PAST.

*Eté*, *been*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

*Je suis*, *I am*,  
*tu es*, *thou art*,  
*il est*, *he is*.

## PLURAL.

*Nous sommes*, *we are*,  
*vous êtes*, *you are*,  
*ils sont*, *they are*.

## Imperfect.

*J'étois*, *I was*,  
*tu étois*, *thou wast*,  
*il étoit*, *he was*.

*Nous étions*, *we were*,  
*vous étiez*, *you were*,  
*ils étoient*, *they were*.

## Preterit.

*Je fus*, *I was*,  
*tu fus*, *thou wast*,  
*il fut*, *he was*.

*Nous fûmes*, *we were*,  
*vous fûtes*, *you were*,  
*ils furent*, *they were*.

## Future.

*Je serai*, *I shall or will*  
*tu seras*, *thou shalt*  
*il sera*, *he shall*

*Nous serons*, *we shall*  
*vous serez*, *you shall*  
*il seront*, *they shall*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

*Je serois*, *I should*  
*tu serois*, *thou shouldst*  
*il seroit*, *he should*

## PLURAL.

*Nous serions*, *we should*  
*vous seriez*, *you should*  
*ils seroient*, *they should*

# A GRAMMAR OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Sois, *be thou,*  
qu'il soit, *let him be,*  
qu'elle soit, *let her be.*

## PLURAL.

Soyons, *let us be,*  
soyez, *be you,* [*them be.*]  
qu'ils or qu'elles soient, *let*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je sois, *that I may*  
tu sois, *thou mayst*  
il soit, *he may*

} *be.*

que PLURAL.

Nous soyons, *we may*  
vous soyez, *you may*  
il soient, *they may*

} *be.*

que

Je fusse, *that I might*  
tu fusse, *thou mightest*  
il fût, *he might*

## Preterit.

} *be.*

Nous fussions, *we might*  
vous fussiez, *you might*  
ils fussent, *they might*

} *be.*

The compound tenses of this verb are formed by the help of the auxiliary verb *avoir* through all its tenses and moods, by adding, after each person and tense, *été* for the French, and *been* for the English; as *j'ai été*, I have been, &c.; *j'avois été*, I had been, &c.; and so on.

Observe, 1st, the compound tenses of all other verbs, both regular and irregular, are formed by the help of these two auxiliary verbs, by adding the participle past of the verb you are conjugating, after each tense and person of the auxiliary verb. For example, to find all the compound tenses of the verb *parler*, to speak, its past participle being *parlé*, you need only put *parlé*, after the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*.

Observe, 2dly, those verbs that are conjugated by the help of *être* are only compounded of the simple tenses of that auxiliary verb; that is, the compound tenses of the verb *être* do not serve for the compound of others; but the compound tenses of the verb *avoir* may serve, though seldom, for the compound of others: consequently, verbs conjugated by the help of *avoir* are sometimes compounded of it's compound tenses, and those conjugated by the help of *être* are only compounded of its simple tenses. The reason of it may be, because the compound tenses of the

verb *être* are formed by the help of the verb *avoir*, which reflective, and some neuter, verbs will not admit. Except from this observation verbs used passively, which are conjugated by the help of *être* in all its tenses, both simple and compound.

N. B. For what verbs are conjugated by the help of *avoir* or the help of *être*—see *Preliminary Observations*, p. 73, Art. 5 and 6.

*Conjugation of regular Verbs.*

It is very indifferent how many conjugations we admit. Some admit four, others ten or eleven. We shall reckon six.

|      |                                   |        |                                |
|------|-----------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|
| 1st. | <i>er</i>                         | } as { | aimer, <i>to love.</i>         |
| 2d.  | <i>ir</i>                         |        | punir, <i>to punish.</i>       |
| 3d.  | <i>avoir</i>                      |        | devoir, <i>to owe.</i>         |
| 4th. | <i>re</i> preceded by <i>d</i>    |        | vendre, <i>to sell.</i>        |
| 5th. | <i>re</i> preceded by <i>ui</i>   |        | traduire, <i>to translate.</i> |
| 6th. | <i>re</i> preceded by <i>ind.</i> |        | joindre, <i>to join.</i>       |

TERMINATIONS of the PRIMITIVE TENSES of the REGULAR VERBS.

Infinitive. Participle Present. Participle Present of the Ind. of the In.  
Present. Passive. M. F.

|            |       |              |         |      |      |       |         |
|------------|-------|--------------|---------|------|------|-------|---------|
| 1st. conj. | aim-  | <i>er</i>    | -ant    | -é   | ée   | -e    | -ai     |
| 2d. conj.  | pun-  | <i>ir</i>    | -issant | -i   | ie   | -is   | -is     |
| 3d. conj.  | d-    | <i>avoir</i> | -evant  | -u   | ue   | -ois  | -us     |
| 4th. conj. | vend- | <i>re</i>    | -ant    | -u   | ue   | -s    | -is     |
| 5th. conj. | trad- | <i>uire</i>  | -uisant | -uit | uite | -uis. | -uiss   |
| 6th. conj. | jo-   | <i>indre</i> | -ignant | -int | inte | -ins  | -ignis. |

## A GRAMMAR OF THE

Unvariable TERMINATIONS in all the  
CONJUGATIONS.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

| SINGULAR.  |          |      | Present Tense. |       | PLURAL. |         |
|------------|----------|------|----------------|-------|---------|---------|
| A.         | Variable |      |                | -ons  | -ez     | -ent    |
| Imperfect. |          |      |                |       |         |         |
| B.         | -ois     | -ois | -oit           | -ions | -iez    | -oient  |
| Preterit.  |          |      |                |       |         |         |
| 1. }       | -ai      | -as  | -a             | -âmes | -âtes   | -èrent  |
| 2. }       | -is      | -is  | -it            | -îmes | -îtes   | -irent  |
| 3. }       | -us      | -us  | -ut            | -ûmes | -ûtes   | -urent  |
| 4. }       | -ins     | -ins | -int           | -îmes | -îtes   | -inrent |
| Future.    |          |      |                |       |         |         |
| D.         | -rai     | -ras | -ra            | -rons | -rez    | -ront   |

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

|    |       |       |       |        |       |         |
|----|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|---------|
| E. | -rois | -rois | -roit | -rions | -riez | -roient |
|----|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|---------|

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| Present Tense. |        |         |      |           |          |          |
|----------------|--------|---------|------|-----------|----------|----------|
| F.             | -e     | -es     | -e   | -ions     | -iez     | -ent     |
| Preterit.      |        |         |      |           |          |          |
| 1. }           | -asse  | -asses  | -ât  | -assions  | -assiez  | -assent  |
| 2. }           | -isse  | -isses  | -ît  | -issions  | -issiez  | -issent  |
| 3. }           | -usse  | -usses  | -ût  | -ussions  | -ussiez  | -ussent  |
| 4. }           | -insie | -insses | -înt | -inssions | -inssiez | -inssent |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Participle Present.

H. -ant.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|    |          |      |     |      |
|----|----------|------|-----|------|
| K. | Variable | -ons | -ez | ent. |
|----|----------|------|-----|------|

First Conjugation.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

AIM-ER, *to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Aim-ant, *loving.*

PAST.

| Aim-é, *loved.*



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense

## SINGULAR.

J'aime, *I love*\*,  
tu aimes, *thou lovest*,  
il aime, *he loves*.

## PLURAL.

Nous aimons, *we love*,  
vous aimez, *you love*,  
ils aiment, *they love*.

## Imperfect.

J'aimois, *I did love*,  
tu aimois, *thou didst love*,  
il aimoit, *he did love*.

Nous aimions, *we did love*,  
vous aimiez, *you did love*,  
ils aimoient, *they did love*.

## Preterit.

J'aimai, *I loved*,  
tu aimas, *thou lovedst*,  
il aima, *he loved*.

Nous aimâmes, *we loved*,  
vous aimâtes, *you loved*,  
ils aimèrent, *they loved*.

## Future.

J'aimerai, *I shall or will love*,  
tu aimeras, *thou shalt love*,  
il aimera, *he shall love*.

Nous aimerons, *we shall love*,  
vous aimerez, *you shall love*,  
ils aimeront, *they shall love*.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

J'aimerois, *I should love*,  
tu aimerois, *thou shouldst love*,  
il aimerait, *he should love*.

## PLURAL.

Nous aimerions *we sh. love*,  
vous aimeriez, *you should love*,  
ils aimeroient, *they sho. love*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Aime, *love thou* †,  
qu'il aime, *let him love*,  
qu'elle aime, *let her love*.

## PLURAL.

Aimons, *let us love*,  
aimez, *love you*,  
qu'ils aiment, *let them love*.

\* Or *I do love*, or *I am loving*, which is to be observed in all other verbs.

† Or, *I was loving*, or *I was used to love*, or *I used to love*. It is the same in all other verbs.

‡ Or, *do thou love*; and likewise in all other verbs.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

J'aime, *that I may love,*  
 tu aimes, *thou mayst love,*  
 il aime, *he may love.*

que PLURAL.

Nous aimions, *we may love,*  
 vous aimiez, *you may love,*  
 ils aiment, *they may love.*

que

## Preterit.

J'aimasse, *that I might love,*  
 tu aimasses, *thou mightest love,*  
 il aimât, *he might love.*

Nous aimassions, *we mi. love,*  
 vous aimassiez, *you mig. love,*  
 ils aimassent, *they might love.*

## Second Conjugation.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PUN-IR, *to punish.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Pun-issant, *punishing.*

PAST.

Pun-i, *punished.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je punis, *I punish,*  
 tu punis, *thou punishest,*  
 il punit, *he punishes.*

PLURAL.

Nous punissons, *we punish,*  
 vous punissez, *you punish,*  
 ils punissent, *they punish.*

## Imperfect.

Je punissois, *I did punish,*  
 tu punissois, *thou didst punish,*  
 il punissoit, *he did punish.*

Nous punissions, *we did*  
 vous punissiez, *you did*  
 ils punissoient, *they did* } *punish.*

## Preterit.

Je punis, *I punished,*  
 tu punis, *thou punishedst,*  
 il punit, *he punished.*

Nous punîmes, *we punished,*  
 vous punîtes, *you punished,*  
 ils punirent, *they punished.*

## Future.

Je punirai, *I shall punish,*  
 tu puniras, *thou shalt punish,*  
 il punira, *he shall punish.*

Nous punirons, *we shall*  
 vous punirez, *you shall*  
 ils puniront, *they shall* } *punish.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Je punirois, *I should*  
tu punirois, *thou shouldst*  
il puniroit, *he should*

} *punish.*

PLURAL.

Nous punirions, *we sho.*  
vous puniriez, *you shou.*  
ils puniroient, *they sho.*

} *punish.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Punis, *punish thou,*  
qu'il punisse, *let him punish,*  
qu'elle punisse, *let her punish.*

PLURAL.

Punissons, *let us punish,*  
punissez, *punish you,* [*nish*]  
qu'ils punissent, *let them pu-*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je punisse, *that I may*  
tu punisses, *thou mayst*  
il punisse, *he may*

} *punish.*

que PLURAL.

Nous punissions, *we may*  
vous punissiez, *you may*  
ils punissent, *they may*

} *punish.*

que

Preterit.

Je punisse, *that I might*  
tu punisses, *thou mightest*  
il punît, *he might*

} *punish.*

Nous punissions, *we mi.*  
vous punissiez, *you might*  
ils punissent, *they might*

} *punish.*

Third Conjugation.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

D-EOIR, *to owe.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

D-avant, *owing.*

PAST.

| D-û, *owed.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je dois, *I owe,*  
tu dois, *thou owest,*  
il doit, *he owes.*

PLURAL.

Nous devons, *we owe,*  
vous devez, *you owe,*  
ils doivent, *they owe.*

Imperfect.

Je devois, *I did owe,*  
tu devois, *thou didst owe,*  
il devoit, *he did owe.*

Nous devions, *we did owe,*  
vous deviez, *you did owe,*  
ils devaient, *they did owe.*

| SINGULAR.                   | Preterit. | PLURAL.                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| Je dus, <i>I owed,</i>      |           | Nous dûmes, <i>we owed,</i>   |
| tu dus, <i>thou owedst,</i> |           | vous dûtes, <i>you owed,</i>  |
| il dut, <i>he owed.</i>     |           | ils durent, <i>they owed.</i> |

## Future.

|                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Je devrai, <i>I shall owe,</i>    | Nous devrons, <i>we shall owe,</i>  |
| tu devras, <i>thou shalt owe,</i> | vous devrez, <i>you shall owe,</i>  |
| il devra, <i>he shall owe.</i>    | ils devront, <i>they shall owe.</i> |

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| SINGULAR.                             | PLURAL.                                |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Je devrois, <i>I should owe,</i>      | Nous devrions, <i>we should owe,</i>   |
| tu devrois, <i>thou shouldst owe,</i> | vous devriez, <i>you should owe,</i>   |
| il devroit, <i>he should owe.</i>     | ils devroient, <i>they should owe.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| SINGULAR.                          | PLURAL.                              |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Dois, <i>owe thou,</i>             | Devons, <i>let us owe,</i>           |
| qu'il doive, <i>let him owe,</i>   | devez, <i>owe you,</i>               |
| qu'elle doive, <i>let her owe,</i> | qu'ils doivent, <i>let them owe.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

| que SINGULAR.                      | que PLURAL.                       |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Je doive, <i>that I may owe,</i>   | Nous devions, <i>we may owe,</i>  |
| tu doives, <i>thou mayest owe,</i> | vous deviez, <i>you may owe,</i>  |
| il doive, <i>he may owe.</i>       | ils doivent, <i>they may owe.</i> |

que

## Preterit.

|                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Je dusse, <i>that I might owe,</i>   | Nous dussions, <i>we might owe,</i> |
| tu dusses, <i>thou mightest owe,</i> | vous dussiez, <i>you might owe,</i> |
| il dût, <i>he might owe.</i>         | ils dussent, <i>they might owe.</i> |

## Fourth Conjugation.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

VEN-DRE, *to sell.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Ven-dant, *selling.*

## PAST.

Ven-du, *sold.*



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je vends, *I sell,*  
tu vends, *thou sellest,*  
il vend, *he sells.*

## PLURAL.

Nous vendons, *we sell,*  
vous vendez, *you sell,*  
ils vendent, *they sell.*

## Imperfect.

Je vendois, *I did sell,*  
tu vendois, *thou didst sell,*  
il vendoit, *he did sell.*

Nous vendions, *we did sell,*  
vous vendiez, *you did sell,*  
ils vendoient, *they did sell.*

## Preterit.

Je vendis, *I sold,*  
tu vendis, *thou soldest,*  
il vendit, *he sold.*

Nous vendîmes, *we sold,*  
vous vendîtes, *you sold,*  
il vendirent, *they sold.*

## Future.

Je vendrai, *I shall sell,*  
tu vendras, *thou shalt sell,*  
il vendra, *he shall sell.*

Nous vendrons, *we shall sell,*  
vous vendrez, *you shall sell,*  
ils vendront, *they shall sell.*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Je vendrois, *I should sell,*  
tu vendrois, *thou shouldst sell,*  
il vendroit, *he should sell.*

## PLURAL.

Nous vendrions, *we should sell,*  
vous vendriez, *you should sell,*  
ils vendroient, *they should sell.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Vends, *sell thou,*  
qu'il vende, *let him sell,*  
qu'elle vende, *let her sell.*

## PLURAL.

Vendons, *let us sell,*  
vendez, *sell you.*  
qu'ils vendent, *let them sell.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.  
Je vende, *that I may sell,*  
tu vendes, *thou mayest sell,*  
il vende, *he may sell.*

que PLURAL.  
Nous vendions, *we may sell,*  
vous vendiez, *you may sell,*  
ils vendent, *they may sell.*

## Preterit.

que  
Je vendisse, *that I might sell.*  
tu vendisses, *thou mightest sell,*  
il vendît, *he might sell.*

Nous vendissions, *we might sell,*  
vous vendissiez, *you might sell,*  
ils vendissent, *they might sell.*

## A GRAMMAR OF THE

## Fifth Conjugation.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

TRAD-UIRE, *to translate.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Trad-uisant, *translating.*

## PAST.

Trad-uit, *translated.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je traduis, *I translate,*  
 tu traduis, *thou translatest,*  
 il traduit, *he translates.*

## PLURAL.

Nous traduisons, *we transl.*  
 vous traduisez, *you translate,*  
 ils traduisent, *they translate.*

## Imperfect.

Je traduisois, *I did*  
 tu traduisois, *thou didst*  
 il traduisoit, *he did*

} *transl.*

Nous traduisions, *we did*  
 vous traduisiez, *you did*  
 ils traduisoient, *they did*

} *transl.*

## Preterit.

Je traduisis, *I translated,*  
 tu traduisis, *thou translatedst,*  
 il traduisit, *he translated.*

Nous traduisîmes, *we*  
 vous traduisîtes, *you*  
 ils traduisirent, *they*

} *transl.*

## Future.

Je traduirai, *I shall*  
 tu traduiras, *thou shalt*  
 il traduira, *he shall*

} *transl.*

Nous traduirons, *we sha.*  
 vous traduirez, *you shall*  
 ils traduiront, *they shall*

} *transl.*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Je traduirois, *I should*  
 tu traduirois, *thou should.*  
 il traduirait, *he should*

} *transl.*

## PLURAL.

Nous traduirions, *we sh.*  
 vous tradiriez, *you sh.*  
 ils traduiroient, *they sh.*

} *transl.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Traduis, *translate thou,*  
 qu'il traduise, *let him transl.*  
 qu'elle traduise, *let her tran,*

## PLURAL.

Traduisons, *let us translate,*  
 traduisez, *translate you,*  
 qu'ils traduisent, *let them tr.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je traduise, *that I may*  
 tu traduisés, *thou mayest*  
 il traduise, *he may*

que PLURAL.

Nous traduisions, *we may*  
 vous traduisiez, *you may*  
 ils traduisent, *they may*

## Preterit.

que

Je traduisisse, *that I mi.*  
 tu traduisisses, *thou mi.*  
 il traduisît, *he might*

Nous traduisissions, *we*  
 vous traduisissiez, *you*  
 ils traduisissent, *they m.*

## Sixth Conjugation.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Jo-INDRE, *to join.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Jo-ignant, *joining.*

PAST.

Jo-int, *joined.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je joins, *I join,*  
 tu joins, *thou joinest,*  
 il joint, *he joins.*

PLURAL.

Nous joignons, *we join,*  
 vous joignez, *you join,*  
 ils joignent, *they join.*

## Imperfect.

Je joignois, *I did join,*  
 tu joignois, *thou didst join,*  
 il joignoit, *he did join.*

Nous joignions, *we did join,*  
 vous joigniez, *you did join,*  
 ils joignoient, *they did join.*

## Preterit.

Je joignis, *I joined,*  
 tu joignis, *thou joinedst,*  
 il joignit, *he joined.*

Nous joignîmes, *we joined,*  
 vous joignîtes, *you joined,*  
 ils joignirent, *they joined.*

## Future.

Je joindrai, *I shall join,*  
 tu joindras, *thou shalt join,*  
 il joindra, *he shall join.*

Nous joindrons, *we shall join,*  
 vous joindrez, *you shall join,*  
 ils joindront, *they shall join.*

# A GRAMMAR OF THE CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Je joindrois, *I should join,*  
tu joindrois, *thou shouldst join.*  
il joindroit, *he should join.*

## PLURAL.

Nous joindrions, *we sh. join,*  
vous joindriez, *you sh. join,*  
ils joindraient, *they sh. join.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Joins, *join thou,*  
qu'il joigne, *let him join,*  
qu'elle joigne, *let her join.*

## PLURAL.

Joignons, *let us join,*  
joignez, *join you,*  
qu'ils joignent, *let them join.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je joigne, *that I may join,*  
tu joignes, *thou mayest join,*  
il joigne, *he may join.*

que PLURAL.

Nous joignons, *we may join,*  
vous joigniez, *you may join,*  
ils joignent, *they may join.*

que

## Preterit.

Je joignisse, *that I might join,*  
tu joignisses, *thou mightest join.*  
il joignît, *he might join.*

Nous joignissions, *we mi. join.*  
vous joignissiez, *you mig. join.*  
ils joignissent, *they mig. join.*

## Conjugation of Reflected Verbs.

A Reflected Verb, as I have hinted before, has always *se* before it's infinitive; as, *se repentir*, to repent; but it is generally an active verb, the action of which returns upon the agent that produces it. The following example of the first conjugation will be sufficient, to teach how to conjugate any reflected verb.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

SE LEVER, *to rise.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Se levant, *rising.*

## PAST.

Levé, *risen.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je me lève, *I rise,*  
tu te lèves, *thou risest,*  
il se lève, *he rises.*

## PLURAL.

Nous nous levons, *we rise,*  
vous vous levez, *you rise,*  
ils se lèvent, *they rise.*



SINGULAR.

Imperfect.

PLURAL.

Je me levois, *I did rise,*  
tu te lévois, *thou didst rise,*  
il se levoit, *he did rise.*

Nous nous levions, *we did ri.*  
vous vous leviez, *we did rise,*  
ils se levoient, *they did rise.*

Preterit.

Je me levai, *I rose,*  
tu te levas, *thou didst rise,*  
il se leva, *he did rise.*

Nous nous levâmes, *we rose,*  
vous vous levâtes, *you rose,*  
ils se levèrent, *they rose.*

Future.

Je me leverai, *I shall rise,*  
tu te leveras, *thou shalt rise,*  
il se levera, *he shall rise.*

[*rise,*  
Nous nous leverons, *we shall*  
vous vous leverez, *you sh. ri.*  
ils se leveront, *they sh. rise.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

[*rise,*

Je me leverois, *I should rise,*  
tu te leverois, *thou shou. rise,*  
il se leveroit, *he should rise.*

Nous nous leverions, *we sh.*  
vous vous leveriez, *you sh. rise,*  
ils se leveroient, *they sh. rise.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Lève-toi, *rise thou,*  
qu'il se lève, *let him rise,*  
qu'elle se lève, *let her rise.*

Levons-nous, *let us rise,*  
levez-vous, *rise you,*  
qu'ils se lèvent, *let them rise.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

que  
Je me lève, *that I may rise,*  
tu te lèves, *thou mayest rise,*  
il se lève, *he may rise.*

que. [*rise,*  
Nous nous levions, *we may*  
vous vous leviez, *you may ri.*  
ils se lèvent, *they may rise.*

Preterit.

que  
Je me levasse, *that I might ri.*  
tu te levasses, *that mightest ri.*  
il se levât, *he might rise.*

[*rise,*  
Nous nous levassions, *we mi.*  
vous vous levassiez, *you mi. ri.*  
ils se levassent, *they mi. rise.*

There are neuter verbs, which become reflected by the addition of the particle *en* immediately after the double

pronouns, *s'en aller*, to go away; *s'en retourner*, to return.

A reciprocal verb, which is by no means to be confounded with a reflected one, is used in the plural only, and conjugated like reflected verbs with a double pronoun.

*Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs, alphabetically \*.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

ABSOLUDRE, to *absolve*.

### PARTICIPLES.

#### PRESENT.

Absolvant, *absolving*.

#### PAST.

| Absous, *absolved*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### SINGULAR.

J'absous, *I absolve*,  
tu absous, *thou absolvest*,  
il absout, *he absolves*.

#### PLURAL.

Nous absolvons, *we absolve*,  
vous absolvez, *you absolve*,  
ils absolvent, *they absolve*.

#### Imperfect.

J'absolvois, *I did absolve*,  
tu absolvois, *thou didst absol.*  
il absolvoit, *he did absolve*.

Nous absolvions, *we did abs.*  
vous absolviez, *you did absol.*  
ils absolvoient, *they did absol.*

#### Future.

J'absoudrai, *I shall*  
tu absoudras, *thou shalt*  
il absoudra, *he shall*

} *absolve* | Nous absoudrons, *we sh.*  
vous absoudrez, *you sh.*  
ils absoudront, *they sh.* } *absolve*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

#### SINGULAR.

J'absoudrois, *I should*  
tu absoudrois, *thou sho.*  
il absoudroit, *he should*

} *absolve* | Nous absoudrions, *we s.*  
vous absoudriez, *you sh.*  
ils absoudroient, *they sh.* } *absolve*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### SINGULAR.

Absous, *absolve thou*,  
qu'il absolve, *let him absolve*.

#### PLURAL.

Absolvons, *let us absolve*,  
absolvez, *absolve you*,  
qu'ils absolvent, *let them abs.*

\* When a tense is not conjugated at length, you will find a reference to the proper tense in the table of terminations, p. 78.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

| que SINGULAR.                   |                   | que PLURAL.                    |                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| J'absolve, <i>that I may</i>    | } <i>absolve.</i> | Nous absolvions, <i>we m.</i>  | } <i>absolve.</i> |
| tu absolves, <i>thou mayest</i> |                   | vous absolviez, <i>you may</i> |                   |
| il absolve, <i>he may</i>       |                   | ils absolvent, <i>they may</i> |                   |

ABSTRAIRE, *to abstract*, like *traire*.

ACCUEILLIR, *to receive*, like *cueillir*.

ACCOURIR, *to run to*, like *courir*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

ACQUERIR, *to acquire*.

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Acquérant, *acquiring*.

| Acquis, *acquired*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

J'acquires, *I acquire*,  
tu acquiers, *thou acquirest*,  
il acquiert, *he acquires*.

Nous acquérons, *we acquire*,  
vous acquérez, *you acquire*,  
ils acquièrent, *they acquire*.

## Imperfect.

J'acquérois, *I did*  
tu acquérois, *thou didst*  
il acquéroit, *he did*

Nous acquérions, *we did*  
vous acquériez, *you did*  
ils acquéroient, *they did*

## Preterit.

J'acquis, *I acquired*,  
tu acquis, *thou acquiredst*,  
il acquit, *he acquired*.

Nous acquîmes, *we acquired*,  
vous acquîtes, *you acquired*,  
ils acquirent, *they acquired*.

## Future.

J'acquerrai, *I shall acquire*. See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

J'acquerrais, *I should acquire*. See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Acquiers, *acquire thou*.  
qu'il acquière, *let him acqui*.

Acquérons, *let us acquire*,  
acquérez, *acquire you*,  
qu'ils acquièrent, *let them ac*.

# A GRAMMAR OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| que                              | SINGULAR. |  | PLURAL.                         |           |
|----------------------------------|-----------|--|---------------------------------|-----------|
| J'acquière, <i>I may</i>         | } acquire |  | Nous acquérons, <i>we m.</i>    | } acquire |
| tu acquières, <i>thou mayest</i> |           |  | vous acquériez, <i>you may</i>  |           |
| il acquière, <i>he may</i>       |           |  | ils acquièrent, <i>they may</i> |           |

|                                 |           |           |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| que                             |           | Preterit. |                                   |
| J'acquisse, <i>I might</i>      | } acquire |           | Nous acquisitions, <i>we mi.</i>  |
| tu acquisses, <i>thou might</i> |           |           | vous acquissiez, <i>you mi.</i>   |
| il acquît, <i>he might</i>      |           |           | ils acquissent, <i>they migh.</i> |
|                                 |           |           | } acquire                         |

ADMETTRE, *to admit, like mettre.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

ALLER, *to go.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Allant, *going.*

| Allé, *gone.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                  | PLURAL.                    |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Je vais, <i>I go,</i>      | Nous allons, <i>we go,</i> |
| tu vas, <i>thou goest,</i> | vous allez, <i>you go,</i> |
| il va, <i>he goes.</i>     | ils vont, <i>they go.</i>  |

Imperfect.

|                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| J'allois, <i>I did go,</i>       | Nous allions, <i>we did go,</i>   |
| tu allois, <i>thou didst go,</i> | vous alliez, <i>you did go,</i>   |
| il alloit, <i>he did go.</i>     | ils alloient, <i>they did go.</i> |

Preterit.

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| J'allai, <i>I went,</i>        | Nous allâmes, <i>we went.</i>   |
| tu allas, <i>thou wentest,</i> | vous allâtes, <i>you went,</i>  |
| il alla, <i>he went.</i>       | ils allèrent, <i>they went.</i> |

Future.

|                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| J'irai, <i>I shall go,</i>     | Nous irons, <i>we shall go,</i>  |
| tu iras, <i>thou shalt go,</i> | vous irez, <i>you shall go,</i>  |
| il ira, <i>he shall go.</i>    | ils iront, <i>they shall go.</i> |

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| SINGULAR.                          | PLURAL.                             |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| J'irois, <i>I should go,</i>       | Nous irions, <i>we shou'd go,</i>   |
| tu irois, <i>thou shouldst go,</i> | vous iriez, <i>you should go,</i>   |
| il iroit, <i>he should go.</i>     | ils iroient, <i>they should go.</i> |



IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Va, *go thou,*  
qu'il aille, *let him go,*

PLURAL.

Allez, *let us go,*  
allez, *go you,*  
qu'ils aillent, *let them go.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

J'aille, *I may go,*  
tu ailles, *thou mayest go,*  
il aille, *he may go.*

PLURAL.

Nous allions, *we may go,*  
vous alliez, *you may go,*  
ils aillent, *they may go.*

que

Præterit.

J'allasse, *I might go,*  
tu allasses, *thou mightest go,*  
il allât, *he might go.*

Nous allussions, *we might go,*  
vous allassiez, *you might go,*  
ils allassent, *they might go.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

S'ASSEOIR, *to sit down.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

S'Asseyant, *sitting down.*

PAST.

Assis, *sat down.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je m'assieds, *I sit down,*  
tu t'assieds, *thou sittest down,*  
il s'assied, *he sits down.*

PLURAL.

[*down,*  
Nous nous asseyons, *we sit*  
vous vous asseyez, *you sit d.*  
ils s'asseyent, *they sit down.*

Imperfect.

Je m'asseyois, *I did sit down,*  
tu t'asseyois, *thou didst sit do.*  
il s'asseyoit, *he did sit down.*

[*sit down.*  
Nous nous asseyions, *we did*  
vous vous asseyiez, *you did*  
ils s'asseyoient, *they did sit d.*

Præterit.

Je m'assis, *I sat down,*  
tu t'assis, *thou sattest down,*  
il s'assit, *he sat down.*

Nous nous assîmes, *we sat do.*  
vous vous assîtes, *you sat do.*  
ils s'assirent, *they sat down.*

## Future.

| SINGULAR.                                | PLURAL.                                 |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Je m'assiérai *, <i>I shall sit do.</i>  | Nous nous assiérons, <i>we shall</i>    |
| tu t'assiéras, <i>thou shalt sit do.</i> | vous vous assiérez, <i>you sha. sit</i> |
| il s'assiéra, <i>he shall sit down.</i>  | il s'assiéront, <i>they sh. sit do.</i> |

\* Or, *Je m'asseyerai*, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

| SINGULAR.                                | PLURAL.                                    |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Je m'assiérais *, <i>I should sit</i>    | Nous nous assiérions, <i>we sh.</i>        |
| tu t'assiérais, <i>thou sho. sit do.</i> | vous vous assiériez, <i>you sho.</i>       |
| il s'assiérait, <i>he should sit do.</i> | ils s'assiéraient, <i>they sh. sit. d.</i> |

\* Or, *je m'asseyerais*.—*Ibid.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| SINGULAR.                                | PLURAL.                                   |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Assieds-toi, <i>sit thou down,</i>       | Asseyons-nous, <i>let us sit down</i>     |
| qu'il s'asseye, <i>let him sit down.</i> | asseyez-vous, <i>sit (you) down,</i>      |
|                                          | qu'ils s'asseyent, <i>let the. sit d.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                               | PLURAL.                                |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| que                                     | [ <i>sit down,</i>                     |
| Je m'asseye, <i>I may sit down,</i>     | Nous nous asseyions, <i>we may</i>     |
| tu t'asseyes, <i>thou mayst sit do.</i> | vous vous asseyiez, <i>you may s.</i>  |
| il s'asseye, <i>he may sit down.</i>    | il s'asseyent, <i>they may sit do.</i> |

## Preterit.

|                                            |                                          |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| que                                        | [ <i>sit down,</i>                       |
| Je m'assisse, <i>that I mig. sit d.</i>    | Nous nous assissions, <i>we mi.</i>      |
| tu t'assisses, <i>thou mightest sit d.</i> | vous vous assissiez, <i>you mi.</i>      |
| il s'assît, <i>he might sit down.</i>      | il s'assissent, <i>they mig. sit do.</i> |

Obs. Grammarians do not agree about the orthography of this verb: it has been conjugated according to the FRENCH ACADEMY.

APPRENDRE, *to learn*, like *prendre*.

ASSAILLIR, *to assault*, like *tressaillir*.

# FRENCH TONGUE.

93

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

BATTRE, *to beat.*

### PARTICIPLES.

Battant, *beating.*

| Battu, *beaten.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

Je bats, *I beat,*  
tu bats, *thou beatest,*  
il bat, *he beats.*

#### PLURAL.

| Nous battons, *we beat,*  
vous battez, *you beat,*  
ils battent, *they beat.*

### Imperfect.

Je batt-ois, *I did beat.* See p. 78. B.

### Preterit.

Je battis, *I beat,*  
tu battis, *thou beatest,*  
il battit, *he beat.*

| Nous battîmes, *we beat,*  
vous battîtes, *you beat,*  
ils battirent, *they beat.*

### Future.

Je batt-rai, *I shall beat.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je batt-rois, *I should beat.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### SINGULAR.

Bats, *beat thou,*  
qu'il batte, *let him beat.*

#### PLURAL.

| Battons, *let us beat,*  
battez, *beat you,*  
qu'ils battent, *let them beat.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

que  
Je batte, *that I may beat,*  
tu battes, *thou mayest beat,*  
il batte, *he may beat.*

#### PLURAL.

| Nous battions, *we may beat,*  
vous battiez, *you may beat,*  
ils battent, *they may beat.*

que  
Je battisse, *that I might beat,*

### Preterit.

tu battisses, *thou mightest beat,*  
il battît, *he might beat.*

| Nous battissions, *we mi. beat,*  
vous battissiez, *you might be.*  
ils battissent, *they might beat.*

# A GRAMMAR OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

BOIRE, *to drink.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Buvant, *drinking.*

PAST.

| Bu, *drunk.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je bois, *I drink,*  
tu bois, *thou drinkest,*  
il boit, *he drinks.*

PLURAL.

| Nous buvons, *we drink,*  
vous buvez, *you drink,*  
ils boivent, *they drink.*

Imperfect.

Je buv-ois, *I did drink.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

Je bus, *I drank,*  
tu bus, *thou drankest,*  
il but, *he drank.*

| Nous hûmes, *we drank,*  
vous bûtes, *you drank,*  
ils burent, *they drank.*

Future.

Je boi-rai, *I shall drink.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je boi-rois, *I should drink.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Bois, *drink thou,*  
qu'il boive, *let him drink.*

PLURAL.

| Buvons, *let us drink,*  
buvez, *drink you,*  
qu'ils boivent, *let them drink.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je boive, *I may drink,*  
tu boives, *thou mayest drink,*  
il boive, *he may drink,*

PLURAL.

| Nous buvions, *we may drink,*  
vous buviez, *you may drink,*  
ils boivent, *they may drink.*

que

Preterit.

Je busse, *I might drink,*  
tu busses, *thou mightest drink,*  
il bût, *he might drink,*

| Nous bussions, *we might dri.*  
vous bussiez, *you might drink,*  
ils bussent, *they might drink.*



INFINITIVE MOOD.

BOUILLIR, *to boil.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Bouillant, *boiling.*

| Bouilli, *boiled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je bous, *I boil,*

tu bous, *thou boilest,*

il bout, *he boils.*

| Nous bouillons, *we boil,*

vous bouillez, *you boil,*

ils bouillent, *they boil.*

Imperfect.

Je bouill-ois, *I did boil.* See page 78. B.

Preterit.

Je bouillis, *I boil'd,*

tu bouillis, *thou boiledst,*

il bouillit, *he boiled.*

| Nous bouillîmes, *we boiled,*

vous bouillîtes, *you boiled,*

ils bouillirent, *they boiled.*

Future.

Je bouilli-rai, *I shall boil.* See page 78. D.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je bouilli-rois, *I should boil.* See page 78. E.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Bous, *boil thou,*

qu'il bouille, *let him boil.*

| Bouillons, *let us boil,*

bouillez, *boil you,*

qu'ils bouillent, *let them boil.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je bouille, *I may boil,*

tu bouilles, *thou mayest boil,*

il bouille, *he may boil.*

| Nous bouillions, *we may boil,*

vous bouilliez, *you may boil,*

ils bouillent, *they may boil.*

que Preterit.

Je bouillisse, *I might boil,*

tu bouillisses, *thou might. boil,*

il bouillit, *he might boil.*

| Nous bouillissions, *we m. bo.*

vous bouillissiez, *you might b.*

ils bouillissent, *they might b.*

This verb is seldom used, except in the third persons singular and plural; and instead of *bouillir de la viande*, to boil meat, we say, *faire bouillir de la viande*.

CIRCONCIRE, *to circumcise.*

This verb is not of great use. It is conjugated like *lire*, to read, except in both the preter tenses, and in the past participle, where it makes *je circoncis, je circoncisse, circoncis.*

COMPRENDRE, *to understand, like prendre.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

CONCLURE, *to conclude.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Concluant, *concluding.*| Conclu, *concluded.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je conclus, *I conclude,*  
tu conclus, *thou concludest,*  
il conclut, *he concludes.*

Nous concluons, *we conclude,*  
vous concluez, *you conclude,*  
ils concluent, *they conclude.*

## Imperfect.

Je conclu-ois, *I did conclude.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je conclus, *I concluded,*  
tu conclus, *thou concludest,*  
il conclut, *he concluded.*

Nous conclûmes, *we conclude,*  
vous conclûtes, *you concluded,*  
ils conclurent, *they concluded.*

## Future.

Je conclu-rai, *I shall conclude.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je conclurois, *I should conclude.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Conclus, *conclude thou,*  
qu'il conclue, *let him conclude,*

| Concluons, *let us conclude,*  
concluez, *conclude you,*  
qu'ils concluent, *let them con.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

que  
Je conclue, *that I may conclude,*  
tu conclues, *thou mayst conclude,*  
il conclue, *he may conclude.*

| [conclude,  
Nous concluions, *we may*  
vous concluiez, *you may con.*  
ils concluent, *they may conc.*

## Preterit.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

|                                        |            |                                       |            |
|----------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| que                                    | [conclude, |                                       | [conclude, |
| Je conclusses, <i>that I might</i>     |            | Nous conclusions, <i>we might</i>     |            |
| tu conclusses, <i>thou mightest c.</i> |            | vous conclussiez, <i>you might c.</i> |            |
| il conclût, <i>he might conclude.</i>  |            | ils conclussent, <i>they might c.</i> |            |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

CONFIRE, *to pickle.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

|                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Confisant, <i>pickling.</i> | Confit, <i>pickled.</i> |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

|                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Je confis, <i>I pickle,</i>      | Nous confisons, <i>we pickle,</i>  |
| tu confis, <i>thou picklest,</i> | vous confisez, <i>you pickle,</i>  |
| il confit, <i>he pickles.</i>    | ils confisent, <i>they pickle.</i> |

## Imperfect.

Je confis-ois, *I did pickle.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

|                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Je confis, <i>I pickled,</i>      | Nous confîmes, <i>we pickled,</i>   |
| tu confis, <i>thou pickledst,</i> | vous confîtes, <i>you pickled,</i>  |
| il confit, <i>he pickled.</i>     | ils confirent, <i>they pickled.</i> |

## Future.

Je confi-rai, *I shall pickle,* See page 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je confi-rois. *I should pickle.* See page 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

|                                       |                                         |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Confis, <i>pickle thou,</i>           | Confisons, <i>let us pickle,</i>        |
| qu'il confise, <i>let him pickle.</i> | confisez, <i>pickle you,</i>            |
|                                       | qu'ils confisent, <i>let them pick.</i> |

# A GRAMMAR OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

| que          | SINGULAR.                 | PLURAL.                                |
|--------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Je confise,  | <i>that I may pickle,</i> | Nous confissions, <i>we may pick.</i>  |
| tu confises, | <i>thou mayst pickle,</i> | vous confissiez, <i>you may pick.</i>  |
| il confise,  | <i>he may pickle.</i>     | ils confisent, <i>they may pickle.</i> |

## Preterit.

| que           |                           | [pickle.                               |
|---------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Je confisse,  | <i>that I might pick.</i> | Nous confissions, <i>we might</i>      |
| tu confisses, | <i>thou mightst pick.</i> | vous confissiez, <i>you might pi.</i>  |
| il confit,    | <i>he might pickle.</i>   | ils confissent, <i>they might pic.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### CONNOÎTRE, *to know.*

#### PARTICIPLES.

| PRESENT.                     | PAST.                |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| Connoissant, <i>knowing.</i> | Connu, <i>known.</i> |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                        | PLURAL.                            |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Je connois, <i>I know,</i>       | Nous connoissons, <i>we know,</i>  |
| tu connois, <i>thou knowest,</i> | vous connoissez, <i>you know,</i>  |
| il connoît, <i>he knows.</i>     | ils connoissent, <i>they know.</i> |

### Imperfect.

Je connoiss-ois, *I did know.* See page 78. B.

### Preterit.

|                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Je connus, <i>I knew,</i>       | Nous connûmes, <i>we knew,</i>   |
| tu connus, <i>thou knewest,</i> | vous connûtes, <i>you knew,</i>  |
| il connut, <i>he knew.</i>      | ils connurent, <i>they knew.</i> |

### Future.

|                                        |                                         |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Je connoîtrai, <i>I shall know,</i>    | Nous connoîtrons, <i>we shall</i>       |
| tu connoîtras, <i>thou shalt know,</i> | vous connoîtrez, <i>you shalt kno.</i>  |
| il connoîtra, <i>he shall know.</i>    | ils connoîtront, <i>they shall kno.</i> |



CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|                                       |                                        |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Je connoîtrois, <i>I shoul. know,</i> | [know,                                 |
| tu connoîtrois, <i>thou sh. know,</i> | Nous connoîtrions, <i>we shoulâ</i>    |
| il connoîtroit, <i>he shou. know.</i> | vous connoîtriez, <i>you sho. kn.</i>  |
|                                       | ils connoîtroient, <i>they sh. kn.</i> |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|                                       |                                        |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Connois, <i>know thou,</i>            | Connoissons, <i>let us know,</i>       |
| qu'il connoisse, <i>let him know.</i> | connoissez, <i>know you,</i>           |
|                                       | qu'ils connoissent, <i>let them k.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|                                      |        |                                       |        |
|--------------------------------------|--------|---------------------------------------|--------|
| que                                  | [know, |                                       | [know, |
| Je connoisse, <i>that I may</i>      |        | Nous connoissions, <i>we may</i>      |        |
| tu connoisses, <i>thou mayst kn.</i> |        | vous connoissiez, <i>you may kn.</i>  |        |
| il connoisse, <i>he may know.</i>    |        | ils connoissent, <i>they may kno.</i> |        |

Preterit.

|                                     |        |                                       |        |
|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------------------------------|--------|
| que                                 | [know, |                                       | [know, |
| Je connusse, <i>that I might</i>    |        | Nous connussions, <i>we might</i>     |        |
| tu connusses, <i>thou mi. know,</i> |        | vous connussiez, <i>you mi. kno.</i>  |        |
| il connût, <i>he might know.</i>    |        | ils connussent, <i>they mi. know.</i> |        |

CONQUÉRIR, *to conquer,* like *acquérir.*

CONSENTIR, *to consent,* like *sentir.*

CONTENIR, *to contain,* like *tenir.*

CONTREDIRE, *to gainsay.*

This verb is conjugated like *dire*, except in the second person plural, where it makes *vous contredisez.*

CONTREVENIR, *to infringe,* like *venir.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

CONVAINCRE, *to convince.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Convainquant, *convincing.* | Convaincu, *convinced.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je convains, *I convince,*  
tu convains, *thou convincest,*  
il convainc, *he convinces.*

[*vince,*  
Nous convainquons, *we con-*  
vous convainquez, *you conv.*  
ils convainquent, *they conv.*

## Imperfect.

[*vince,*  
Je convainquois, *I did con-*  
tu convainquois, *thou didst c.*  
il convainquoit, *he did conv.*

[*convince,*  
Nous convainquions, *we did*  
vous convainquiez, *you did c.*  
ils convainquoient, *they did c.*

## Preterit.

Je convainquis, *I convinced,*  
tu convainquis, *thou convin.*  
Il convainquit, *he convinced.*

[*vinced,*  
Nous convainquîmes, *we con-*  
vous convainquîtes, *you con.*  
ils convainquirent, *they con.*

## Future.

[*vince,*  
Je convaincrai, *I shall con-*  
tu convaincras, *thou shalt co.*  
il convaincra, *he shall conv.*

[*convince,*  
Nous convaincrons, *we shall*  
vous convaincrez, *you sh. co.*  
ils convaincront, *they sh. co.*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

[*convince,*  
Je convaincrois, *I should*  
tu convaincrois, *thou sho. con.*  
il convaincroit, *he should con.*

[*convince,*  
Nous convaincristions, *we sho.*  
vous convaincriez, *you sho. c.*  
ils convaincroient, *they sh. co.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Convains, *convince thou,*  
qu'il convainque, *let him con.*

Convainquons, *let us convince,*  
convainquez, *convince you,*  
qu'il convainquent, *let th. co.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|                                       |                                       |            |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| que                                   | [convince,                            | [convince, |
| Je convainque, <i>that I may</i>      | Nous convainquions, <i>we may</i>     |            |
| tu convainques, <i>tho. mayst co.</i> | vous convainquiez, <i>you may c.</i>  |            |
| il convainque, <i>he may convi.</i>   | ils convainquent, <i>they m. con.</i> |            |

Preterit.

|                                       |                                        |                  |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------|
| que                                   | [convince,                             | [might convince, |
| Je convainquisse, <i>I might</i>      | Nous convainquissions, <i>we</i>       |                  |
| tu convainquisses, <i>thou mi. c.</i> | vous convainquissiez, <i>you m.</i>    |                  |
| il convainquit, <i>he might con.</i>  | ils convainquissent, <i>they m. c.</i> |                  |

CONVENIR, *to agree, like venir.*

CORROMPRE, *to corrupt, like rompre.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

COUDRE, *to sew.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

|                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| Cousant, <i>sewing.</i> | Cousu, <i>sewed.</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------------|

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Je couds, <i>I sew,</i>       | Nous cousons, <i>we sew,</i>  |
| tu couds, <i>thou sewest,</i> | vous cousez, <i>you sew,</i>  |
| il coud, <i>he sews,</i>      | ils cousent, <i>they sew.</i> |

Imperfect.

Je cous-ois, *I did sew.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Je cousis, <i>I sewed,</i>      | Nous cousîmes, <i>we sewed,</i>   |
| tu cousis, <i>thou sewedst,</i> | vous cousîtes, <i>you sewed,</i>  |
| il cousit, <i>he sewed.</i>     | ils cousirent, <i>they sewed.</i> |

Future.

Je coud-rai, *I shall sew.* See p. 78. D.

# A GRAMMAR OF THE CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je coud-rois, *I should sew.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

Couds, *sew thou,*  
qu'il couse, *let him sew.*

### PLURAL.

Cousons, *let us sew,*  
cousez, *sew you,*  
qu'ils cousent, *let them sew.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### que SINGULAR.

Je couse, *that I may sew,*  
tu couses, *thou mayst sew,*  
il couse, *he may sew.*

#### PLURAL.

Nous cousions, *we may sew,*  
vous cousiez, *you may sew,*  
ils cousent, *they may sew.*

### Preterit.

#### que

Je cousisse, *that I might sew,*  
tu cousisses, *thou mightest sew,*  
il cousît, *he might sew.*

[*sew,*  
Nous cousissions, *we might*  
vous cousissiez, *you mig. sew,*  
ils cousissent, *they might sew.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### COURIR, *to run.*

### PARTICIPLES.

#### PRESENT.

Courant, *running.*

#### PAST.

Couru, *run.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

Je cours, *I run,*  
tu cours, *thou runnest,*  
il court, *he runs.*

#### PLURAL.

Nous courons, *we run,*  
vous courez, *you run,*  
ils courent, *they run.*

### Imperfect.

Je cour-ois, *I did run.* See p. 78. B.

### Preterit.

Je courus, *I ran,*  
tu courus, *thou rankest,*  
il courut, *he ran.*

Nous courûmes, *we ran,*  
vous courûtes, *you ran,*  
ils coururent, *they ran.*



## Future.

Je cour-rai, *I shall run.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je cour-rois, *I should run.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Cours, *run thou,*  
qu'il coure, *let him run.*

## PLURAL.

Courons, *let us run,*  
courez, *run you,*  
qu'ils courent, *let them run.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je coure, *that I may run,*  
tu coures, *thou mayst run,*  
il coure, *he may run.*

## PLURAL.

Nous courions, *we may run,*  
vous couriez, *you may run,*  
ils courent, *they may run.*

## Preterit.

que

Je courusse, *that I might run,*  
tu courusses, *thou mightest run,*  
il courût, *he might run.*

[run,  
Nous courussions, *we might*  
vous courussiez, *you might r.*  
ils courussent, *they might ran.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Couvrir, *to cover.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Couvrant, *covering.*

## PAST.

Couvert, *covered.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je couvre, *I cover,*  
tu couvres, *thou coverest,*  
il couvre, *he covers,*

## PLURAL.

Nous couvrons, *we cover,*  
vous couvrez, *you cover,*  
ils couvrent, *they cover.*

## Imperfect.

Je couvr-ois, *I did cover.* See p. 78. B.

## SINGULAR.

## Preterit.

## PLURAL.

Je couvris, *I covered,*  
tu couvris, *thou coveredst,*  
il couvrit, *he covered.*

Nous couvrîmes, *we covered,*  
vous couvrîtes, *you covered,*  
ils couvriraient, *they covered.*

## Future.

Je couvri-rai, *I shall cover.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je couvri-rois, *I should cover.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Couvre, *cover thou,*  
qu'il couvre, *let him cover.*

Couvrons, *let us cover.*  
couvrez, *cover you,*  
qu'ils couvrent, *let them cover.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## que SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je couvre, *that I may cover,*  
tu couvres, *thou mayst cover,*  
il couvre, *he may cover.*

Nous couvrions, *we may cov.*  
vous couvriez, *you may cover,*  
ils couvrent, *they may cover.*

## Preterit.

que [cover,  
Je couvrisse, *that I might*  
tu couvrisse, *thou mi. cover,*  
il couvrît, *he might cover.*

[cover,  
Nous couvrissions, *we might*  
vous couvrisseriez, *you might co.*  
ils couvrissent, *they might co.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

CROIRE, *to believe.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Croyant, *believing.*

| Cru, *believed.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je crois, *I believe,*  
tu crois, *thou believest,*  
il croit, *he believes.*

Nous croyons, *we believe,*  
vous croyez, *you believe,*  
ils croient, *they believe.*

## Imperfect.

Je croy-ois, *I did believe.* See p. 73. B.

## Preterit.

Je crus, *I believed,*  
tu crus, *thou believedst,*  
il crut, *he believed.*

Nous crûmes, *we believed,*  
vous crûtes, *you believed,*  
ils crurent, *they believed.*

## Future.

Je croi-rai, *I shall believe.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je croi-rois, *I should believe.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Crois, *believe thou,*  
qu'il croie, *let him believe.*

## PLURAL.

Croyons, *let us believe,*  
croyez, *believe you,*  
qu'ils croient, *let them belie.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je croie, *that I may believe,*  
tu croies, *thou mayst believe,*  
il croie, *he may believe.*

PLURAL.

[*lieve,*  
Nous croyions, *we may be-*  
vous croyiez, *you may belie.*  
ils croient, *they may believe.*

## Preterit.

que

Je crusse, *that I might belie.*  
tu crusses, *thou mightest belie.*  
il crût, *he might believe.*

[*lieve,*  
Nous crussions, *we might be-*  
vous crussiez, *you might bel.*  
ils crussent, *they might belie.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

CROITRE, *to grow.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Croissant, *growing.*

## PAST.

| Crû, *grown.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je crois, *I grow,*  
tu crois, *thou growest,*  
il croît, *he grows.*

## PLURAL.

Nous croissons, *we grow,*  
vous croissez, *you grow,*  
ils croissent, *they grow.*

## Imperfect.

Je croiss-*ois*, *I did grow*. See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je crus, *I grew*,  
tu crus, *thou grewest*,  
il crut, *he grew*.

Nous crûmes, *we grew*,  
vous crûtes, *you grew*,  
ils crurent, *they grew*.

## Future.

Je croî*t*-rai, *I shall grow*. See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je croî*t*-rois, *I should grow*. See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Crois, *grow thou*,  
qu'il croisse, *let him grow*,

Croissons, *let us grow*.  
croissez, *grow you*,  
qu'ils croissent, *let them grow*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je croisse, *that I may grow*,  
tu croisses, *thou mayst grow*,  
il croisse, *he may grow*.

Nous croissions, *we may grow*.  
vous croissiez, *you may grow*,  
ils croissent, *they may grow*.

que

## Preterit.

Je crusse, *that I might grow*,  
tu crusses, *thou mightst grow*,  
il crût, *he may grow*.

Nous crussions, *we mi. gro*,  
vous crussiez, *you might gro*.  
ils crussent, *they might grow*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Cueillir, *to gather*.

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Cueillant, *gathering*.

Cueilli, *gathered*.



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je cueille, *I gather,*  
 tu cueilles, *thou gatherest,*  
 il cueille, *he gathers.*

## PLURAL.

Nous cueillons, *we gather,*  
 vous cueillez, *you gather,*  
 ils cueillent, *they gather.*

## Imperfect.

Je cueill-ois, *I did gather.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je cueillis, *I gathered,*  
 tu cueillis, *thou gatheredst,*  
 il cueillit, *he gathered.*

Nous cueillîmes, *we gathered,*  
 vous cueillîtes, *you gathered,*  
 ils cueillirent, *they gathered.*

## Future.

Je cueille-rai, *I shall gather.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je cueille-rois, *I should gather.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Cueille, *gather thou,*  
 qu'il cueille, *let him gather.*

## PLURAL.

Cueillons, *let us gather,*  
 cueillez, *gather you,*  
 qu'ils cueillent, *let-th. gather.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## que SINGULAR.

Je cueille, *that I may gather,*  
 tu cueilles, *thou mayst gath.*  
 il cueille, *he may gather.*

## PLURAL.

Nous cueillions, *we m. gath.*  
 vous cueilliez, *you m. gather,*  
 ils cueillent, *they may gather.*

## Preterit.

que  
 Je cueillisses, *that I might*  
 tu cueillisses, *thou mightst ga.*  
 il cueillît, *he might gather.*

[gather,  
 Nous cueillissions, *we might*  
 vous cueillissiez, *you m. gath.*  
 ils cueillissent, *they m. gath.*

# A GRAMMAR OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

DE'CHOIR, *to decay, to decline.*

## PARTICIPLES.

### PRESENT.

Déchéant, *decaying.*

### PAST.

| Déchu, *decayed.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

Je déchois, *I decay,*  
tu déchois, *thou decayest,*  
il déchoit, *he decays.*

#### PLURAL.

| Nous déchoyons, *we decay,*  
vous déchoyez, *you decay,*  
ils déchoient, *they decay.*

### Preterit.

Je déchus, *I decayed,*  
tu déchus, *thou decayedst,*  
il déchut, *he decayed.*

| Nous déchûmes, *we decayed,*  
vous déchûtes, *you decayed,*  
ils déchurent, *they decayed.*

### Future.

Je décherrai, *I shall decay.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je décherraïs, *I should decay.* See p. 78. E.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### que SINGULAR.

Je déchoie, *that I may decay,*  
tu déchoies, *thou mayst decay,*  
il déchoie, *he may decay.*

#### PLURAL.

| Nous déchoyions, *we may de.*  
vous déchoyiez, *you may de.*  
ils déchoient, *they may decay.*

### Preterit.

Je déchusse, *I might decay.* See p. 78. G. 3.

DE'COUVRIR, *to discover, like couvrir.*

DE'METTRE, *to remove, like mettre.*

DE'SAPPRENDRE, *to unlearn, like prendre.*

DESSERVIR, *to take away, like servir.*

DE'TENIR, *to detain, like tenir.*

DE'VENIR, *to become, like venir.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

DIRE, *to say, or tell.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Disant, *saying.*

## PAST.

| Dit, *said.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je dis, *I say,*  
 tu dis, *thou sayest,*  
 il dit, *he says.*

## PLURAL.

| Nous disons, *we say,*  
 | vous dites, *you say,*  
 | ils disent, *they say.*

## Imperfect.

Je dis-ois, *I did say.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je dis, *I said,*  
 tu dis, *thou saidst,*  
 il dit, *he said.*

| Nous dûmes, *we said,*  
 | vous dûtes, *you said,*  
 | ils dirent, *they said.*

## Future:

Je di-rai, *I shall say.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je di-rois, *I should say.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Dis, *say thou,*  
 qu'il dise, *let him say,*

## PLURAL.

| Disons, *let us say,*  
 | dites, *say you,*  
 | qu'ils disent, *let them say.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je dise, *that I may say,*  
 tu dises, *thou mayst say,*  
 il dise, *he may say.*

PLURAL.

| Nous disions, *we may say.*  
 | vous disiez, *you may say,*  
 | ils disent, *they may say.*

que

## Preterit.

Je d-isse, *that I might say.* See p. 78. G. 2.*Redire* is conjugated after the same manner.

# A GRAMMAR OF THE

DISCONVENIR, *to disagree*, like *venir*.

DISCOURIR, *to converse*, like *courir*.

DISSOUDRE, *to dissolve*, like *absoudre*.

DISTRAIRE, *to distract*, like *traire*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

DORMIR, *to sleep*.

### PARTICIPLES.

#### PRESENT.

Dormant, *sleeping*.

#### PAST.

[ Dormi, *slept*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

#### SINGULAR.

Je dors, *I sleep*,  
tu dors, *thou sleepest*,  
il dort, *he sleeps*.

#### PLURAL.

[ Nous dormons, *we sleep*,  
vous dormez, *you sleep*,  
ils dorment, *they sleep*.

### Imperfect.

Je dorm-ois, *I did sleep*. See p. 78. B.

### Preterit.

Je dorm-is, *I slept*. See p. 78. C. 2.

### Future.

Je dormi-rai, *I shall sleep*. See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je dormi-rois, *I should sleep*. See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

#### SINGULAR.

Dors, *sleep thou*,  
qu'il dorme, *let him sleep*.

#### PLURAL.

[ Dormons, *let us sleep*,  
dormez, *sleep you*.  
qu'ils dorment, *let them sleep*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense

que SINGULAR.

Je dorme, *that I may sleep*,  
tu dormes, *thou mayest sleep*,  
il dorme, *he may sleep*.

PLURAL.

[ Nous dormions, *we may sleep*,  
vous dormiez, *you may sleep*,  
ils dorment, *they may sleep*.

que

### Preterit.

Je dorm-isse, *that I might sleep*. See p. 78. G. 2.



## INFINITIVE MOOD.

ECRIRE, *to write.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Écrivant, *writing.*

## PAST.

| Écrit, *written.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

J'écris, *I write,*  
 tu écris, *thou writest,*  
 il écrit, *he writes.*

## PLURAL.

| Nous écrivons, *we write,*  
 | vous écrivez, *you write,*  
 | ils écrivent, *they write.*

## Imperfect.

J'écriv-ois, *I did write.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

J'écri-vis, *I wrote.* See p. 78. C. 2.

## Future.

J'écri-rai, *I shall write.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

J'écri-rois, *I should write.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Écris, *write thou,*  
 qu'il écrive, *let him write.*

## PLURAL.

| Écrivons, *let us write,*  
 | écrivez, *write you,*  
 | qu'ils écrivent, *let them write.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

J'écrive, *that I may write,*  
 tu écrives, *thou mayst write,*  
 il écrive, *he may write.*

## PLURAL.

| Nous écrivions, *we may write,*  
 | vous écriviez, *you may write,*  
 | ils écrivent, *they may write.*

que

## Preterit.

J'écriv-isse, *that I might write.* See p. 78. G. 2.

ÉMOUVOIR, *to stir up*, like *mouvoir*.

ENCOURIR, *to incur*, like *courir*.

ENDORMIR, *to lull asleep*, like *dormir*.

S'ENQUÉRIR, *to inquire*, like *acquérir*.

S'ENTREMETTRE, *to intermeddle*, like *mettre*.

ENTREPRENDRE, *to undertake*, like *prendre*.

ENTRETENIR, *to entertain*, like *tenir*.

ENTR'OUVRIR, *to open a little*, like *ouvrir*.

ENVOYER, *to send*.

This verb is irregular in two tenses only, *viz.*

Future.

J'enver-rai, *I shall send*. See p. 78. D.

### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

J'enver-rois, *I should send*. See p. 78. E.

The other tenses are regular. It's compound *renvoyer*, to send back, is likewise irregular only in the two tenses above.

ÉQUIVALOIR, *to be of equal value*, like *valoir*.

EXCLURE, *to exclude*.

This verb is conjugated like *conclure*, except in the participle past, where it is spelled *exclu*, *exclue*, or *exclus*, *excluse*.

EXTRAIRE, *to extract*, like *traire*.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

FAIRE, *to do, or to make*.

#### PARTICIPLES.

##### PRESENT.

##### PAST.

Faisant, (*pron. fesant*) *doing*. | Fait, *done*.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present Tense.

##### SINGULAR.

##### PLURAL.

Je fais, *I do*,  
tu fais, *thou doest*.  
il fait, *he does*.

Nous faisons, (*pron. fesons*) [*we do*,  
vous faites, *you do*,  
ils font, *they do*.

## Imperfect.

Je fais-ois, (*pron. fesois*) *I did do.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

|                            |  |                             |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| Je fis, <i>I did,</i>      |  | Nous fîmes, <i>we did,</i>  |
| tu fis, <i>thou didst,</i> |  | vous fîtes, <i>you did,</i> |
| il fit, <i>he did.</i>     |  | il firent, <i>they did.</i> |

## Future.

Je fe-rai, *I shall do.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je fe-rois, *I should do.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

|                                 |  |                                                     |
|---------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Fais, <i>do thou,</i>           |  | Faisons, ( <i>pron. fesoins</i> ) <i>let us do,</i> |
| qu'il fasse, <i>let him do.</i> |  | faites, <i>do you,</i>                              |
|                                 |  | qu'ils fassent, <i>let them do.</i>                 |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## que SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

|                                  |  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| Je fasse, <i>that I may do,</i>  |  | Nous fassions, <i>we may do,</i> |
| tu fasses, <i>thou mayst do.</i> |  | vous fassiez, <i>you may do,</i> |
| il fasse, <i>he may do.</i>      |  | ils fassent, <i>they may do.</i> |

que

## Preterit.

|                                    |  |                                    |
|------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|
| Je fisse, <i>that I might do,</i>  |  | Nous fissions, <i>we might do,</i> |
| tu fisses, <i>thou mightst do,</i> |  | vous fissiez, <i>you might do,</i> |
| il fît, <i>he might do.</i>        |  | ils fissent, <i>they might do.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

FUIR, *to flee.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

|                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| Fuyant, <i>fleeing.</i> | Fui, <i>fled.</i> |
|-------------------------|-------------------|

# A GRAMMAR OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

### SINGULAR.

Je fuis, *I flee*,  
tu fuis, *thou fleest*,  
il fuit, *he flees*.

### PLURAL.

Nous fuyons, *we flee*,  
vous fuyez, *you flee*,  
ils fuient, *they flee*.

## Imperfect.

Je fuy-ois, *I did flee*. See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je fu-is, *I fled*. See p. 78. C. 2.

## Future.

Je fui-rai, *I shall flee*. See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je fui-rois, *I should flee*. See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

Fuis, *flee thou*,  
qu'il fuie, *let him flee*.

### PLURAL.

Fuyons, *let us flee*,  
fuyez, *flee you*,  
qu'ils fuient, *let them flee*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

### que SINGULAR.

Je fuie, *that I may flee*,  
tu fuies, *thou mayst flee*,  
il fuie, *he may flee*.

### PLURAL.

Nous fuyions, *we may flee*,  
vous fuyiez, *you may flee*,  
ils fuient, *they may flee*.

que

## Preterit.

Je fusse, *that I might flee*. See p. 78. G. 2.

## HAÏR, to hate.

This verb is regular: it's irregularity falls only upon the pronunciation of its first, second, and third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood, and of the second person of the singular in the imperative mood. Thus we write and pronounce in one syllable, *Je*



*hais*, I hate; *tu hais*, thou hatest; *il hait*, he hates; *bais*, hate thou; whereas, in all other tenses, *a* is pronounced separately from the following *i*, and makes the syllable by itself; as, *nous haïssans*, we hate; *vous haïssez*, you hate; *ils haïssent*, they hate.

INTERROMPRE, *to interrupt*, like *rompre*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

LIRE, *to read*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Lisant, *reading*.

| Lu, *read*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Je lis, *I read*,  
tu lis, *thou readest*,  
il lit, *he reads*.

| Nous lisons, *we read*,  
vous lisez, *you read*,  
ils lisent, *they read*.

Imperfect,

Je lis-ois, *I did read*. See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

Je lus, *I read*,  
tu lus, *thou readest*,  
il lut, *he read*.

| Nous lûmes, *we read*,  
vous lûtes, *you read*,  
il lurent, *they read*.

Future.

Je li-rai, *I shall read*. See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je li-rois, *I should read*. See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Lis, *read thou*,  
qu'il lise, *let him read*.

| Lisons, *let us read*,  
lisez, *read you*,  
qu'ils lisent, *let them read*.

# A GRAMMAR OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je lise, *that I may read,*  
tu lises, *thou mayst read,*  
il lise, *he may read.*

PLURAL.

Nous lisions, *we may read,*  
vous lisiez, *you may read,*  
ils liseut, *they may read.*

que

Preterit.

Je lusse, *that I might read,*  
tu lusses, *thou mightest read,*  
il lût, *he might read.*

Nous lussions, *we might read,*  
vous lussiez, *you might read,*  
ils lussent, *they might read.*

MAINTENIR, *to maintain, like tenir.*

MAUDIRE, *to curse.*

This verb is conjugated like *dire*, except in the second person plural, where it makes, *vous maudissez*. It doubles also the *s* in all the other tenses and persons; as *maudissant, vous maudissons, je maudissois, que je maudisse*.

MÉDIRE, *to slander.*

This verb is conjugated like *dire*, except in the second person plural, where it makes *vous médisez*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

MENTIR, *to lie.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Mentant, *lying,*

PAST.

| Menti, *lied.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je mens, *I lie,*  
tu mens, *thou liest,*  
il ment, *he lies.*

PLURAL.

| Nous mentons, *we lie,*  
vous mentez, *you lie,*  
ils mentent, *they lie.*

Imperfect.

Je ment-ois, *I did lie.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

Je ment-is, *I lied.* See p. 78. C. 2.

Future.

Je menit-rai, *I shall lie.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je menti-rois, *I should lie.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Mens, *lie thou,*  
qu'il mente, *let him lie.*

## PLURAL.

Mentons, *let us lie,*  
mentez, *lie you,*  
qu'ils mentent, *let them lie.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je mente, *that I may lie,*  
tu mentes, *thou mayst lie,*  
il mente, *he may lie.*

PLURAL.

Nous mention, *we may lie,*  
vous mentiez, *you may lie,*  
ils mentent, *they may lie.*

que

## Preterit.

Je ment-isse, *that I might lie.* See p. 78. G. 2.

SE MÉPRENDRE, *to mistake,* like *prendre.*

MÉSOffRIR, *to underbid,* like *offrir.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

METTRE, *to put.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Mettant, *putting.*

## PAST.

Mis, *put.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je mets, *I put,*  
tu mets, *thou puttest,*  
il met, *he puts.*

## PLURAL.

Nous mettons, *we put,*  
vous mettez, *you put,*  
ils mettent, *they put.*

## Imperfect.

Je mett-ois, *I did put.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je mis, *I put,*  
tu mis, *thou puttest,*  
il mit, *he put.*

Nous mîmes, *we put,*  
vous mîtes, *you put,*  
ils mirent, *they put.*

## Future.

Je mett-rai, *I shall put.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je mett-rois, *I should put.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Mets, *put thou,*  
qu'il mette, *let him put.*

## PLURAL.

Mettons, *let us put,*  
mettez, *put you,*  
qu'ils mettent, *let them put.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je mette, *that I may put,*  
tu mettes, *thou mayst put,*  
il mette, *he may put.*

## PLURAL.

Nous mettions, *we may put,*  
vous mettiez, *you may put,*  
ils mettent, *they may put.*

que

## Preterit.

Je misse, *that I might put,*  
tu misses, *thou mightest put,*  
il mît, *he might put.*

Nous missions, *we might put,*  
vous missiez, *you might put,*  
ils missent, *they might put.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

MOUDRE, *to grind.*

## PRESENT.

Moulant, *grinding.*

## PAST.

Moulu, *ground.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je mouds, *I grind,*  
tu mouds *thou grindest,*  
il moud; *he grinds.*

## PLURAL.

Nous moulons, *we grind,*  
vous moulez, *you grind,*  
ils moulent, *they grind.*

## Imperfect.

Je moul-ois, *I did grind.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je moul-us, *I ground.* See p. 78. C. 3.

## Future.

Je moud-rai, *I shall grind.* See p. 78. D.



## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je moud-rais, *I should grind.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Mouds, *grind thou,*  
qu'il moule, *let him grind.*

Moulons, *let us grind,*  
moulez, *grind you,*  
qu'ils moulent, *let them grind.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je moule, *that I may grind,*  
tu moules, *thou mayst grind,*  
il moule, *he may grind.*

Nous moulions, *we may grind,*  
vous mouliez, *you may grind,*  
ils moulent, *they may grind.*

que

Preterit.

Je moul-usse, *that I might grind.* See p. 78. G. 3.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

MOURIR, *to die.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Mourant, *dying.*

| Mort, *dead.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je meurs, *I die,*  
tu meurs, *thou diest,*  
il meurt, *he dies.*

Nous mourons, *we die,*  
vous mourez, *you die,*  
ils meurent, *they die.*

Imperfect.

Je mour-ois, *I did die.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

Je mour-us, *I died.* See p. 78. C. 3.

Future.

Je mour-rai, *I shall die.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je mour-rois, *I should die.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Meurs, *die thou,*  
qu'il meure, *let him die.*

Mourons, *let us die,*  
mourez, *die you,*  
qu'ils meurent, *let them die.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

Je meure, *that I may die,*  
 tu meures, *thou mayst die,*  
 il meure, *he may die.*

PLURAL.

Nous mourions, *we may die,*  
 vous mouriez, *you may die,*  
 ils meurent, *they may die.*

que

## Preterit.

Je mour-usse, *that I might die.* See p. 78. G. 3.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Mouvoir, *to move.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

Mouvant, *moving.*

PAST.

| Mu, *moved.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je mens, *I move,*  
 tu meus, *thou movest,*  
 il meut, *he moves.*

PLURAL.

Nous mouvons, *we move,*  
 vous mouvez, *you move,*  
 ils meuvent, *they move.*

## Imperfect.

Je mouv-ois, *I did move.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je m-us, *I moved.* See p. 78. C. 3.

## Future.

Je mouv-rai, *I shall move.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je mouv-rois, *I should move.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

Meus, *move thou,*  
 qu'il meuve, *let him move,*

PLURAL.

Mouvons, *let us move,*  
 mouvez, *move you,*  
 qu'ils meuvent, *let them move.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| que                                | SINGULAR. | PLURAL.                            |
|------------------------------------|-----------|------------------------------------|
| Je meuve, <i>that I may move,</i>  |           | Nous mouvions, <i>we may move,</i> |
| tu meuves, <i>thou mayst move,</i> |           | vous mouviez, <i>you may move,</i> |
| il meuve, <i>he may move.</i>      |           | ils meuvent, <i>they may move.</i> |

que Preterit.

Je m-usse, *that I might move.* See p. 78. G. 3.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

NAÎTRE, *to be born.*

PARTICIPLES.

| PRESENT.                     | PAST.            |
|------------------------------|------------------|
| Naissant, <i>being born.</i> | Né, <i>born.</i> |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                      | PLURAL.                             |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Je nais, <i>I am born,</i>     | Nous naissons, <i>we are born,</i>  |
| tu nais, <i>thou art born,</i> |                                     |
| il naît, <i>he is born.</i>    |                                     |
|                                | vous naissez, <i>you are born,</i>  |
|                                | ils naissent, <i>they are born.</i> |

Imperfect.

Je naiss-ois, *I was born.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

|                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Je naquis, <i>I was born,</i>     | Nous naquîmes, <i>we were born,</i>   |
| tu naquis, <i>thou wast born,</i> |                                       |
| il naquit, <i>he was born.</i>    |                                       |
|                                   | vous naquîtes, <i>you were born,</i>  |
|                                   | ils naquirent, <i>they were born.</i> |

Future.

Je naitt-rai, *I shall be born.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je naît-rois, *I should be born.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Nais. *be thou born.*

qu'il naisse, *let him be born.*

Naissons, *let us be born,*

naissez, *be you born,*

qu'ils naissent, *let th. be born.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

que

[*born,*

Je naisse, *that I may be*

tu naisse, *thou mayst be born,*

il naisse, *he be born.*

[*born,*

Nous naissions, *we may be*

vous naissiez, *you may be born,*

ils naissent, *they may be born.*

## Preterit.

que

[*born,*

Je naquisse, *that I might be*

tu naquisses, *thou mightst be b.*

il naquît, *he might be born.*

[*be born,*

Nous naquissions, *we might*

vous naquissiez, *you might be*

ils naquissent, *they might be*

OBTENIR, *to obtain, like tenir.*

OFFRIR, *to offer, like couvrir.*

OMETTRE, *to omit, like mettre.*

OUVRIR, *to open, like couvrir.*

OUIR, *to hear.*

This verb is very seldom used, except in the past participle, and before *dire*; as, *Je l'ai ouï dire*, I heard it.— In this case it is conjugated by the help of *avoir*, through all its tenses. Instead of the verb *ouïr*, we make use of *entendre*.

PAÎTRE, *to graze.*

This verb is conjugated like *naître*, but the two preter tenses are wanting; while *repâitre*, its compound, though little used, has them all.— See *Repâitre*.

PARCOURIR, *to run over, like courir.*



PAROÎTRE, *to appear.*

This verb and its compound are conjugated like *croître*.

PARTIR, *to go away*, like *mentir*.

PARVENIR, *to attain*, like *venir*.

PERMETTRE, *to permit*, like *mettre*.

# INFINITIVE MOOD.

PLAIRE, *to please.*

## PARTICIPLES.

### PRESENT.

### PAST.

Plaisant, *pleasing.*

| Plu, *pleased.*

# INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

### SINGULAR.

### PLURAL.

Je plais, *I please,*  
tu plais, *thou pleasest,*  
il plaît, *he pleases.*

| Nous plaisons, *we please,*  
vous plaisez, *you please,*  
ils plaisent, *they please.*

## Imperfect.

Je plais-ois, *I did please.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je plus, *I pleased,*  
tu plus, *thou pleasedst,*  
il plut, *he pleased.*

| Nous plûmes, *we pleased,*  
vous plûtes, *you pleased,*  
ils plurent, *they pleased.*

## Future.

Je plai-rai, *I shall please.* See p. 78. D.

# CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je plai-rois, *I should please.* See p. 78. E.

# IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

### PLURAL.

Plaise, *please thou,*  
qu'il plaise, *let him please.*

| Plaisons, *let us please,*  
plaisez, *please you,*  
qu'ils plaisent, *let them please.*

# A GRAMMAR OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

| que                                   | SINGULAR. | PLURAL.                               |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| Je plaise, <i>that I may please,</i>  |           | Nous plaisions, <i>we may please,</i> |
| tu plaises, <i>thou mayst please,</i> |           | vous plaissez, <i>you may please,</i> |
| il plaise, <i>he may please.</i>      |           | ils plaisent, <i>they may please.</i> |

| que                                     | Preterit.                               |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Je plusse, <i>that I might please,</i>  | Nous plussions, <i>we might please.</i> |
| tu plusses, <i>thou mightst please,</i> | vous plussiez, <i>you might please</i>  |
| il plût, <i>he might please.</i>        | ils plussent, <i>they might please.</i> |

POURSUIVRE, *to pursue, like suivre.*

POURVOIR, *to provide.*

This verb is conjugated like *prévoir*, except in the preter tenses, where it makes, *Je pourvus*——*Je pourvusse.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

POUVOIR, *to be able.*

### PARTICIPLES.

| PRESENT.                    | PAST.                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Pouvant, <i>being able.</i> | Pu, <i>been able.</i> |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                      | PLURAL.                            |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Je puis *, <i>I am able,</i>   | Nous pouvons, <i>we are able,</i>  |
| tu peux, <i>thou art able,</i> | nous pouvez, <i>you are able,</i>  |
| il peut, <i>he is able.</i>    | ils peuvent, <i>they are able.</i> |

### Imperfect.

Je pouv-ois, *I was able.* See p. 78, B.

### Preterit.

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Je pus, <i>I was able,</i>     | Nous pûmes, <i>we were able,</i>   |
| tu pus, <i>thou wast able,</i> | vous pûtes, <i>you were able,</i>  |
| il put, <i>he was able.</i>    | ils purent, <i>they were able.</i> |

\* *Je peux* may be used in conversation and in poetry, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY.

Future.

Je pour-rai, *I shall be able.* See p. 78. D.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je pour-rois, *I should be able.* See p. 78. E.

The IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting,  
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| que SINGULAR.                          | PLURAL.                                | [able, |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------|
| Je puisse, <i>that I may be able,</i>  | Nous puissions, <i>we may be</i>       |        |
| tu puisses, <i>thou mayst be able,</i> | vous puissiez, <i>you may be able,</i> |        |
| il puisse, <i>he may be able.</i>      | ils puissent, <i>they may be able.</i> |        |

Preterit.

| que                                     | [able,                                |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Je pusse, <i>that I might be able,</i>  | Nous pussions, <i>we might be</i>     |
| tu pusses, <i>thou mightst be able,</i> | vous pussiez, <i>you might be ab.</i> |
| il pût, <i>he might be able.</i>        | ils pussent, <i>they might be ab.</i> |

PRE'DIRE, *to foretell.*

This verb is conjugated like *dire*, except in the second person plural, where it makes *vous prédisez*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRENDRE, *to take.*

PARTICIPLES.

| PRESENT.                | PAST.               |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Prenant, <i>taking.</i> | Pris, <i>taken.</i> |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                      | PLURAL.                         |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Je prends, <i>I take,</i>      | Nous prenons, <i>we take,</i>   |
| tu prends, <i>thou takest,</i> | vous prenez, <i>you take,</i>   |
| il prend, <i>he takes.</i>     | ils prennent, <i>they take.</i> |

Imperfect.

Je pren-ois, *I did take.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

|                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Je pris, <i>I took,</i>       | Nous prîmes, <i>we took,</i>   |
| tu pris, <i>thou tookest,</i> | vous prîtes, <i>you took,</i>  |
| il prit, <i>he took.</i>      | ils prirent, <i>they took.</i> |

## Future.

Je prend-rai, *I shall take.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je prend-rois, *I should take.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Prends, *take thou,*  
qu'il prenne, *let him take.*

## PLURAL.

Prenons, *let us take,*  
prenez, *take you,*  
qu'ils prennent, *let them take.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que

## SINGULAR.

Je prenne, *that I may take,*  
tu prennes, *thou mayst take,*  
il prenne, *he may take,*

## PLURAL.

Nous prenions, *we may take,*  
vous preniez, *you may take,*  
ils prennent, *they may take.*

que

## Preterit.

Je prisse, *that I might take,*  
tu prisses, *thou mightst take,*  
il prît, *he might take,*

Nous prissions, *we might take,*  
vous prissiez, *you might take,,*  
ils prissent, *they might take.*

PRESENTIR, *to foresee, like sentir.*

PRE'VALOIR, *to prevail.*

This verb is conjugated like *valoir*, except in the subjunctive, where it makes *que je prévale, tu prévalues, &c.*

PRE'VENIR, *to prevent, like venir.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRE'VOIR, *to foresee.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Prévoyant, *foreseeing.*

## PAST.

| Prévu, *foreseen.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je prévois, *I foresee,*  
tu prévois, *thou foreseest,*  
il prévoit, *he foresees.*

## PLURAL.

Nous prévoyons, *we foresee,*  
vous prévoyez, *you foresee,*  
ils prévoient, *they foresee.*

## Imperfect.

Je prévoy-ois, *I did foresee.* See p. 78. B.



## Preterit.

Je prév-is, *I foresaw.* See p. 78. C. 2.

## Future.

Je prévoi-rai, *I shall foresee.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je prévoi-rois, *I should foresee.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Prévois, *foresee thou,*qu'il prév-oie, *let him foresee.*Prévoyons, *let us foresee,*prévoyez, *foresee you,*qu'ils prév-oient, *let them fo-*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

que

[see,

[foresee,

Je prév-oie, *that I may fore-*tu prév-oies, *thou mayst fores.*il prév-oie, *he may foresee.*Nous prév-oions, *we may*vous prév-oiez, *you may fo.*ils prév-oient, *they may fores.*

que

Preterit.

Je prév-isse, *that I might foresee.* See p. 78. G. 2.PROMETTRE, *to promise, like mettre.*PROVENIR, *to proceed, like venir.*SE RASSEOIR, *to sit down again, like asseoir.*RECOURIR, *to have recourse, like courir.*RECOURVIR, *to cover again, like couvrir.*RECUEILLIR, *to reap, like cueillir.*RERMETTRE, *to replace, like mettre.*REPAÎTRE, *to feed.*

This verb is conjugated like *naître*, except in the two preter tenses, and in the past participle, wherein it makes  
*Je repus, . . . Je repusse, . . . repu.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

REPENTIR (Se), *to repent.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Se Rependant, *repenting.*Repenti, *repented.*

# A GRAMMAR OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense

### SINGULAR.

### PLURAL.

Je me repens, *I repent*,  
tu te repens, *thou repentest*,  
il se repent, *he repents*.

*[pent,*  
Nous nous repentons, *we re-*  
vous vous repentez, *you repe-*  
ils se repentent, *they repent.*

### Imperfect.

Je me repent-ois, *I did repent*. See p. 78. B.

### Preterit.

Je me repent-is, *I repented*. See p. 78. C. 2.

### Future.

Je me repen-ti-rai, *I shall repent*. See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je me repen-ti-rois, *I should repent*. See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SINGULAR.

### PLURAL.

Repens-toi, *repent thou*,  
qu'il se repente, *let him rep.*

Repentons-nous, *let us repent*,  
repentéz-vous, *repent you*,  
qu'ils se repentent, *let them r.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### Present Tense.

### SINGULAR.

### PLURAL.

que  
Je me repente, *that I may re-*  
tu te repentes, *thou mayst re.*  
ils se repente, *he may repent.*

*[may repent,*  
Nous nous repentions, *we*  
vous vous repentiez, *you may*  
ils se repentent, *they may re.*

que Preterit.

Je me repent-isse, *that I might repent*. See p. 78. G. 2.

REPRENDRE, *to take again*, like *prendre*.

REQUE'RIR, *to request*, like *acquiescir*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

RÉ'SOUDRE, *to resolve.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Résolvant, *resolving.*

## PAST.

| Résolu\*, *resolved.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je résous, *I resolve,*  
 tu résous, *thou resolvest,*  
 il résout, *he resolves.*

## PLURAL.

Nous résolvons, *we resolve,*  
 vous résolvez, *you resolve,*  
 ils résolvent, *they resolve.*

## Imperfect.

Je résolvois, *I did resolve.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je résolus, *I resolved.* See p. 78. C. 3.

## Future.

Je résoudrai, *I shall resolve.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je résoudrois, *I should resolve.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Résous, *resolve thou,*  
 qu'il résolve, *let him resolve.*

## PLURAL.

Résolvons, *let us resolve,*  
 résolvez, *resolve you,*  
 qu'ils résolvent, *let them resolve.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

que  
 Je résolve, *that I may resolve,*  
 tu résolves, *thou mayst resolve,*  
 il résolve, *he may resolve.*

## PLURAL.

[*solve,*  
 Nous résolvions, *we may re-*  
 vous résolviez, *you may reso-*  
 ils résolvent, *they may resolve.*

\* We say, likewise, *résous*, speaking of things which may be resolved into others. It is never used in the feminine gender, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY; thus we say, *un brouillard résous en pluie* a fog-resolved into rain.

que

Preterit.

Je résol-usse, *I might resolve.* See p. 78. G. 3.RESSENTIR, *to feel, like mentir.*RESSORTIR, *to go out again, like mentir.*RETENIR, *to retain, like tenir.*REVENIR, *to return, like venir.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

REVÊTIR, *to invest.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Revêtant, *investing.*

## PAST.

| Revêtu, *invested.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je revêts, *I invest,*  
tu revêts, *thou investest,*  
il revêt, *he invests.*

## PLURAL.

Nous revêtons, *we invest,*  
vous revêtez, *you invest,*  
ils revêtent, *they invest.*

## Imperfect.

Je revêt-ois, *I did invest.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je revêt-is, *I invested.* See p. 78. C. 2.

## Future.

Je revêti-rai, *I shall invest.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je revêti-rois, *I should invest.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Revêts, *invest thou,*  
qu'il revête, *let him invest.*

## PLURAL.

| Revêtons, *let us invest,*  
revêtez, *invest you,*  
qu'ils revêtent, *let them inv.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que

## SINGULAR.

Je revête, *that I may invest,*  
tu revêtes, *thou mayst invest,*  
il revête, *he may invest.*

## PLURAL.

| Nous revêtions, *we may inv.*  
vous revêtiez, *you may invest,*  
ils revêtent, *they may invest.*



que

Preterit.

Je revêt-isse, *that I might invest.* See p. 78. G. 2.REVOIR, *to see again, like voir.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

RIRE, *to laugh.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Riant, *laughing.*| Ri, *laughed.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je ris, *I laugh,*  
tu ris, *thou laughest,*  
il rit, *he laughs.*| Nous rions, *we laugh,*  
vous riez, *you laugh,*  
ils rient, *they laugh.*

Imperfect.

Je ri-ois, *I did laugh.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

Je ris, *I laughed,*  
tu ris, *thou laughedst,*  
il rit, *he laughed.*| Nous rîmes *we laughed,*  
vous rîtes, *you laughed,*  
ils rirent, *they laughed.*

Future.

Je ri-rai, *I shall laugh.* See p. 78. E.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je ri-rois, *I should laugh.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Ris, *laugh thou,*  
qu'il rie, *let him laugh.*| Rions, *let us laugh,*  
riez, *laugh you,*  
qu'ils rient, *let them laugh.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

que

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je rie, *I may laugh,*  
tu ries, *thou mayst laugh,*  
il rie, *he may laugh.*| Nous riions, *we may laugh,*  
vous riez, *you may laugh,*  
ils rient, *they may laugh.*

| que        | SINGULAR.                  | Preterit.      | PLURAL.                  |
|------------|----------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Je risse.  | <i>that I might laugh,</i> | Nous rissions, | <i>we might laugh,</i>   |
| tu risses, | <i>thou mightst laugh,</i> | vous rissiez,  | <i>you might laugh,</i>  |
| il rît,    | <i>he might laugh.</i>     | ils rissent,   | <i>they might laugh.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

ROMPRE, *to break.*

## PARTICIPLES.

| PRESENT.                  | PAST.                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Rompant, <i>breaking.</i> | Rompû, <i>broken.</i> |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                       | PLURAL.                         |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Je romps, <i>I break,</i>       | Nous rompons, <i>we break,</i>  |
| tu romps; <i>thou breakest,</i> | vous rompez, <i>you break,</i>  |
| il rompt, <i>he breaks.</i>     | ils rompent, <i>they break.</i> |

Imperfect.

Je romp-ois, *I did break.* See p. 78. B.

Præterit.

Je romp-is, *I broke.* See p. 78. C. 2.

Future.

Je romp-rai, *I shall break.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je romp-rois, *I should break.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| SINGULAR.                          | PLURAL.                                |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Romps, <i>break thou,</i>          | Rompons, <i>let us break,</i>          |
| qu'il rompe, <i>let him break.</i> | rompez, <i>break you,</i>              |
|                                    | qu'ils rompent, <i>let them break.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| que        | SINGULAR.                | PLURAL.                             |
|------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Je rompe,  | <i>that I may break,</i> | Nous rompions, <i>we may break,</i> |
| tu rompes, | <i>thou mayst break,</i> | vous rompiez, <i>you may break,</i> |
| il rompe,  | <i>he may break.</i>     | ils rompent, <i>they may break.</i> |

que

Preterit.

Je romp-is-se, *that I might break.* See p. 78. G. 2.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

SAVOIR, *to know.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Sachant, *knowing.*| Su, *known.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je sais, *I know,*  
tu sais, *thou knowest,*  
il sait, *he knows.*| Nous savons, *we know,*  
vous savez, *you know,*  
ils savent, *they know.*

Imperfect.

Je sav-ois, *I did know.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

Je sus, *I knew,*  
tu sus, *thou knewest,*  
il sut, *he knew.*| Nous sûmes, *we knew,*  
vous sûtes, *you knew,*  
ils surent, *they knew.*

Future.

Je saurai, *I shall know,*  
tu sauras, *thou wilt know,*  
il saura, *he will know.*| Nous saurons, *we shall know,*  
vous saurez, *you will know,*  
ils sauront, *they will know.*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je saurois, *I should know,*  
tu saurois, *thou wouldst know,*  
il sauroit, *he would know.*| Nous saurions, *we sho. know,*  
vous sauriez, *you would know,*  
ils sauroient, *they wo. know.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Sache, *know thou,*  
qu'il sache, *let him know.*| Sachons, *let us know,*  
sachez, *know you,*  
qu'ils sachent, *let them know.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je sache, *that I may know,*  
 tu saches, *thou mayst know,*  
 il sache, *he may know.*

Nous sachions, *we may know,*  
 vous sachiez, *you may know,*  
 ils sachent, *they may know.*

que

Preterit.

Je susse, *that I might know,*  
 tu susses, *thou mightst know,*  
 ils sût, *he might know.*

Nous sussions, *we mig. know*  
 vous sussiez, *you might know,*  
 ils sussent, *they might know.*

SECOURIR, *to succour, like courir.*SENTIR, *to feel.*SERVIR, *to serve.*

*Je sers, tu sers, il sert,* imperative mood second person singular, *sers* . . . in other tenses follows the same variations as *ir* in *mentir*.

SORTIR, *to go out.*These three verbs are conjugated like *mentir*.SOUFFRIR, *to suffer, like couvrir.*SOUSTRAIRE, *to subtract, like traire.*SOUTENIR, *to support, like tenir.*SE SOUVENIR, *to remember, like venir.*SUFFIRE, *to suffice.*

This verb is conjugated like *lire*, except in the two preter tenses, and the past participle, where it makes *Je suffis* . . . *Je suffisse* . . . *suffi*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

SUIVRE, *to follow.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Suivant, *following.*[ Suivi, *followed.*



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je suis, *I follow*,  
tu suis, *thou followest*,  
il suit, *he follows*.

## PLURAL.

Nous suivons, *we follow*,  
vous suivez, *you follow*,  
ils suivent, *they follow*.

## Imperfect.

Je suiv-ois, *I did follow*. See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je suiv-is, *I followed*. See p. 78. C. 2.

## Future.

Je suiv-rai, *I shall follow*. See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je suiv-rois, *I should follow*. See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Suis, *follow thou*,  
qu'il suive, *let him follow*.

## PLURAL.

Suivons, *let us follow*,  
suivez, *follow you*,  
qu'ils suivent, *let us follow*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## que SINGULAR.

Je suive, *that I may follow*,  
tu suives, *thou mayst follow*,  
il suive, *he may follow*.

## PLURAL.

Noussuivions, *we may follow*,  
vous suiviez, *you may follow*,  
ils suivent, *they may follow*.

que

## Preterit.

Je suiv-isse, *that I might follow*. See p. 78. G. 2.

SURPRENDRE, *to surprise*, like prendre.

SURSEOIR, *to adjourn*, like asseoir.

SURVENIR, *to come upon*, like venir.

SURVIVRE, *to survive*, like vivre.

TAIRE, (SE) *to hold the tongue*.

This verb is conjugated like plaire.

# A GRAMMAR OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

TENIR, *to hold.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

PAST.

Tenant, *holding.*

| Tenu, *held.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je tiens, *I hold,*  
tu tiens, *thou holdest,*  
il tient, *he holds.*

| Nous tenons, *we hold,*  
vous tenez, *you hold,*  
ils tiennent, *they hold.*

Imperfect.

Je ten-ois, *I did hold.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

Je tins, *I held,*  
tu tins, *thou heldest,*  
il tint, *he held.*

| Nous tîmes, *we held,*  
vous tîntes, *you held,*  
ils tinrent, *they held.*

Future.

Je tiend-rai, *I shall hold.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je tiend-rois, *I should hold.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Tiens, *hold thou,*  
qu'il tienne, *let him hold.*

| Tenons, *let us hold,*  
tenez, *hold you,*  
qu'ils tiennent, *let them hold.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Je tienne, *that I may hold,*  
tu tiennes, *thou mayst hold,*  
il tienne, *he may hold.*

| Nous tenions, *we may hold,*  
vous teniez, *you may hold,*  
ils tiennent, *they may hold.*

| que | SINGULAR.                          | Preterit. | PLURAL.                               |
|-----|------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| Je  | tinsse, <i>that I might hold,</i>  |           | Nous tinssions, <i>we might hold,</i> |
| tu  | tinsses, <i>thou mightst hold,</i> |           | vous tinssiez, <i>you might hold,</i> |
| il  | tînt, <i>he might hold.</i>        |           | ils tinssent, <i>they might hold.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

TRAIRE, *to milk.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| Trayant, <i>milking.</i> | Trait, <i>milked.</i> |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                      | PLURAL.                        |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Je trais, <i>I milk,</i>       | Nous trayons, <i>we milk,</i>  |
| tu trais, <i>thou milkest,</i> |                                |
| il trait, <i>he milks.</i>     |                                |
|                                | vous trayez, <i>you milk,</i>  |
|                                | ils trayent, <i>they milk.</i> |

## Imperfect.

Je tray-ois, *I did milk.* See p. 78. B.

## Future.

Je trai-rai, *I shall milk.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je trai-rois, *I should milk.* See p. 78. T.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| SINGULAR.                         | PLURAL.                               |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Trais, <i>milk thou,</i>          | Trayons, <i>let us milk,</i>          |
| qu'il traye, <i>let him milk.</i> |                                       |
|                                   |                                       |
|                                   | trayez, <i>milk you,</i>              |
|                                   | qu'ils trayent, <i>let them milk.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

| que | SINGULAR.                       | PLURAL.                            |
|-----|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Je  | traye, <i>that I may milk,</i>  | Nous trayions, <i>we may milk,</i> |
| tu  | trayes, <i>thou mayst milk,</i> |                                    |
| il  | traye, <i>he may milk.</i>      |                                    |
|     |                                 | vous trayiez, <i>you may milk,</i> |
|     |                                 | ils trayent, <i>they may milk.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

TRESSAILLIR, *to start.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Tressaillant, *starting.*

## PAST.

| Trassailli, *started.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je tressaille, *I start,*  
 tu tressailles, *thou startest,*  
 il tressaille, *he starts.*

## PLURAL.

Nous tressaillons, *we start,*  
 vous tressaillez, *you start,*  
 ils tressaillent, *they start.*

## Imperfect.

Je tressaill-ois, *I did start.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je tressaill-is, *I started.* See p. 78. C. 2.

## Future.

Je tressailli-rai, *I shall start.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je tressailli-rois, *I should start.* See p. 78. E.

The IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

que  
 Je tressaille, *that I may start,*  
 tu tressailles, *thou mayst start,*  
 il tressaille, *he may start.*

## PLURAL.

[start,  
 Nous tressaillions, *we may*  
 vous tressaillez, *you may sta.*  
 ils tressaillent, *they may start.*

que

## Imperfect.

Je tressaill-isse, *that might start.* See p. 78. G. 2.



VAINCRE, *to vanquish.*

This verb is conjugated like *convaincre*; but it is seldom used in the singular of the present tense of the indicative mood.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

VALOIR, *to be worth.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Valant, *being worth.*

## PAST.

| Valu, *been worth.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

Je vaux, *I am worth,*  
tu vaux, *thou art worth,*  
il vaut, *he is worth.*

## PLURAL.

Nous valons, *we are worth,*  
vous valez, *you are worth,*  
ils valent, *they are worth.*

## Imperfect.

Je val-ois, *I was worth.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je val-us, *I was worth.* See p. 78. C. 3.

## Future.

Je vaud-rai, *I shall be worth.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je vaud-rois, *I should be worth.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

Vaux, *be thou worth,*  
qu'il vaille, *let him be worth.*

## PLURAL.

Valons, *let us be worth,*  
valez, *be you worth,*  
qu'ils vaillent, *let them be worth.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que  
Je vaille, *that I may be worth,*  
tu vailles, *thou mayst be worth,*  
il vaille, *he may be worth.*

[worth,  
Nous valions, *we may be*  
vous valiez, *you may be worth,*  
ils vaillent, *they may be worth.*

que

Preterit.

Je val-usse, *that I might be worth.* See p. 78. G. 3.VENIR, *to come.*This verb is conjugated like *tenir*. See p. 136.VÊTIR, *to clothe, like revêtir.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

VIVRE, *to live.*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

## PAST.

Vivant, *living.*| Vécu, *lived.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je vis, *I live,*tu vis, *thou livest,*il vit, *he lives.*| Nous vivons, *we live,*vous vivez, *you live,*ils vivent, *they live.*

## Imperfect.

Je viv-ois, *I did live.* See p. 78. B.

## Preterit.

Je vécus, *I lived,*tu vécus, *thou livedst,*il vécut, *he lived.*| Nous vécûmes, *we lived,*vous vécûtes, *you lived,*il vécutent, *they lived.*

## Future.

Je viv-rai, *I shall live.* See p. 78. D.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je viv-rois, *I should live.* See p. 78. E.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Vis, *live thou,*qu'il vive, *let him live.*| Vivons, *let us live,*vivez, *live you,*qu'ils vivent, *let them live.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

que

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Je vive, *that I may live,*tu vives, *thou mayst live,*il vive, *he may live.*| Nous vivions, *we may live,*vous viviez, *you may live,*ils vivent, *they may live.*

| que | SINGULAR.                           | Preterit. | PLURAL.                                |
|-----|-------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------------------|
| Je  | vécusse, <i>that I might live,</i>  |           | Nous vécussions, <i>we might li.</i>   |
| tu  | vécusses, <i>thou mightst live,</i> |           | vous vécussiez, <i>you might live,</i> |
| il  | vécût, <i>he might live.</i>        |           | ils vécussent, <i>they might live.</i> |

VOIR, *to see.*

This verb is conjugated like *prévoir*, except in the future, where it makes *Je verrai*; and in the conditional, where it makes *Je verrois*.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

VOULOIR, *to be willing.*

#### PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT..

PAST.

Voulant, *being willing.* | Voulû, *been willing.*

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                         | PLURAL.                               |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Je veux, <i>I am willing,</i>     | Nous voulons, <i>we are willing,</i>  |
| tu veux, <i>thou art willing,</i> |                                       |
| Il veut, <i>he is willing.</i>    |                                       |
|                                   | vous voulez, <i>you are willing,</i>  |
|                                   | ils veulent, <i>they are willing.</i> |

Imperfect.

Je voul-ois, *I was willing.* See p. 78. B.

Preterit.

Je voul-us, *I was willing.* See p. 78. C. 3.

Future.

Je voud-rai, *I shall be willing.* See p. 78. D.

### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Je voud-rois, *I should be willing.* See p. 78. E.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

|                                                                               |  |                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------------|
| Veuille, <i>be thou willing,</i><br>qu'il veuille, <i>let him be willing.</i> |  | Veillons, <i>let us be willing,</i>     |
|                                                                               |  | veuillez, <i>be you willing,</i>        |
|                                                                               |  | qu'ils veuillent, <i>let them be w.</i> |

# A GRAMMAR OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present Tense.

### SINGULAR.

### PLURAL.

|                                       |        |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|
| que                                   | [ling, | [willing,                            |
| Je veuille, <i>that I may be wil-</i> |        | Nous voulions, <i>we may be</i>      |
| tu veuilles, <i>thou mayst be wi-</i> |        | vous vouliez, <i>you may be w.</i>   |
| il veuille, <i>he may be willing.</i> |        | ils veuillent, <i>they may be w.</i> |

que Preterit.  
Je voul-usse, *that I might be willing.* See p. 78. G. 3.

*Particular Observations upon some Verbs, chiefly Defective, and their Manner of being conjugated, and used; in Alphabetical Order.*

**A**SSORTIR, *to suit, to match*: this verb is regular, and conjugated like *punir*: so is *ressortir*, when it signifies to be under the jurisdiction of a court; but, when it signifies to go out again, it is irregular, and conjugated like *mentir*.

BRAIRE, *to bray*: this verb is used only in the following tenses, *il brait, il braira, il brairoit*.

BRUIRE, *to bluster*: this verb is used only in the infinitive, and in the third person of the imperfect tense, indicative mood, both singular and plural, *il bruyoit, ils bruyoient*; as, *les vents bruyoient*, the winds blustered.

Bruyant, having both genders and numbers, is by no means the participle of this verb, but an adjective; as, *les flots bruyans*, the blustering waves.

CHÔIR, *to fall*: this verb is hardly used, but in the infinitive mood, and in the participle past, *chu*. Instead of the feminine *chue*, we formerly made use of *chute*, which is still used in these proverbial manners of speaking, *chercher chape-chute, trouver chape-chute*, to look for, or to find some occasion, to make an advantage of the negligence or misfortune of somebody.



**CLORRE**, *to close*: this verb is used only in the three persons singular of the present tense, indicative mood, *je clos, tu clos, il clôt*; in the future, *je clorrai*; in the conditional, *je clorrais*; and in the participle past, *clos*. This verb is sometimes neuter in the third person singular, as, *la porte ne clôt pas bien; il y faut mettre de la lisière, elle clorra mieux*; the door does not shut close; you must put some list to it, it will shut closer.

**DEFAILLIR**, *to decay, to grow faint or weak*: this verb is used only in the plural number of the indicative mood, present tense, *nous défailions, vous défaillez, ils défont*; in the imperfect and preterit tenses, both singular and plural, of the same mood, *je défaisois, &c., je défaisis, &c.*; in all it's compound tenses, *j'ai défait, &c.*; and in the infinitive mood. Instead of this verb, it is always better to make use of *tomber en défaillance*. This verb likewise signifies to fail, to want; as, *toutes choses commencement à leur défailir*, they begin to want every thing; but in this sense it grows obsolete; it has no participle active in either sense.

**DEMOUVOIR**, *to make to desist, (a law term:)* this verb is used only in the infinitive mood; as, *rien ne l'a pu dé-mouvoir de ses prétentions*: nothing could make him give up his pretensions.

**ECHOIR**, *to fall out, to chance*: this verb is conjugated like *déchoir*, see page 108; but it is only used in the third person singular of the indicative mood, present tense, in the preterit and future tense, of the said mood, in the conditional, in the preterit tense of the subjunctive mood, in the participle past, and the participle of the present, wherein it makes *échéant*.

**ECLORRE**, *to be hatched*: this verb is used only in the third person singular and plural of the present tense, indicative mood, *il éclôt, ils éclosent*; in the future, *il éclorra, ils éclorront*; in the conditional, *il éclorroit, ils éclorroient*; in the present tense, subjunctive mood, *il éclore, ils éclosent*; and in the participle past, wherein it makes *éclou*. This verb, in it's compound tenses, is conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être*; and is sometimes used in a figurative sense, speaking of our thoughts, designs, &c.; which begin to be discovered, after having been some time hidden;

as, *ses desseins éclorront quelque jour*; his designs will one day come to light.

EMOUVOIR, *to stir up, to move*: this verb is conjugated like *mouvoir*: it is used both in a proper and figurative sense: in the first, it is said of the most subtle parts of the body, as humours, vapours, blood, &c.: as, *le soleil émeut les vapeurs*, the sun stirs up the vapours; in the second it is applied to whatever may cause a motion, or excite a passion, &c., as, *c'est un homme que rien n'émeut*, he is a man whom nothing moves. This verb is likewise used in a reflective sense; as, *il s'émut une grande tempête*, there arose a great tempest.

ENCLORE, *to enclose*, is conjugated like *clorre*, and used in the same tenses.

S'ENSUIVRE, *to ensue, to follow*: this verb is conjugated like *suivre*, in all it's tenses and moods, but used only in the third person singular and plural.

FAILLIR, *to fail*: this verb is conjugated in the present tense, indicative mood, *je faux, tu faux, il faut, nous faillons, vous faillez, ils faillent*; in the preterit tense of the same mood, *je faillis, &c.*; and in the participle active *faillant*; as, *arriver à jour faillant*, to arrive at the close of the day. This verb is seldom used; however, we still make use of the past participle; as, *s'il a failli, il faut qu'il soit puni*; if he have done amiss, he must be punished. We likewise say in conversation, *le cœur me faut*, my heart fails me\*.

FALLOIR sometimes signifies to want, to come short, to be far from; as, *il s'en faut beaucoup*, there wants a great deal of it, it comes far short of it: in this tense it is preceded by *s'en*, and conjugated only in the third person singular, both in it's simple and compound tenses; as, *il s'en faut, falloit, fallut, faudra, faudrait, faille, fallût; il s'en est fallu, &c.*

\* The authors of the Dictionary of Trevoux have *il faillira* in the future tense; and they seem to be in the right. However, we say, *son ami ne lui faudra pas au besoin*, his friend will not be wanting to him in time of need; "but then it is rather the future of the verb *fallir*; which, though different from the verb *faillir*, has sometimes the same signification." DICTIONNAIRE DE TREVOUX.

**FÉRIR**, *to strike*: this verb is used in the infinitive mood only in this phrase, *sans coup férir*, without striking a blow. The past participle, *féru*, is still used in the two following expressions, speaking in jest; *il est féru contre un tel*; he is indiposed towards such a person; *il est féru de cette femme*; he is smitten with this woman.

**FRIRE**, *to fry*: this verb is used only in the three persons singular of the present tense, indicative mood, *je fris, tu fris, il frit*; in the future tense singular and plural, *je frirai*, &c.; in the conditional, singular and plural, *je frirois*, &c.; in the imperative mood, second person singular, *fris*; and in the past participle, *frit*.

**GESIR**, *to lie*: this verb is quite obsolete, even in the infinitive mood; however, we still say, *gît, nous gissons, ils gissent, il gissoit*: as, *tout gît en cela*; the whole business lies in that point; *ci-gît*, here lies.

**LUIRE**, *to shine*: this verb is conjugated like *traduire*, except in the past participle, where it makes *lui*; and so is it's compound *reluire*. These two verbs want the preterit tense of the indicative and subjunctive moods.

**NUIRE**, *to hurt*: this verb, in all it's tenses and moods, is conjugated like *traduire*, except in the past participle, where it makes *nui*.

**PLEUVOIR**, *to rain*; this verb is used only in the third person singular, and sometimes in the plural,—*il pleut, il pleuvoit, il plut, il pleuvra, il pleuvroit, il pleuve, il plût, plu*; *les flèches pleuvoient de toutes parts*.

**PROMOUVOIR**, *to promote*: this verb is used only in the infinitive mood, and in the past participle, *promu*.

**QUERIR**, *to fetch*: this verb is used only in the infinitive mood, with the verbs *aller, venir*, and *envoyer*: as, *allez querir*, go and fetch.

**RAVOIR**, *to have again*: this verb is used only in the infinitive mood.

**REPARTIR**: when this verb signifies either *to go away again, to set out again*, or *to reply*, it takes no accent upon the first syllable, is irregular, and conjugated like *partir*; but when it signifies *to share, or to divide*, it takes an acute accent upon the first syllable, is regular, conjugated like *punir*, and scarcely used, but in a few expressions, speak-



ing of an estate, money, &c.: as, *répartir une somme d'argent*; to divide a sum of money.

RESSORTIR, see ASSORTIR, page 142.

SAILLIR: when this verb signifies *to gush out*, it is regular, and conjugated like *punir*; but when it signifies *to jut out*, it is irregular, wants the past participle, and is used only in the infinitive mood, and in the third person of some tenses; as *ce balcon, cette corniche, saille trop, saillera trop, sailleroit trop*. In this sense it likewise wants the participle of the present, though we say in Fortification, *angle saillant*; and in Architecture, *corniche saillante*; but then *saillant* is an adjective.

SEoir, *to sit well, to become*: this verb is never used in the infinitive mood, but only in the third person singular and plural of the following tenses, *il sied, ils sièent; il seyoit, ils seyoient; il siéra, ils siéront; il siéroit, ils siéroient*. This verb is still used in the participle of the present; as, *cette couleur vous seyant si bien, vous auriez tort d'en porter d'autre*; since this colour becomes you so well, you would be in the wrong to wear any other: but it is better to avoid it. Sometimes it is used impersonally; as, *il sied mal à un homme de . . .*; it does not become a man to . . . This verb in the sense of *to sit down* is obsolete; however in Chancery or Law, we still make use of the participle of the present *séant*, and the participle of the past *sis*: the former is applied to a person or persons who are sitting or residing; as *le Roi séant en son lit de justice*, the King sitting on his throne; *le Parlement est séant*, the Parliament is sitting; the latter signifies situate; as, *un héritage sis à . . .*, an estate situate . . .; *une maison sise rue St. Paul*, a house situate in St. Paul's Street.

SORTIR: when this verb is used in Law, and signifies *to get, to obtain*, it is regular, and conjugated like *punir*; but it is used in a few tenses; as, *cette sentence sortira son plein et entier effet*; this sentence will take effect; *j'entends que cette clause sortisse son plein et entier effet*, I expect this clause to take effect.

SOUDRE (*une question*), *to solve or resolve* (a question.) This verb is used only in the infinitive mood, but it is obsolete, and we make use of *répondre*.



## PART III.

---

### THEORY joined to PRACTICE.

THE FORMER CONTAINING THE  
 RULES OF THE FRENCH SYNTAX;

WITH MANY  
 NEW OBSERVATIONS:

THE LATTER, THE  
 RULES and OBSERVATIONS exemplified Separately,

FOR THE  
 SCHOLAR'S PRACTICE,

AFTER EACH PART OF SPEECH.

---

#### CHAP. I.

##### *Rules and Observations upon the Article.*

1. **T**HE definite article is used before the common nouns, denoting an individual distinction, or a totality of objects: as the spring is an agreeable season, *le printemps est une saison agréable*: men are mortal; *les hommes sont mortels*.

2. The indefinite article is used before nouns taken in an indefinite and indeterminate sense, or in a sense which

does not denote either an individual distinction, or a specific totality; as, learned people have approved his work; *des savans ont approuvé son ouvrage*. See Rule 18.

3. All common noun substantive take the definite article; also names of kingdoms, rivers, provinces, mountains, &c., unless in the sense of remaining in, going to, or coming from; in this case we make use of the prepositions *en* and *de*: as I am going to France; *je vais en France*: He is arrived from Flanders, *il est arrivé de Flandre*. They live in Italy, *ils demeurent en Italie*.

4. When a superlative follows immediately it's substantive, the definite article is always put before the superlative in the first case, and agrees with the substantive in gender and number; as, he is the most learned man; *c'est l'homme le plus savant*. You speak of the most learned man, *vous parlez de l'homme le plus savant*.

Except when *un* or *une* is followed by a substantive; in this case the definite article is commonly used in the second case plural; as, he is one of the most learned men; *c'est un homme des plus savans*, or *c'est un des hommes les plus savans*, or *c'est un des plus savans hommes*.

5. Adjectives used substantively take the article; as, idle people are despised: *les paresseux sont méprisés*.

6. Nouns of measure, weight &c., of things bought or sold, take the definite article, rendered in English by *a* or *an*; as, ten crowns *a* bushel; *dix écus le boisseau*.

7. When a substantive, having the definite article before it, is preceded by *tout*, the article is kept, in the first case, through all the cases of *tout*; as, all the world; *tout le monde*; of all the world, *de tout le monde*; to all the world, *à tout le monde*.

8. Some adverbs or prepositions, used substantively, require the article; as, the inside, *le dedans*; the outside, *le dehors*; the upper part, *le dessus*; the under part, *le dessous*.

9. Obs. The definite article is put before the name of the Italian authors according to their syntax; as, *Tasso*, *le Tasse*; except *Raphaël*, *Michel-Ange*, *Pétrarque*, *Bocace*, *Sannazar*, and some others; and those who have written in Latin, as *Sadolet*, *Manuce*, *Baronius*, &c.

Proper names in the plural take the definitive article, though they have none in the singular, as *les Homère*, *les Virgile*, &c.

10. Obs. After the verb *jouer*, to play, we make use of the definite article in the second case, speaking of musical instruments; as, *jouer du violon, de la guitare*; and speaking of games at cards, or bodily exercises, we make use of the same article in the third case; as, *jouer aux cartes, à la paume*; and after *joueur*, a player, we make use of the preposition *de* in both instances; as, *un joueur de violon, de guitare, de cartes, de paume*.

11. Obs. The adverb *bien*, used for *beaucoup*, much, requires after it the definite article in the second case: as, he has much money; *il a bien de l'argent*: but *beaucoup*, and likewise all the adverbs of quantity, as, *peu, moins, trop*, &c. take the preposition *de*; as, *il a beaucoup d'argent*; unless it is determined and specified by a relative pronoun that follows it; as, *il a dépensé beaucoup de l'argent que vous lui aviez donné*; he has spent a great deal of the money that you gave him.

12. Obs. Some names of countries, contrary to the exceptions of the third rule, retain their article even in the sense of remaining in, coming to, or going from. These names are particularly those of remote countries, *viz.* of America, Asia, and Africa, to which we may join *la Marche, le Perche, le Maine*, &c. provinces in France; *le Mantouan, le Milanois, le Parmesan*, &c., divisions of Italy.

13. Obs. No article is used before cardinal numbers, except first, when the nouns to which they are joined have a fixed number, either by themselves; as, *les quatre saisons*, the four seasons; or by a relation to something else expressed by the circumstances of the discourse; as, *les deux lettres que je vous ai écrites*, the two letters which I wrote to you. Secondly, speaking of cards, or the day of the month, as, *le dix; le neuf . . de Janvier, de Février, . . de cœur, de pique*, &c.

14. No article is used before proper names, particular places, towns, or villages, &c., except, first, *le Mans, le Câtelet, la Fère, la Ferté, le Havre de Grâce, la Rochelle, le Quesnoy*, &c. cities in France, to which add *le Caire, Cairo, la Haye*, the Hague.

Secondly, some nouns, when they denote an individual distinction, or a particular appellation, *l'Athalie* de RACINE, *la Mérope* de VOLTAIRE, speaking of two plays of these two authors.

15. No article is used before nouns immediately following certain verbs, or prepositions, with which they form a kind of adverb; as, *avec amitié*, with friendship; *sans dédain*, without disdain: *par dépit*, through spite, *avoir envie*, to have a mind to.

Except, when these nouns are followed, first, by the relative pronouns *qui, que, lequel*, &c., secondly, by a superlative: thirdly, by a noun in the second case.

16. No article is used after the preposition *en*, except in a very few cases, which will be noticed in the obser-

vations about prepositions; whereas *dans* always requires an article after it, unless it is followed by a conjunctive possessive pronoun, and likewise by a demonstrative, or indefinite pronoun: as, *dans ma chambre*, in my room; *dans cette circonstance*, in that circumstance; *dans quelques momens*, in a few moments.

17. No article is used before a noun, which follows immediately the name of a particular place, to which it belongs: as, I was born in London, the capital city of England; *Je suis né à Londres, ville capitale d'Angleterre*. Neither is the article used after the verb *être*: as, *il est médecin*, he is a physician, and not *il est un médecin*: unless in the exceptions of the 15th observation, and unless the verb be preceded by *ce*: as, *c'est un médecin*.

18. The indefinite articles *du*, *de la*, *des*, *à du*, *à de la*, *à des*, are used according to the second observation, and answer to *some*, either expressed or understood before a substantive.

19. Obs. When the adjective goes before it's substantive, we use, instead of the foregoing indefinite articles, *de* for the first case, *à de* for the third case; as, *voilà de bon pain*, that is good bread; *voilà de belles dames*, those are fine ladies; and not, *du bon pain*, *des belles dames*.

N. B. There are some substantives in the plural, with which we use *des*, not *de*, though preceded by their adjectives. This is the case when the adjective and substantive make but one idea, and the adjective is used only to render the signification of the substantive complete: such are *belles-lettres*, *beaux-esprits*, *grands-seigneurs*, which signify polite literature, men of learning, people of high rank.

20. The articles *un*, *une*, are used when they signify only a kind of indeterminate individuality, or an individuality in an indeterminate manner: as, a king ought to be the father of his people: *un roi doit être le père de son peuple*. However, these articles may sometimes be changed for the definite article: as, a wise man rules his passions; *un homme sage règle ses passions*, or *l'homme sage*, &c. The articles *un* and *une* are expressed in English by *a* or *an*.

21. Articles are repeated before each substantive, though synonymous; as, *les faveurs et les grâces que nous recevons du ciel*: the favours and kindnesses which we receive from Heaven.



22. Obs. When two adjectives, used positively, are joined together by a conjunction, and have the same substantive, the article is put before the first of them only, if they be synonymous, or very nearly alike; as, *les riches et magnifiques présens*; the rich and magnificent presents. If they be not synonymous, the article must be repeated; as, *les riches et les pauvres*; the rich and the poor.

*Rules and Observations upon the Articles, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1.] There are ten parts of speech; *the* \* article, *the* noun, *the* adjective, *the* pronoun, *the* verb, *the* participle, *the* adverb, *the* preposition, *the* conjunction, *the* interjection.

*The* article shows *the* object or thing.

*The* noun names *the* thing.

*The* adjective expresses *the* quality of *the* thing.

*The* pronoun supplies *the* place of *the* noun.

*The* verb shows *the* action, or passion of *the* object.

*The* participle partakes of *the* nature of *the* verb and noun; it is used in *the* conjugation of passive verbs, and for that of *the* compound tenses of *the* other verbs.

*The* adverb marks *the* difference and circumstances of *the* action or passion.

*The* preposition is an indeclinable word, placed before *the* nouns, pronouns

Il y a dix parties d'oraison :  
l' \* article, le nom, l'ad-  
jectif, le pronom, le verbe,  
le participe, l'adverbe, la  
préposition, la conjonc-  
tion, l'interjection.

L'article montre l'objet ou  
la chose.

Le nom nomme la chose.

L'adjectif exprime la qualité  
de la chose.

Le pronom tient la place du  
nom.

Le verbe montre l'action,  
ou la passion de l'objet.

Le participe tient de la na-  
ture du verbe et du nom ;  
il sert à la conjugaison  
des verbes passifs, et à  
celle des temps composés  
des autres verbes.

L'adverbe marque la diffé-  
rence et les circonstances  
de l'action ou de la passion.

La préposition est un mot  
indéclinable, placé de-  
vant les noms, les pro-

\* The words which are the objects of the rules are printed in Italic, both in the French and English examples, if there be any expressed in the latter, throughout the rules and observations exemplified, to the end of the FRENCH SYNTAX.

and verbs which it governs.

*The* conjunction joins words and phrases.

*The* interjection expresses *the* motions or passions of *the* soul.

Summer is an agreeable season.

Idleness is despicable.

Shut *the* window-shutters.

Open *the* window.

Draw *the* curtains.

Bring *the* mustard.

Give me *the* loaf.

Cut *the* meat.

Emulation is a noble passion.

Virtue and beauty are estimable.

Virtue is preferable to riches.

*The* heart often betrays *the* mind.

I like fruit.

[3.] France is a large country.

I speak of France.

Let us speak of England.

He talks only of Holland.

Touraine is *the* garden of France.

*The* Thames is a fine river.

*The* Rhine is a rapid river.

Parnassus, Pindus, and Helicon, are *the* mountains of the poets.

My brother is *come from* India.

noms, et *les* verbes qu'elle régit.

*La* conjonction joint *les* mots et *les* phrases.

*L'*interjection exprime *les* mouvemens ou *les* passions de *l'*âme.

*L'*été est une saison agréable.

*La* paresse est méprisable.

Fermez *les* volets.

Ouvrez *la* fenêtre.

Tirez *les* rideaux.

Apportez *la* moutarde.

Donnez-moi *le* pain.

Coupez *la* viande.

*L'*émulation est une noble passion.

*La* vertu et *la* beauté sont estimables.

*La* vertu est préférable *aux* richesses.

*Le* cœur trompe souvent *l'*esprit.

J'aime *le* fruit.

*La* France est un pays considérable.

Je parle *de la* France.

Parlons *de l'*Angleterre.

Il ne parle que *de la* Hollande.

*La* Touraine est *le* jardin *de la* France.

*La* Tamise est une belle rivière.

*Le* Rhin est une rivière rapide.

*Le* Parnasse, *le* Pinde, et *l'*Hélicon, sont *les* montagnes *des* poètes.

Mon frère est arrivé *des* Indes.

My sister *lives in* France.

I *shall go to* Italy next spring.

I am *going to* Spain.

I am *come from* Portugal.

He *lives in* England.

[4.] It is *the* custom of *the* most barbarous people.

He speaks of *the* most unhappy man.

He is *the* best educated child.

He is *the* most presumptuous man.

She is *the* most beautiful and amiable lady.

I am writing upon *the* nicest matter, though *the* least shining.

\* It is one of *the* most barbarous customs.

He speaks of one of *the* most unhappy men.

He is one of *the* best educated children.

He is one of *the* most presumptuous men.

She is one of *the* most beautiful and amiable ladies.

I am writing upon one of *the* nicest matters, though *the* least shining.

[5.] Politicians dissemble.

*The* ambitious sacrifice every thing to fortune.

Ma sœur demeure *en* France.

J'irai *en* Italie au printemps prochain.

Je vais *en* Espagne.

Je viens *de* Portugal.

Il demeure *en* Angleterre.

C'est *la* coutume *des* peuples *les* plus barbares.

Il parle *de* l'homme *le* plus malheureux.

C'est l'enfant *le* mieux élevé.

C'est l'homme *le* plus présomptueux.

C'est *la* demoiselle *la* plus belle et *la* plus aimable.

J'écris sur *la* matière *la* plus délicate, quoique *la* moins brillante.

C'est *une* *des* coutumes *les* plus barbares.

Il parle d'un *des* hommes *les* plus malheureux.

C'est un *des* enfans *les* mieux élevés.

C'est un *des* hommes *les* plus présomptueux.

C'est *une* *des* demoiselles *les* plus belles et *les* plus aimables.

J'écris sur *une* matière *des* plus délicates, quoique *des* moins brillantes.

*Les* politiques dissimulent.

*Les* ambitieux sacrifient tout à la fortune.

\* I make use, on purpose, of the six foregoing examples, to render the exception to the fifth observation more obvious to the learner. The article immediately following *un* or *une* may be omitted, as in the last example; in this case the substantive is put in the singular; as *C'est une coutume des plus barbares; Il parle d'un homme des plus malheureux.*

- We ought, in learned works,  
to join profit with pleasure.
- [6.] Coals are sold for a  
shilling *a* bushel.
- Eggs, have been sold for one  
pound *a* hundred; that is  
more than four shilling *a*  
quarter of a hundred.
- Candles are sold for nine  
pence *a* pound.
- Butter is sold for ten pence  
*a* pound.
- This lace cost one guinea *a*  
yard.
- [7.] It is *every* body's cus-  
tom.
- Every* body knows it.
- He tells the same story to  
*every* body.
- She speaks ill *of all* men.
- All* men are not liars.
- All* women are not proud.
- He slanders *all* women.
- He paid *all* the expenses.
- All* fashions are not ridicu-  
lous.
- I learn *every* day.
- It is the report *of the whole*  
city.
- [8.] *The* inside of the house  
is very fine.
- The* outside of the church is  
majestic.
- The* upper part is quite  
spoiled.
- [10.] My sister plays *upon*  
*the* guitar, and my bro-  
ther *upon the* violin.
- On doit, dans les ouvrages-  
d'esprit, joindre *l'utile à*  
*l'agréable*.
- Le charbon se vend un  
schelling *le* boisseau.
- Les œufs ont été vendus une  
livre sterling *le* cent; c'est  
plus de quatre schellings  
*le* quarteron.
- Les chandelles se vendent  
neuf sous *la* livre.
- Le beurre se vend dix sous  
*la* livre.
- Cette dentelle coûte une  
guinée *la* verge.
- C'est la coutume *de tout le*  
monde.
- Tout le* monde le sait.
- Il raconte la même histoire  
*à tout le* monde.
- Elle parle mal *de tous les*  
hommes.
- Tous les* hommes ne sont  
pas menteurs.
- Toutes les* femmes ne sont  
pas fières.
- Il médit *de toutes les* femmes.
- Il paya *tous les* dépens.
- Toutes les* modes ne sont pas  
ridicules.
- J'apprends *tous les* jours.
- C'est le bruit *de toute la*  
ville.
- Le* dedans de la maison est  
très-beau.
- Le* dehors de l'église est ma-  
jestueux.
- Le* dessus est tout gâté.
- Ma sœur joue *de la* guitare,  
et mon frère joue *du* vio-  
lon.



He is a good player *at* billiards, *at* tennis, &c.

We played yesterday *at* piquet.

[11.] He has *much* money.

I have read *few* books.

She has *many* friends.

You take a *great deal* of pains.

They give themselves *less* trouble.

He has spent *too much* money.

[12.] I shall go to China next year.

He is arrived *at* Mexico.

He is come back *from* Japan, *from* India, *from* Florida, *from* Canada, &c.

He lives *at* the Hague.

[13.] Here are *the two* roses you gave me to-day.

Of *the four* seasons of the year, the summer pleases me more than *the other three*.

I lost *the two* letters you wrote to me.

[14.] I come *from* London, *from* Greenwich, *from* Chelsea, *from* Kensington, &c.

*Athalie* is famous in sacred history, *Merope* in profane history.

Racine's *Athalie* and Voltaire's *Merope* are dramatic master-pieces.

C'est un bon joueur *de* billard, *de* paume, &c.

Nous jouâmes hier *au* piquet.

Il a *bien de* l'argent, ou *beaucoup d'*argent.

J'ai lu *peu* du livres.

Elle a *beaucoup d'*amis.

Vous prenez *beaucoup de* peine.

Ils se donnent *moins de* peine.

Il a dépensé *trop d'*argent.

J'irai *à la* Chine l'année prochaine.

Il est arrivé *au* Mexique.

Il est revenu *du* Japon, *des* Indes, *de la* Floride, *du* Canada, &c.

Il demeure *à la* Haye.

Voici *les deux* roses que vous m'avez données aujourd'hui.

*Des quatre* saisons de l'année, l'été me plaît plus que *les trois* autres.

J'ai perdu *les deux* lettres que vous m'avez écrites.

Je viens *de* Londres, *de* Greenwich, *de* Chelsea, *de* Kensington, &c.

*Athalie* est fameuse dans l'histoire sacrée, *Méropé* dans l'histoire profane.

L'*Athalie* de Racine et la *Méropé* de Voltaire sont des chefs-d'œuvre dramatiques.

- Milton's *Paradise Lost* is a fine poem. *Le Paradis perdu* de Milton est un beau poème.
- [15.] She received me *kindly*. Elle me reçut *avec amitié*.  
 He did it *through spite*. Il le fit *par dépit*.  
 Speak to him *without disdain*. Parlez-lui *sans dédain*.  
 I have a mind to go thither. J'ai envie d'y aller.  
 She received me with *the greatest friendship*. Elle me reçut avec *la plus grande amitié*.  
 He did it through *the hatred* he had for her. Il le fit par *la haine* qu'il avoit pour elle.  
 She spoke to him with *the contempt* he deserved. Elle lui parla avec *le mépris* qu'il méritoit.  
 He submitted to it with *the greatest patience*. Il s'y soumit avec *la plus grande patience*.  
 [16.] He is in a furnished lodging. Il est logé en chambre garnie.  
 You will find it in *the box*. Vous le trouverez dans *la boîte*.  
 Is there any ink in *the bottle*? Y a-t-il de l'encre dans *la bouteille*?  
 Here is some in *the inkstand*. En voici dans *l'écritoire*.  
 [17.] Paris is *the capital* of France. Paris est *la capitale* de la France.  
 He lives in Paris, the capital of France. Il demeure à Paris, *ville capitale* de France.  
 London is *the capital* of England. Londres est *la capitale* de l'Angleterre.  
 He was born in London, the capital of England. Il est né à Londres, *ville capitale* d'Angleterre.  
 George III, king of England and elector of Hanover, grandson to George II, has married the princess Charlotte, daughter to the prince of Mecklenburg-Strelitz. George trois, roi d'Angleterre et électeur d'Hanovre, petit-fils de George second, a épousé la princesse Charlotte, fille du prince de Mecklenbourg-Strelitz.  
 He is a merchant. Il est marchand, ou c'est un marchand.  
 He is a physician. Il est médecin, ou c'est un médecin.

She *is* a milliner.

Elle *est* coiffeuse, ou *c'est* une coiffeuse.

He *is* the merchant *whom* you look for.

Il *est* le marchand *que* vous cherchez.

He *is* the physician *whom* you ask for.

Il *est* le médecin *que* vous demandez.

He *is* the most upright merchant.

Il *est* le marchand le plus intègre.

He *is* the most skilful physician.

Il *est* le médecin le plus expert.

She has more custom than any other milliner.

Elle *est* la coiffeuse la plus achalandée.

[18.] Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, *some* wine, *some* beer, &c.

Donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, du vin, de la bière, &c.

Bring *some* salt, *some* pepper, *some* mustard, &c.

Apportez du sel, du poivre, de la moutarde, &c.

There is wine and water.

Voilà du vin et de l'eau.

Do you choose beer, or cider?

Souhaitez-vous de la bière, ou du cidre?

Bread and water are sufficient for him.

Du pain et de l'eau lui suffisent.

You must lay this fruit in straw.

Il faut mettre ce fruit dans de la paille.

Lend me *some* paper and ink.

Prêtez-moi du papier et de l'encre.

Have you thread or silk?

Avez-vous du fil, ou de la soie?

Mend my stockings with cotton.

Raccommodez mes bas avec du coton.

I spent my money in goods.

J'ai employé mon argent à de la marchandise.

This thread is like silk.

Ce fil ressemble à de la soie.

He compares this stuff to velvet.

Il compare cette étoffe à du velours.

She will not trust such corrupted men.

Elle ne veut pas se fier à des hommes si corrompus.

This cider is like wine.

Ce cidre ressemble à du vin.

A fine discourse often displeases ignorant people.

Un beau discours déplaît souvent à des ignorans.

Give me *some* apples, *some*

Donnez-moi des pommes,

pears, *some* oranges, *some* nuts, &c.

[19.] There are very fine flowers.

I have bought fine lace.

To write well, we must make use of good paper, good ink, and good pens.

Here are some fine ladies.

There are some fine houses and fine streets in London.

This lord has fine estates and fine gardens.

This lady has a great estate.

This writing-master makes fine letters.

Frederic II. king of Prussia, took a particular delight in having tall soldiers.

His brother applies himself to polite literature.

I am acquainted with people of wit.

I saw last week some great lords in the Park.

[20.] A child ought to obey his father and mother.

A king ought to be *the* father of his people.

It is *a* thing unheard of.

It is *an* uncommon friendship.

A prudent man ought to know how to keep *a* secret.

*des* poires, *des* oranges, *des* noix, &c.

Voilà *de* très-belles fleurs.

J'ai acheté *de* belle dentelle.

Pour bien écrire, il faut se servir *de* bon papier, *de* bonne encre et *de* bonnes plumes.

Voici *de* belles demoiselles.

Il y a *de* belles maisons et *de* belles rues dans Londres.

Ce seigneur a *de* belles terres et *de* beaux jardins.

Cette dame a *de* grands biens.

Ce maître à écrire forme *de* belles lettres.

Frédéric second, roi de Prusse, prenoit un plaisir particulier à avoir *de* grands soldats.

Son frère s'applique *aux* belles-lettres.

Je connois *des* beaux-esprits.

Je vis la semaine passée *des* grands-seigneurs dans le Parc.

*Un* enfant doit obéir à son père et à sa mère.

*Un* roi doit être *le* père de son peuple.

C'est *une* chose inouïe.

C'est *une* rare amitié.

*Un* homme prudent, ou l'homme prudent doit savoir garder *un* secret.

The last two observations [21] and [22] have been sufficiently exemplified in the foregoing examples.



## CHAP. II.

*Rules and Observations upon Nouns.*

1. **W**HEN two substantives come together in English with *of* before them, that preceded by *of* in English is put in the second case in French; as, the top *of* the mountain; *le sommet de la montagne*.

Sometimes *of* is omitted, and the substantive, which it would have preceded, is put before the other in what is called the genitive or possessive case, which is commonly denoted by 's added to the word, when the latter of the two substantives must be the first case in French, and placed at the beginning; as, my father's house; *la maison de mon père*. Likewise in the English compound words, the first in English is commonly the second in French; as, a seaport; *un port de mer*.

2. Adjectives have the same gender and number as their substantives; as, a good book; *un bon livre*: a good pen; *une bonne plume*: good books; *de bons livres*: good pens; *de bonnes plumes*.

Except,—first, *feu*, late, deceased, before the article or pronoun; *nu*, bare, before *tête*, *pieds*, *jambes*, &c.; *demi*, half, before its substantive.—Secondly, *tout*, followed by an article, or by an adjective, ending with an *e* mute in its masculine gender, before the word *gens*, which is feminine; as, all people of probity; *tous les gens de probité*; all-honest people; *tous les honnêtes gens*. But if the word *tout* be either immediately followed by *gens*, or if *gens* be preceded by an adjective, not ending with an *e* mute in its masculine, then the word *tout* follows the rule, and is put in the feminine \*, as, all old people; *toutes les vieilles gens*; they are all persons whom I do esteem, *ce sont toutes gens que je n'estime point*.—Thirdly, adjectives following *gens*, as they are polite people; *ce sont des gens polis*.

3. When two or more substantives of different genders, and not separated by a disjunctive, are the first case to the verb *être*, the adjective, or participle, that follows, ought to be in the masculine plural; as the trunk, the closet, and the room, are open; *le coffre, le cabinet, et la chambre, sont ouverts*.

4. Two or more substantives of different genders, immediately followed by an adjective or participle, require commonly, that the adjective or participle, should agree in gender and number with the last substantive, as she found the trunk, the closet, and the room open; *elle trouva le coffre, le cabinet, et la chambre ouverte.*

Except when an adjective, or a participle past, implies a union, or a collection; such as *joint, uni, réuni*; as, the children, father, and mother united or joined together; *les enfans, le père, et la mère réunis ou joints ensemble.*

5. Adjectives are put in French after their substantives.

6. Some adjectives are put before their substantives; as, *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, petit, vieux.*

There are some adjectives which are to be placed sometimes before, and sometimes after their substantives. See page 23.

7. OBS. Adjectives of number are placed before their substantives; except when they are used in a title, or as a surname, without an article; as *livre premier, chapitre second, section troisième, Charles premier, Jacques second, George trois.*

8. Some adjectives govern the following noun in the second case, that is, require the preposition *de* before it: Such are adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetting, care, fear, guilt, fulness, emptiness, plenty, want, &c.*

9. Some adjectives govern the following noun in the third case, that is, require the preposition *à* before it; such are adjectives signifying *submission, relation, pleasure or displeasure, due resistance, difficulty, likeness, inclination, aptness, fitness, advantage, profit, &c.*

10. Adjectives signifying dimension, as, *long, thick, high, deep, big, wide, or broad*, which come after the word of measure in English, come before it in French, and are followed by the preposition *de*; as, a window three feet broad; *une fenêtre large de trois pieds.* Or, which is the more general practice, the adjective is turned into it's substantive, with the word of measure before it; in this case the word of measure, or dimension, is pre-

ceded by the preposition *de*; as, *une fenêtre de trois pieds de largeur*. When in this construction the verb *to be* happens to precede the word of measure or dimension, it is commonly changed into the verb *avoir*; and the preposition *de*, which is before the quantity of measure, is left out; as, *une fenêtre qui a trois pieds de largeur*; a window which is three feet broad.

*Rules and Observations upon Nouns, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1.] The love of *life* is natural to men. L'amour *de la vie* est naturel aux hommes.

The study of *languages* is very entertaining. L'étude *des langues* est très-amusante.

Here is my father's *house*. Voici *la maison* de mon père.

I saw the king's *horses*. J'ai vu *les chevaux* du roi.

Have you not seen the king's *palace*? N'avez-vous pas vu *le palais* du roi?

The queen's *apartments* are very fine. *Les appartemens* de la reine sont très-beaux.

It is my brother's *book*. C'est *le livre* de mon frère.

She wears a *straw* hat with a *silk* ribbon. Elle porte un chapeau de *paille* avec un ruban de *soie*,

Is the *chamber* door shut? La porte de la *chambre* est-elle fermée?

We passed over *London* bridge to go to *Greenwich*. Nous passâmes sur le pont de *Londres*, pour aller à *Greenwich*.

I bought a fine *silver* tankard. J'ai acheté un beau pot d'*argent*.

He is gone to his *country-house*. Il est allé à sa maison de *campagne*.

[2.] He spoke to her *bare-headed*. Il lui parla *nu-tête*, ou *tête nue*.

He goes *barefooted*, *bare-legged*. Il va *nu pieds*, *nu-jambes*, ou il va les *pieds nus*, les *jambes nues*.

The *late* queen was an accomplished woman. *Feu* la reine, ou la *feue* reine, étoit une femme accomplie.

I shall go out in *half* an hour.

It is *half* an hour past one.

*All* people of honour.

It is the opinion of *all* people of probity.

*All* honest people have blamed him.

Almost *all* young people like play.

*All* sorts of people do for him.

*All* old people disapproved of it.

He withdrew from *all* the bad people of his neighbourhood.

They are *polite* people.

They are *prudent* people.

You must not trust *indiscreet* people.

[3.] Our maid and man servant are very *diligent*.

His brother and cousin are very *idle*.

The window and the door are *open*.

My father and mother are *sick*.

My brother and sister have *caught cold*.

[4.] Her eyes, mouth, and neck are very *pretty*.

She sings with a charming and delicate air.

Why do you leave the windows and the door *open*?

He had his eyes and mouth *open*.

Her body and mind are well *framed*.

He found beauty, youth,

Je sortirai dans une *demi*-heure.

Il est une heure et *demie*.

*Tous les* gens d'honneur.

C'est l'opinion de *tous les* gens de probité.

*Tous les* honnêtes gens l'ont blâmé.

Presque *tous les* jeunes gens aiment le jeu.

Ils s'accommodent de *toutes* sortes de gens.

*Toutes les* vieilles gens l'ont désapprouvé.

Il se retira de *toutes les* mauvaises gens de son voisinage.

Ce sont des gens *polis*.

Ce sont des gens *prudents*.

Il ne faut pas vous fier à des gens *indiscrets*.

Notre servante et notre valet sont très-*diligens*.

Son frère et son cousin sont très-*paresseux*.

La fenêtre et la porte sont *ouvertes*.

Mon père et ma mère sont *malades*.

Mon frère et ma sœur sont *enrhumés*.

Elle a les yeux, la bouche, et la gorge très-*belle*.

Elle chante avec un goût et une délicatesse *charmante*.

Pourquoi laissez-vous les fenêtres et la porte *ouverte*?

Il avoit les yeux et la bouche *ouverte*.

Elle a le corps et l'esprit bien *fait*.

Il trouva la beauté, la jeu-



riches, wisdom, and even  
virtue *united* in her per-  
son.

It is exceedingly hot and  
foggy in that country.

The children, father, and  
mother *united*.

Health, honours, and for-  
tune, *joined* together, are  
not able to satisfy the  
heart of man.

[5.] I have a *green* snuff box.  
The *English* tongue is *co-  
pious, strong, and harmo-  
nious*.

The *French* tongue is very  
*smooth*.

She is a *handsome, rich, and  
virtuous* woman.

Give me a *clean* shirt.

A *black* hat, a *green* suit,  
*white* stockings, *red* shoes.

There is a very *fine* coach.  
He follows the *English* fa-  
shion.

Sing an *Italian* air.

People enjoy *pure* air in  
France.

Why do not you wear your  
*black* stockings?

She is a *charming* woman.

She reprimanded him se-  
verely.

[6.] He is a *naughty* boy.  
*Bad* weather is tiresome to  
me.

nesse, les richesses, la  
sagesse, et même la vertu  
*réunies* dans sa personne.

Il fait dans ce pays-là des  
chaleurs et des brouillards  
*excessifs*.

Les enfans, le père et la  
mère *réunis*.

La santé, les honneurs, et la  
fortune, *joint*s ensemble,  
ne peuvent satisfaire le  
cœur de l'homme.

J'ai une tabatière *verte*.

La langue *Angloise* est  
*abondante, forte et har-  
monieuse*.

La langue *Françoise* est très-  
*douce*.

C'est une femme *belle, riche,  
et vertueuse*.

Donnez-moi une chemise  
*blanche*.

Un chapeau *noir*, un habit  
*vert*, des bas *blancs*, des  
souliers *rouges*.

Voilà un carrosse *magnifique*.  
Il suit la mode *Angloise*.

Chantez un air *Italien*.

On jouit d'un air *pur* en  
France.

Pourquoi ne portez-vous pas  
vos bas *noirs*?

C'est une femme *charmante*.

C'est une *charmante* femme.

Elle lui a fait de *sévères* ré-  
primandes, ou des répri-  
mandes *sévères*.

C'est un *méchant* garçon.

Le *mauvais* temps m'en-  
nuie.

|                                                             |                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| He dwells in a <i>large</i> house.                          | Il demeure dans une <i>grande</i> maison.                                      |
| London is a <i>fine</i> city.                               | Londres est une <i>belle</i> ville.                                            |
| He is a man of <i>distinguished</i> merit.                  | C'est un homme d'un <i>grand</i> mérite.                                       |
| He is a <i>tall</i> <i>fair</i> man.                        | C'est un <i>grand</i> homme <i>blond</i> .                                     |
| [7.] The <i>first</i> man was the <i>first</i> sinner.      | Le <i>premier</i> homme fut le <i>premier</i> pécheur.                         |
| George III, king of England, and Lewis XVI, king of France. | George <i>Trois</i> , roi d'Angleterre, et Louis <i>Seize</i> , roi de France. |
| [8.] I am contented with my condition.                      | Je suis content <i>de</i> ma condition.                                        |
| It is a praiseworthy action.                                | C'est une action digne <i>de</i> louanges.                                     |
| He is unworthy <i>of</i> your friendship.                   | Il est indigne <i>de</i> votre amitié.                                         |
| She is incapable <i>of</i> a lie.                           | Elle est incapable <i>de</i> mensonge.                                         |
| Few people are satisfied <i>with</i> their fortune.         | Peu de gens sont contents <i>de</i> leur fortune.                              |
| I am free <i>from</i> fear and danger.                      | Je suis exempt <i>de</i> crainte et <i>de</i> danger.                          |
| I was overjoyed <i>at</i> that news.                        | Je fus ravi <i>de</i> cette nouvelle.                                          |
| She is not contented <i>with</i> her maid.                  | Elle n'est pas contente <i>de</i> sa servante.                                 |
| He is discontented <i>with</i> his wife.                    | Il est mécontent <i>de</i> sa femme.                                           |
| He is accused <i>of</i> murder.                             | Il est accusé <i>de</i> meurtre.                                               |
| He was loaded <i>with</i> praises.                          | Il fut comblé <i>de</i> louanges.                                              |
| They are greedy <i>of</i> glory and riches.                 | Il sont avides <i>de</i> gloire et <i>de</i> richesses.                        |
| I am tired <i>of</i> your discourses.                       | Je suis las <i>de</i> vos discours.                                            |
| They are enraged <i>at</i> his success.                     | Il sont enragés <i>de</i> son succès.                                          |
| He is deep in debt.                                         | Il est chargé <i>de</i> dettes.                                                |
| [9.] That is good <i>for</i> something.                     | Cela est bon <i>à</i> quelque chose.                                           |
| It is a fruit hurtful <i>to</i> health,                     | C'est un fruit nuisible <i>à</i> la santé.                                     |

He is too much addicted to study.

She is unfit *for* any thing.

You are insensible to all the remonstrances of your friends.

He is fit *for* any thing.

She is not to be compared *with* you.

That is conformable to truth.

Yours is like mine.

I am ready for your orders.

I am very sensible *of* cold.

That cloth is like yours.

[10] A carpet six yards *long* and two *wide*.

Our house is fourscore yards *high*, and the foundation is four yards *deep*.

This lawn is a yard *wide*.

A wall two feet *thick*.

A street twenty yards *wide*.

Our garden is a hundred feet *long*.

That river is forty feet *deep*.

A well forty feet *deep*.

There are fine walks in St. James's Park; they are

Il est trop adonné à l'étude.

Elle n'est propre à rien.

Vous êtes insensible à toutes les remonstrances de vos amis.

Il est propre à tout.

Elle n'est pas comparable à vous.

Cela est conforme à la vérité.

Le vôtre est semblable au mien.

Je suis prêt à vos ordres.

Je suis très-sensible *au* froid.

Ce drap est pareil *au* vôtre.

Un tapis long *de* six verges, et large *de* deux; *ou* un tapis *de* six verges *de* longueur, et *de* deux *de* largeur.

Notre maison *a* quarante toises *de* hauteur, et les fondemens *ont* deux toises *de* profondeur.

Ce linon *a* une verge *de* largeur.

Une muraille épaisse *de* deux pieds, *ou* une muraille *de* deux pieds *d'épaisseur*.

Une rue large *de* dix toises, *ou* une rue *de* dix toises *de* largeur.

Notre jardin *a* cent pieds *de* longueur.

Cette rivière *a* quarante pieds *de* profondeur.

Un puits *de* quarante pieds *de* profondeur.

Il y a de belles allées dans le Parc de St. James;

|                                                      |                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| at least eight hundred<br>yards <i>long</i> .        | elles <i>ont</i> au moins quatre<br>cens toises <i>de</i> longueur.        |
| Have you ever seen a man<br>eight feet <i>high</i> ? | Avez-vous jamais vu un<br>homme <i>de</i> huit pieds <i>de</i><br>hauteur? |
| A book two inches <i>thick</i> .                     | Un livre <i>de</i> deux poutes<br><i>d'épaisseur</i> .                     |

---



---

## CHAP. III.

### *Rules and Observations upon Pronouns.*

#### SECTION I.

##### *Personal Pronouns.*

1. **A** GOVERNING personal pronoun, in the first case, must always be put before a verb which has no other noun, or pronoun, for the first case; as, *I speak, je parle, &c.*

Except the second person singular, and the first and second person plural of the imperative mood, which are used without a pronoun personal.

2. Obs. There are some places where the pronoun personal is put after the verb; as when it is joined with either of the seven following: *dire*, to say; *répondre*, to answer; *répliquer*, to reply; *repartir*, to answer again; *continuer*, to continue; *poursuivre*, to pursue; and *s'écrier*, to cry out; and forms with it a distinct member of the sentence; as, I have none, *answered he*; *je n'en ai point*, *répondit-il*.

3. Obs. The personal pronoun must be put after the verb in these phrases, *dussiez vous*, though you should; *fussiez-vous*, though you were; *puissiez*, or *puissiez-vous*, may you; and in any of those expressions which form what grammarians call the optative mood, as, though you were rich, *fussiez-vous riche*; though you should write to him, *dussiez-vous lui écrire*; may you see him in good health, *puissiez-vous le voir en bonne santé*.

4. Obs. It is more elegant to put the personal pronoun, even followed by *que*, signifying *that*, after the verb preceded by one of these conjunctions: *aussi*, but then; *peut-être*, perhaps; *du moins*, *au moins*, at least; *en vain*, in vain; *à peine*, scarcely, &c.: as, *but then* he received his reward, *aussi reçut-il sa récompense*.



5. In an interrogation, either affirmative or negative, the personal pronoun is always put after the verb in simple tenses: as, do you eat? *mangez-vous?* do you not write? *n'écrivez-vous pas?* In compound tenses it is put immediately after the auxiliary, either in an affirmative or negative question: as, have you eaten? *avez-vous mangé?* have you not written? *n'avez-vous pas écrit?*

6. Obs. When, in an interrogation, we make use of a verb ending with an *e* mute, we put an acute accent upon the last *e* of the verb, before the pronoun *je*; as, do I speak? *parlé-je?* and not *parle-je?* do I offer? *offré-je?*

However, in this instance, I would advise to make use of the easy way of asking a question by these words, *est-ce que*, as it must be done for some other verbs; as, do I sleep? *est-ce que je dors?* In this case the pronoun is put before the verb.

7. When a verb, interrogatively used, ends in the third person singular with a vowel, we always put a *t* between the verb and the pronouns *il*, *elle*, as in the following examples: does he eat? *mange-t-il?* has she eaten? *a-t-elle mangé?*

8. Obs. What we have said in the second rule must be said likewise, when after those verbs comes another noun instead of a pronoun; as, all men are fools, says Boileau, *tout les hommes sont fous, dit Boileau.*

Likewise after these pronouns, *se*, *que*, *le*, *ce que*, it is sometimes more elegant to put the noun after the verb; as, at first a large parlour presented itself before our eyes; *d'abord se présenta devant nous un grand salon.* What reason dictates, is not always true; *ce que dicte la raison, n'est pas toujours vrai.* It is thus the parliament would have it; *C'est ainsi que le voulut le parlement.*

9. A governing personal pronoun is superfluous when any noun whatever is the first case to a verb: as George III is a good king; *George III est un bon roi.* But in an interrogation, beside the noun, we put the pronoun after the verb: as, does your brother write? *votre frère écrit-il?*

Except when in asking a question we make use of this idiom, *est-ce que*; in this case the pronoun is left out, as in the foregoing example; *est-ce que votre frère écrit?*

10. Personal pronouns of the first and second person plural are commonly put before the verb, if the verb have for it's nominative several personal pronouns, or only one personal pronoun, in the first or second person of either number, joined with one or more nouns: as, you and I are idle; *vous et moi nous sommes paresseux*: your brother and I were present, *votre frère et moi nous étions présents*.

Except a noun substantive is joined with *lui* or *elle*, when the personal pronoun is left out, and the verb is put in the third person plural: as, your brother and he are idle, *votre frère et lui sont paresseux*.

11. Governed personal pronouns are put before the verb in French, though after it in English; as, he told me; *il me dit*. Foreigners should attend to this rule, against which they are very apt to offend.

Except, 1st, in the second person singular, and first, and second persons plural of the imperative: as, tell me, *dites-moi . . .* Observe, that *me* is always put instead of *moi*, when it comes before the verb, unless it be separated from the verb by a conjunction: as, it is to me he gives it; *c'est à moi qu'il le donne*: 2dly, after the verb *être*, when it signifies *to belong to*, and after the verb *se fier*, to trust, or rely on: as, you rely on me, *vous vous fiez à moi*: this house belongs to me; *cette maison est à moi*: 3dly, after the verbs *songer*, *penser*, *parler*, when the last signifies *to direct our discourse to*, and a very few others.

12. The supplying pronouns *le*, *la*, and *les*, are always put before the verbs by which they are governed, and are placed before *lui* and *leur*; as, you give them to him; *vous les lui donnez*: whereas they are put after the other personal pronouns; as, I give it to you; *je vous le donne*; except in the imperative mood in affirmative sentences; as, give it me; *donnez-le-moi*.

13. The supplying pronouns *en* and *y* are also placed before the verb, and are put after all other personal pronouns, and *en* after *y*; as, I have sent some to them thither; *je leur y en ai envoyé*.

Except when *y* and *moi* meet together in the second person of the imperative mood affirmatively used, *y* is put before *en*; as, carry me thither; *menez-y-moi*.

N. B. The last three observations, with their exceptions, are fully exemplified in their proper places, and in the supplying pronouns.

14. *Il*, which some wrongly call a personal pronoun in the following examples, is commonly used before the verb *être* followed by an adjective, where the word *thing* is understood; as, it is glorious to die for our country; *il est glorieux de mourir pour sa patrie*. If the adjective make a complete sense, *ce* is commonly used: as, it is true; *c'est vrai*.

*Il* is likewise used when we speak of the time and hour: as, it is eleven o'clock; *il est onze heures*; it is bad weather; *il fait mauvais temps*.

Except, when a question is asked with *ce*; as, *quelle heure est-ce là?* the answer is, *c'est une heure*. *Ce* is commonly used in the beginning of a sentence before a substantive: as, it is a pity; *c'est dommage*.

15. *Il, elle*, singular, or *ils, elles*, plural, and *ce*, are indiscriminately used; 1st, before substantives expressing the sex, quality, profession, or trade of a person; as, he is a merchant; *il est marchand*, or *c'est un marchand*: 2dly, before names of nations: as, they are Frenchmen; *ils sont François*, or *ce sont des François*. Observe, that in the two foregoing instances, no article is put before the substantive after the personal pronouns *je, tu, il, &c.*

16. Personal pronouns, whether conjunctive or disjunctive, in their oblique cases, are always to be repeated; as, I say and declare to you, *je vous dis, et vous déclare*; take the books, and read them; *prenez les livres, et les lisez, or lisez-les*.

17. Personal pronouns are repeated before each verb: 1st, when they are followed by verbs, in different tenses: as, I say, and shall always say; *je dis, et je dirai toujours*: 2dly, when we pass from a negation to an affirmation, or from an affirmation to a negation: 3dly, after the conjunctions *mais, même, cependant, néanmoins, nonobstant, malgré tout cela, aussi, ainsi, ou, &c.* But when the personal pronouns belong to the same tense and person, they are commonly not repeated; as, I say and declare; *je dis et déclare*. Observe here, that the pronoun *on* is always repeated: as, people speak and act; *on parle et on agit*.

18. The pronouns *lui, eux, elle, elles*, are used at the end of a sentence, only when we are speaking of persons; as, is it your brother? *It is*; *Est-ce votre frère? C'est lui*. When we are speaking of inanimate things, we make use of the pronouns *le, la, les*: as, is it your hat? Yes, *it is*. *Est-ce là votre chapeau? Oui, ce l'est*, and not *c'est lui* \*.

19. OBS. The foregoing pronouns *lui, eux, elle, leur*, when we are speaking of inanimate things, are sometimes used in the middle of a sentence †, sometimes not: but there is no other rule for this than custom, so that it can be learned only by use: for, speaking of a sword, I may say, *je lui dois la vie*, I am indebted to it for my life; and yet we must say, speaking of the same sword, *attachez-y ce nœud*, hang that swordknot to it; not *attachez-lui*.

20. *Il, ils; elle, elles*, in the beginning of a sentence, are used, speaking even of inanimate things: as, when speaking of a house, I say, *elle est belle*.

21. *Lui, leur, elle, &c.*, governed by a preposition, are never used, speaking of irrational and inanimate things: as, you see that house, he lives over against it; *vous voyez cette maison, il demeure vis-à-vis*, and not *vis-à-vis d'elle*.

In this case the prepositions become adverbs. But observe, that some prepositions never, or very seldom, become adverbs: as, *avec*, with; *sans*, without, &c.; therefore, in such cases, give another turn to the sentence: as, I cannot do without it, *je ne puis m'en passer*; he came with it, *il l'a apporté*.

It may be observed, that *après* and *avec* are sometimes followed by *lui, eux, elle*, or *elles*: as, when the river overflows, it carries every thing away with it; *lorsque cette rivière se déborde, elle entraîne tout avec elle*: but as such sentences are as good without *avec elle*, or *après elle*, as with, and it very often happens, that we cannot make use of these expressions; it is best to avoid them by omitting them absolutely, as in the foregoing example, where, *lorsque cette rivière se déborde, elle entraîne tout*, is as good French without *avec elle*, as if these words were added.

22. OBS. *Lui, elle*, and *soi*, at the end of a sentence, are not to be used indifferently. *Soi* is very seldom used in the plural. When we speak of things in the masculine gender, *soi* is used; as, the load-

\* See the third observation upon supplying pronouns, and the examples thereon. Section VI, N. 3.

† When things are personified: as, *glory, victory, virtue*, &c.; or when we make use of personal phrases, i. e. phrases which are applied only to persons. RECHAUT.



stone attracts iron: *l'aimant attire le fer à soi*. *Elle-même* may be used in the feminine; as, virtue is lovely in itself: *la vertu est aimable en elle-même*.

Speaking of persons in general, *soi* is to be used: as, a man ought not to speak of *himself*, but with great modesty; *on ne doit parler de soi, qu'avec beaucoup de modestie*. When we speak of a particular person, *lui* or *elle* is used instead of *soi*: as, that man speaks of nobody but *himself*: *cet homme ne parle que de lui*.

N. B. *Même* is often elegantly put after *lui, elle, eux, soi, &c.*; and must be put after them, when they follow a reflected verb.

*Personal Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

- |                                                        |                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| [1.] I am learning my lesson.                          | <i>J'apprends ma leçon.</i>                            |
| He is writing his theme.                               | <i>Il écrit son thème.</i>                             |
| She is embroidering.                                   | <i>Elle brode.</i>                                     |
| We have a holiday.                                     | <i>Nous avons congé.</i>                               |
| You are lazy.                                          | <i>Vous êtes paresseux.</i>                            |
| They make a noise.                                     | <i>Ils font du bruit.</i>                              |
| My mother is in the country.                           | <i>Ma mère est à la campagne.</i>                      |
| She is gone out.                                       | <i>Elle est sortie.</i>                                |
| [2.] I have none, said he.                             | <i>Je n'en ai point, dit-il.</i>                       |
| I had not seen it, answered I.                         | <i>Je ne l'avois pas vu, répondis-je.</i>              |
| But she replied, why do you concern yourself about it? | <i>Mais, répliqua-t-elle, de quoi vous mêlez-vous?</i> |
| [3.] Though you should blame me.                       | <i>Dussiez-vous me blâmer.</i>                         |
| Though you were still more surprised.                  | <i>Fussiez-vous encore plus surpris.</i>               |
| [4.] Perhaps he will say, that he found it.            | <i>Peut-être dira t-il qu'il l'a trouvé.</i>           |
| [5.] Have you learnt your lesson?                      | <i>Avez-vous appris votre leçon?</i>                   |
| [6.] I scarcely begin to perceive it.                  | <i>A peine commencé-je à m'en apercevoir.</i>          |
| But then I do not suffer myself to be insulted.        | <i>Aussi ne souffre je pas qu'on m'insulte.</i>        |
| Do I tell a lie?                                       | <i>Est ce que je mens?</i>                             |
| [7.] Has he not been angry with me?                    | <i>N'a-t-il pas été fâché contre moi?</i>              |

Has *she* not been in the country ?

Does *she* embroider ?

[8.] Love your neighbour like yourself, says *the Gospel*.

So *the law* of God requires.

[9.] Is your sister at home ?

Does your brother improve in the French tongue ?

Is your sister sick ?

[10.] You and I are good friends.

She and I went together to the Park.

My brother and I go to the play this evening.

*He* and my brother are partners.

*She* and her sister learn French.

[11.] She told *me*, that she had written to *him*.

Do not fall violently upon *them*.

I gave *him* the book which you sent *me*.

I shall tell *him*.

Have you promised *him* ?

I have not promised *her*.

When will you send to *him* ?

Give *me*.

Bring *me*.

Forgive *him*.

Speak to *her*.

*He* has promised it to *me*.

Do not confide in *him*.

You may confide in *me*.

This book is *mine*.

This thimble is not *yours*.

N'a-t-elle pas été à la campagne ?

Brode-t-elle ?

Aimez votre prochain comme vous-même, dit l'évangile.

Ainsi le veut la loi de Dieu.

Votre sœur est-elle au logis ?

Votre frère fait-il des progrès dans le François ?

Votre sœur est-elle malade ?

Vous et moi nous sommes bons amis.

Elle et moi nous allâmes ensemble au Parc.

Mon frère et moi nous allons ce soir à la comédie.

Lui et mon frère sont associés.

Elle et sa sœur apprennent le François.

Elle m'a dit qu'elle lui avoit écrit.

Ne leur faites pas de violence.

Je lui ai donné le livre que vous m'avez envoyé.

Je lui dirai.

Lui avez-vous promis.

Je ne lui ai pas promis.

Quand lui enverrez-vous ?

Donnez-moi.

Apportez-moi.

Pardonnez-lui.

Parlez-lui.

C'est à moi qu'il l'a promis.

Ne vous fiez pas à lui.

Vous pouvez vous fier à moi.

Ce livre est à moi.

Ce dé n'est pas à vous.

|                                                                   |                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Do not think of <i>him</i> any more.                              | Ne songez plus à <i>lui</i> .                                        |
| I am speaking to <i>him</i> , and not to <i>you</i> .             | Je parle à <i>lui</i> , et non pas à <i>vous</i> .                   |
| You gave <i>it to me</i> .                                        | Vous <i>me</i> l'avez donné.                                         |
| [12.] Will you give <i>it to him</i> ?                            | Le <i>lui</i> donnerez-vous?                                         |
| There are fine oranges; will you sell <i>them to her</i> ?        | Voilà de belles oranges; <i>les lui</i> vendrez-vous?                |
| Show <i>me</i> your letter; when will you send <i>it to her</i> ? | Montrez- <i>moi</i> votre lettre; quand <i>la lui</i> enverrez-vous? |
| There is a fine book; I gave <i>it to her</i> .                   | Voilà un beau livre; je <i>le lui</i> ai donné.                      |
| When will you give <i>it to us</i> ?                              | Quand <i>nous le</i> donnerez-vous?                                  |
| You had promised <i>it to me</i> .                                | Vous <i>me</i> l'aviez promis.                                       |
| Give <i>it to him</i> .                                           | Donnez- <i>le-lui</i> .                                              |
| Bring <i>it to me</i> .                                           | Apportez- <i>le-moi</i> .                                            |
| Show <i>it to her</i> .                                           | Montrez- <i>le-lui</i> .                                             |
| [13.] Will you carry <i>some to them thither</i> ?                | <i>Leur y en</i> porterez-vous?                                      |
| I have sent <i>some to them thither</i> .                         | Je <i>leur y en</i> ai envoyé.                                       |
| I shall send <i>some to you thither</i> .                         | Je <i>vous y en</i> enverrai.                                        |
| When did you send <i>some to him thither</i> ?                    | Quand <i>lui y en</i> avez-vous envoyé?                              |
| Why have you not carried <i>some to her thither</i> ?             | Pourquoi ne <i>lui y en</i> avez-vous pas porté?                     |
| Carry <i>me thither</i> .                                         | Menez- <i>y-moi</i> .                                                |
| Give <i>me some</i> .                                             | Donnez- <i>m'en</i> .                                                |
| Do not carry <i>me thither</i> .                                  | Ne <i>m'y</i> menez pas.                                             |
| [14.] What o'clock is <i>it</i> ?                                 | Quelle heure est- <i>il</i> ?                                        |
| <i>It</i> is two o'clock.                                         | <i>Il</i> est deux heures.                                           |
| <i>It</i> is a quarter after two.                                 | <i>Il</i> est deux heures et un quart.                               |
| <i>It</i> is half an hour after two.                              | <i>Il</i> est deux heures et demie.                                  |
| <i>It</i> is three quarters after two.                            | <i>Il</i> est trois heures moins un quart.                           |
| <i>It</i> is very fine weather.                                   | <i>Il</i> fait fort beau temps.                                      |
| <i>It</i> is gloomy.                                              | <i>Il</i> fait sombre.                                               |
| <i>It</i> is rainy weather.                                       | <i>Il</i> fait un temps pluvieux.                                    |

*It is time to rise.*

*It is hot ; it is cold.*

*It is my book.*

*It is my handkerchief.*

*It is a fine house.*

*They are your pens.*

*They are young ladies.*

*It is a pity.*

*They are strange people.*

*It is enough.*

*It is not too much.*

*It was without design.*

*It is in spite of him.*

[15.] *He is a doctor.*

*He is a goldsmith.*

*He is a learned man.*

*They are idle.*

*He is a merchant.*

*They are Englishmen,  
Frenchmen.*

[16.] *He loves me, and has  
a regard for me.*

*I have taken it, and kept it.*

*I know her, and see her very  
often.*

*He esteems and honours you.*

*I saw and spoke to her.*

[17.] *They say and affirm  
that . . .*

*You have seen and will al-  
ways see.*

*He made his theme ; but he  
did not read his rules.*

*She speaks to him, though  
she does not like him.*

*Il est temps de se lever.*

*Il fait chaud ; il fait froid.*

*C'est mon livre.*

*C'est mon mouchoir.*

*C'est une belle maison.*

*Ce sont vos plumes.*

*Ce sont de jeunes demoiselles.*

*C'est dommage.*

*Ce sont d'étranges gens.*

*C'est assez.*

*Ce n'est pas trop.*

*Ce fut sans dessein.*

*C'est malgré lui.*

*Il est docteur, ou c'est un  
docteur.*

*Il est orfèvre, ou c'est un  
orfèvre.*

*Il est savant, ou c'est un sa-  
vant homme.*

*Ils sont paresseux, ou ce sont  
des paresseux.*

*Il est négociant, ou c'est un  
négociant.*

*Ils sont Anglois, François,  
ou ce sont des Anglois,  
des François.*

*Il m'aime, et me considère.*

*Je l'ai pris, et l'ai gardé.*

*Je la connois, et la vois très-  
souvent.*

*Il vous estime et vous honore.*

*Je l'ai vue et lui ai parlé.*

*On dit et on assure que . . .*

*Vous avez vu et vous verrez  
toujours.*

*Il a fait son thème : mais il  
n'a pas lu ses règles.*

*Elle lui parle, cependant elle  
ne l'aime pas.*



[18.] Is it your sister? Yes,  
it is.

Are they your books? They  
are.

[19.] Self-love blinds us;  
it is the cause of the  
greatest part of our mis-  
fortunes.

Those flowers want water;  
give *them* some.

My coat has a hole, put a  
patch *on it*.

[20.] I saw a fine garden;  
*it* is enamelled with a  
thousand fine flowers.

These shoes are too narrow;  
*they* hurt me.

[21.] Do you know where  
the Exchange is? He lives  
opposite to *it*.

Give me my book; I can-  
not do without *it*.

[22.] A wise man is master  
of *himself*.

We make our own happi-  
ness.

A wise man mistrusts *him-  
self*.

She is too much conceited  
of *herself*.

We ought not to flatter *our-  
selves*.

He loves only *himself*.

Falsehood is odious in *itself*.

The loadstone attracts iron.

A man ought not to speak  
of *himself*, but with great  
modesty.

That man speaks of nobody  
but *himself*.

Est-ce votre sœur? Oui,  
c'est *elle*.

Sont-ce vos livres? ce *les*  
sont.

L'amour propre nous aveu-  
gle; c'est *lui* qui est la  
cause de la plupart de  
nos malheurs.

Voilà des fleurs qui ont be-  
soin d'eau; donnez-*leur*-  
en.

Mon habit est troué, cousez-  
*y* une pièce.

J'ai vu un beau jardin; *il*  
est émaillé de mille belles  
fleurs.

Ces souliers sont trop étroits;  
*ils* me blessent.

Savez-vous où est la Bourse?  
Il demeure *vis-à-vis*.

Donnez-moi mon livre; je  
ne puis m'*en* passer.

Le sage est maître de *soi*.

On fait sa félicité *soi-même*.

Le sage se méfie de *lui-  
même*.

Elle a trop bonne opinion  
d'*elle-même*.

On ne doit pas se flatter *soi-  
même*.

*Il* n'aime que *lui-même*.

La fausseté est odieuse en  
*elle-même*.

L'aimant attire le fer *à soi*.

On ne doit parler de *soi*  
qu'avec beaucoup de mo-  
destie.

Cet homme ne parle que de  
*lui-même*.

|                                          |                                             |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| I will do it <i>myself</i> .             | Je le veux faire <i>moi-même</i> .          |
| She relies too much on <i>her-self</i> . | Elle se fie trop à <i>elle-même</i> .       |
| They betray <i>themselves</i> .          | Ils se trahissent <i>eux-mêmes</i> .        |
| You hurt nobody but <i>yourself</i> .    | Vous ne faites tort qu'à <i>vous-même</i> . |

## SECTION II.

*Possessive Pronouns.*

1. The conjunctive possessive pronouns come always before the nouns to which they are joined: as, it is my snuff-box; *c'est ma tabatière*. In this case, *mon*, *ton*, *son*, are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, for the sweetness of sound: as, my sword; *mon épée*: thy soul; *ton âme*: his friendship; *son amitié*. Absolute possessive pronouns are put after the noun with the definite article, *le*, *la*, *les*; as, *le mien*, *la mienne*.

2. When *sake* signifies *amour* in French, the English possessive pronoun is to be rendered in French by the disjunctive personal pronoun: as, for your sake; *pour l'amour de vous*, and not *pour votre amour*.

3. When the verb *être* signifies *to belong to*, the English possessive pronoun is rendered in French by the disjunctive personal pronoun: as, that house is *mine*; *cette maison est à moi*, and not *est la mienne*. But, when the particle *ce* is joined to the verb *être*, the possessive pronoun is commonly used; as, this is my house; *c'est ma maison*: it is his book, and not yours; *c'est son livre*, et *mon pas le vôtre*.

4. The gender of possessive pronouns does not follow that of the person who speaks, or is spoken of, but agrees with the particular gender of every noun it is joined to: as, *her father is dead*; *son père est mort*.

5. The possessive conjunctive pronoun is always repeated before a substantive, and after a conjunction; as, my brothers and sisters; *mes frères et mes sœurs*: his father and mother; *son père et sa mère*.

6. *Le mien*, *le tien*, *le sien*, &c. in the masculine gender and singular number, sometimes signify a person's

due: as, we must give every one his due; *il faut rendre à chacun le sien*. In the plural number and masculine gender they sometimes signify relations: as, your relations and his; *les vôtres et les siens*.

7. *His, it's, their, &c.*, are commonly rendered in French, by *son, sa, ses, leurs*: as, plants have their properties: *les plantes ont leurs propriétés*. But when *it's* or *their* belongs to a substantive preceding, it is commonly rendered in French by the supplying pronoun *en*: as, these plants are good, I know their qualities; *ces plantes sont bonnes, j'en connois les qualités*. This happens when the pronouns may be resolved into the substantive to which it relates, as in the foregoing example: these plants are good, I know the qualities of these plants.

8. The conjunctive possessive pronoun, with the particle *de* before it, is used instead of the absolute possessive pronoun on all such occasions as the following: an acquaintance of his: *une de ses connoissances*: a friend of mine; *un de mes amis*.

9. The conjunctive possessive pronoun is used when we call or answer friends, relations, &c.; as, come, daughter, *venez, ma fille*: yes brother; *oui, mon frère*.

10. Obs. Conjunctive possessive pronouns, coming, in English, after some verbs not signifying a distemper, are resolved into the conjunctive personal pronoun; and, instead of the possessive pronoun, we put the definite article; as, I have pared my nails: *je me suis rogné les ongles*: he has cut my hair; *il m'a coupé les cheveux*.

11. Obs. Generally, when in a sentence a noun or a personal pronoun sufficiently denotes what thing it is you are speaking of, the possessive pronoun is omitted as useless, and resolved to the definite article: as, I have a pain in my teeth, in my stomach, in my head, in my eyes, &c.; *j'ai mal aux dents, à l'estomac, à la tête, aux yeux, &c.* However, when a pain or distemper continues for some time upon us, we may say, speaking to a person acquainted with it, *ma jambe ne guérit pas*; my legs does not heal: *ma toux me fatigue beaucoup*; my cough teases me very much. This may likewise happen in a few other instances. Generally, the last two rules take place, when there is a sort of equivocation or amphibology.

*Possessive Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

- [1.] *My house is larger than his.* *Ma maison est plus grande que la sienne.*
- Have you seen my garden?* *Avez-vous vu mon jardin?*
- Come and see my flowers.* *Venez voir mes fleurs.*
- Where is your book?* *Où est votre livre?*
- Show me your books.* *Montrez-moi vos livres.*
- Lend me your penknife.* *Prêtez-moi votre canif.*
- Our school-fellows are playing in the street.* *Nos compagnons d'école jouent dans la rue.*
- Her apron is quite black.* *Son tablier est tout noir.*
- Her fan is broken.* *Son éventail est rompu.*
- Give me my shoes, my stockings, my handkerchief, my shirt, and my hat.* *Donnez-moi mes souliers, mes bas, mon mouchoir, ma chemise, et mon chapeau.*
- Your stockings have holes in them.* *Vos bas sont troués.*
- What is become of his pens?* *Que sont devenues ses plumes?*
- How does your sister do?* *Comment se porte votre sœur?*
- You have my needle.* *Vous avez mon aiguille.*
- Is that your hat?* *Est-ce là votre chapeau?*
- I know your sentiments; and you are no stranger to mine.* *Je connois vos sentimens; et vous n'ignorez pas les miens.*
- The Thames got out of it's channel.* *La Tamise est sortie de son lit.*
- [2.] *Do it for my sake.* *Faites-le pour l'amour de moi.*
- I will do it for your sake.* *Je le ferai pour l'amour de vous.*
- For her sake.* *Pour l'amour d'elle.*
- For his sake.* *Pour l'amour de lui.*
- [3.] *This pen is not yours; it is mine.* *Cette plume n'est pas à vous; elle est à moi.*
- Whose book is this? It is not mine; it is his, or hers.* *A qui est ce livre? Il n'est pas à moi; il est à lui, ou à elle.*
- It is your knife, and not his.* *C'est votre couteau, et non pas le sien.*



Is this *your* needle?

It is *my* paper and not  
*yours*.

[4.] It is my opinion and  
*her's*.

It is *his* brother.

It is *his* sister.

The horse broke his bridle  
and halter.

My horse carries *his* head  
well.

Your horse has lost *his* shoes.

[5.] *My* father and mother  
are sick.

*His* brother and sister are in  
the country.

*Your* brother and *my* cousin  
are very good friends.

*Her* mother and aunt are  
against it.

[7.] Put *your* books in *their*  
places again.

*Their* reasons are bad.

I saw the fireplace of *his*  
chamber; *it's* mantle-piece  
is of marble.

You have bought an elbow-  
chair; *it's* arms are too  
high.

*Your* stick is not conveni-  
ent; *it's* end is too sharp.

He has bought a sword; *it's*  
hilt is of silver.

Have you read *my* book? Is  
not the type very beauti-  
ful.

He ordered *his* country-  
house to be rebuilt? *it's*  
rooms and *it's* situation  
are fine.

There is a very large gar-

Certe aiguille est-elle à *vous*?

Ce papier est à *moi*, et non  
pas à *vous*.

*C'est mon* sentiment et *le*  
*sien*.

*C'est son* frère.

*C'est sa* sœur.

Le cheval a rompu *sa* bride  
et *son* licou.

Mon cheval porte bien *sa*  
tête.

Votre cheval a perdu *ses* fers.

*Mon* père et *ma* mère sont  
malades.

*Son* frère et *sa* sœur sont  
à la campagne.

*Votre* frère et *mon* cousin  
sont très-bons amis.

*Sa* mère et *sa* tante s'y op-  
posent.

Remettez *vos* livres à *leurs*  
places.

*Leurs* raisons sont mauvaises.

J'ai vu la cheminée de *sa*  
chambre; le manteau *en*  
est de marbre.

Vous avez acheté un fau-  
teuil; les bras *en* sont  
trop hauts.

*Votre* bâton n'est pas com-  
mode; le bout *en* est trop  
pointu.

Il a acheté une épée; la gar-  
de *en* est d'argent.

Avez-vous lu *mon* livre? Le  
caractère n'*en* est-il pas  
bien beau?

Il a fait rebâtir *sa* maison  
de campagne; les cham-  
bres et la situation *en* sont  
belles.

Il y a un très-grand jardin

den behind *his* house ;  
the trees *of it* are very  
well planted, *their* fruit  
is excellent.

Where did you buy this  
book ? the binding is very  
good.

Every state has *it's* advan-  
tages, and *it's* troubles.

He is satisfied with *his* situ-  
ation ; he knows all *it's*  
pleasures.

The art of war has *it's* dan-  
gers.

He is not satisfied with *his*  
situation ; he sees all *it's*  
dangers.

It is a small house, which  
has *it's* conveniences.

That tree spreads *it's* branches  
very far.

[9.] Brother, lend me *your*  
pen.

Sister, I cannot ; I am writ-  
ing *my* theme.

[10.] He got *his* hair cut.

You split *my* head.

He fell from *his* horse, and  
broke *his* leg.

They have cut off *his* leg.

He cannot walk out ; the  
gout has swelled *his* feet.

Wash *your* hands, mouth,  
and face.

I pricked my finger with my  
needle.

[11.] He only grins.

He waited on the lady to  
her coach.

derrière *sa* maison ; les  
arbres *en* sont très-bien  
plantés, les fruits *en* sont  
excellens.

Où avez-vous acheté ce li-  
vre ? La reliure *en* est  
très-bonne.

Chaque état a *ses* agrémens  
et *ses* peines.

Il se plaît dans *sa* situation :  
il *en* connoît tous les  
plaisirs.

L'art de la guerre a *ses* dan-  
gers.

Il ne se plaît pas dans *sa*  
situation ; il *en* voit tous  
les dangers.

C'est une petite maison, qui  
a *ses* commodités.

Voilà un arbre qui étend *ses*  
branches très-loin.

*Mon* frère, prêtez-moi *votre*  
plume.

Je ne puis, *ma* sœur ; j'écris  
*mon* thème.

Il s'est fait couper *les* che-  
veux.

Vous *me* fendez *la* tête.

Il tomba de cheval, et *se*  
cassa *la* cuisse.

On *lui* a coupé *la* jambe.

Il ne peut sortir ; la goutte  
*lui* a enflé *les* pieds.

Lavez-*vous* *les* mains, *la*  
bouche, et *le* visage.

Je *me* suis piqué *le* doigt  
avec mon aiguille.

Il ne rit que du bout *des*  
lèvres, ou *des* dents.

Il donna *la* main à la dame  
et la conduisit à son car-  
rosse.

## FRENCH TONGUE.

Why do you not speak? Are you dumb?      Pourquoi ne parlez-vous pas? Avez-vous perdu *la* parole?

He cannot stand upon *his* legs.      Il ne peut se tenir sur *ses* jambes.

She gave me *her* word for it.      Elle m'en donna *sa* parole.

She gave him *her* hand to kiss.      Elle lui donna *sa* main à baiser.

He stands on tiptoe.      Il se tient sur le bout *des* pieds.

He gave *his* arm to the surgeon, who was to bleed him.      Il donna *son* bras au chirurgien, qui devoit le saigner.

The patient lost all *his* blood.      Le malade perdit tout *son* sang.

He raised *his* voice.      Il éleva *la* voix.

She stretched out *her* arms.      Elle étendit *ses* bras, ou *les* bras.

He makes a shift to live by hard labour.      Il vit du travail de *ses* mains.

You have hurt *my* foot.      Vous m'avez fait mal *au* pied.

You hurt *my* finger.      Vous me faites mal *au* doigt.

Have you never had the toothach? No: but I have very often a pain in *my* stomach.      N'avez-vous jamais eu mal *aux* dents? Non: mais j'ai fort souvent mal à *l'estomac*.

I am sick.      J'ai mal *au* cœur.

*His* mind is undisturbed.      Il a *l'esprit* en repos, ou *son* esprit est en repos.

*Her* mind is agitated with a thousand fears.      Elle a *l'esprit* agité de mille craintes; ou *son* esprit est agité de mille craintes.

*My* finger is not yet healed.      *Mon* doigt n'est pas encore guéri.

## SECTION III.

*Demonstrative Pronouns.*

1. *Ce* or *cet*, *cette*, and *ces*, are joined to and go before a substantive; as, this book, this man, this pen, these houses; *ce livre*, *cet homme*, *cette plume*, *ces maisons*. *Celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, ought to be followed by a second case: as, he of you, *celui de vous*; or the relative pronoun *qui*, or *que*: as, he who loves, *celui qui aime*; he whom you love, *celui que vous aimez*.

2. *Ce* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant; but if the noun begin with a vowel, or an *h* mute, *cet* must be used. *Ce* is likewise used before *qui* or *que*: in this case it is said of inanimate things only, and signifies *what* or *the things which*; as, *ce que vous cherchez n'est pas ici*; what you look for is not here, or, the thing you look for is not here.

3. Obs. The particles *ci* and *là*\* are sometimes joined by a hyphen to a substantive; as this man, that woman, *cet homme-ci*, *cette femme-là*. They are likewise joined in the same manner to the demonstrative pronouns.

4. *He who*, *he that*, *she who*, *they who*, *such as*, &c. in the sense of *that*, even governed of the verb substantive *to be*, are rendered in French by *celui qui*, *celle qui*, *ceux qui*, which are never separated.

5. Obs. *He who*, *be that*, &c., whether they be separated in English or not, are sometimes elegantly rendered in French by the impersonal *c'est*, or *c'est ne pas*, according as the sentence is affirmative or negative, with an infinitive followed by *que de* before a second infinitive; as, *He who trusts to empty men's promises is ignorant of the human heart*. *C'est ne pas connaître le cœur humain que de se fier aux vaines promesses des hommes*.

I say *sometimes*, because, first, if one of the English verbs be in the future tense, it is by no means to be used. Secondly, there are many cases, in which it is never used; as, *they were punished who did it*, *ceux qui l'ont fait ont été punis*; to put the two verbs in the infinitive mood would be nonsense,

\* *Ci* denotes an object near, and *là* at a distance.



6. Oas. *Ce qui, ce que*, what, beginning a sentence of two parts, is commonly followed by a substantive; as, what I am saying to you is the truth; *ce que je vous dis, c'est la vérité*. Sometimes the verb *être* is followed by the preposition *de* with an infinitive; as, what grieves him, is not to have succeeded; *ce qui le fâche, c'est de n'avoir pas réussi*. Sometimes by *que*, if it come before another mood; as, *ce qui le fâche, c'est qu'il n'a pas réussi*. *Ce qui* is used before neuter verbs; as, *ce qui me plaît*, what pleases me; and before active verbs, when it is the nominative of the verb. In other cases *ce que* is used.

7. Oas. 7. *Ce* is not repeated in the before-mentioned case before an adjective, or past participle; as, what I am saying to you is true, *ce que je vous dis est vrai*.

8. Oas. *Ceci, this, cela, that*, are sometimes relative to a single noun; as *donnez-moi ceci, ou cela*, give me *this* or *that*, speaking of any single thing whatever. Sometimes they are not relative to a single noun, but to an entire action: in this case *cela* generally signifies the action before spoken of; as, we often speak ill of absent people, *which* is base; *on parle souvent mal des absens, cela est indigne*. *Ceci* generally signifies the action which is going to be mentioned; as, this is like to surprise you, a man died a hundred and ten years old; *ceci va vous surprendre, un homme qui mourut âgé de cent dix ans*.

### *Demonstrative Pronouns, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1.] Show me *that* book.  
Give me *that* pen.

*These* houses are very fine.  
*These* ladies have a great deal of wit.

[2.] *That* man is very fantastical.

*That* child is very amiable.  
Do you know what has happened to him [or her]?

Has she shown you *what* was given to her?

You will never guess *what* was said of you.

Guess *what* they are about.

Montrez-moi *ce* livre.

Donnez-moi *cette* plume.

*Ces* maisons sont très-belles.

*Ces* dames sont très-spirituelles.

*Cet* homme est très-fantastique.

*Cet* enfant est très-aimable.

Savez-vous *ce qui* lui est arrivé?

Vous a-t-elle montré *ce qu'*on lui a donné?

Vous ne devinerez jamais *ce qu'*on a dit de vous.

Devinez *ce qu'*ils font,

I know *what* you say.

I know *what* makes you  
angry.

He does not know *what* you  
have written.

[3.] *That* man makes him-  
self beloved by every  
body.

*These* people are in the  
right.

*Those* women are very ca-  
pricious.

*That* man is in the wrong.

*Those* apples are good for  
nothing.

Give me some of *those* pears.

[4.] *He who* betrays his  
friend is unworthy of  
friendship.

*They who* despise learning  
do not know the value  
of it.

*He who* shuns company is a  
stranger to the charms of  
society.

*She who* loves nobody does  
not taste the pleasures of  
friendship.

*Such* as are enemies to vir-  
tue, are straglers to it.

*Such* as are idle, do not  
know the value of time.

[5.] *They who* are con-  
tented with their lot are  
happy.

*He who* does not study will  
never be learned.

*He who* did it was pu-  
nished.

Je sais *ce que* vous dites.

Je sais *ce qui* vous fâche.

Il ne sait pas *ce que* vous  
avez écrit.

*Cet* homme-*là* se fait aimer  
de tout le monde.

*Ces* gens-*ci* ont raison.

*Ces* femmes-*là* sont très-ca-  
pricieuses.

*Cet* homme-*là* a tort.

*Ces* pommes-*là* ne valent  
rien.

Donnez-moi de *ces* poires-*là*.

*Celui qui* trahit son ami est  
indigne d'amitié.

*Ceux qui* méprisent la scien-  
ce, n'en connoissent pas  
le prix.

*Celui qui* évite la compagnie,  
ne connoît pas les charmes  
de la société.

*Celle qui* n'aime personne,  
ne goûte pas les plaisirs  
de l'amitié.

*Ceux qui* sont ennemis de la  
vertu, ne la connoissent  
pas.

*Ceux qui* sont paresseux, ne  
connoissent pas le prix du  
temps.

*Ceux qui* sont contents de  
leur sort, sont heureux.

*Celui qui* n'étudie pas, ne  
sera jamais savant.

*Celui qui* a fait cela a été  
puni.

*They who* have written their themes have been rewarded.

*They who* seem to be happy are not always so.

We should ever remember the cares of *those, by whom* we were brought up.

We ought to encourage the endeavours of *those, who* apply themselves to the arts and sciences.

[6.] *What* makes him angry is her bad humour.

*What* an honest man ought to bewail is the loss of time.

*What* grieves him is not to have succeeded.

*What* rejoices me is to have seen you and your family in good health.

[7.] *What* I say to you is true.

*What* she said to you is false.

*What* you have told me is surprising.

[8.] Does *this* please you?

Does *that* make you angry?

*That* surprises me.

What do you think of *it*?

I never thought of *that*.

Keep *this*, and give me *that*.

Did you write *that*?

I do not like *that*.

*That* is wonderful.

*Ceux qui* ont fait leurs thèmes ont été récompensés.

*Ceux qui* paroissent être heureux, ne le sont pas toujours.

Nous devrions toujours nous souvenir des soins de *ceux* par *qui* nous avons été élevés.

On doit encourager les efforts de *ceux qui* s'appliquent aux arts et aux sciences.

*Ce qui* le fâche, c'est sa mauvaise humeur.

*Ce qu'*un honnête homme doit regretter, c'est la perte du temps.

*Ce qui* le fâche, c'est de n'avoir pas réussi, ou c'est qu'il n'a pas réussi.

*Ce qui* me réjouit, c'est de vous avoir vu, vous et toute votre famille, en bonne santé.

*Ce que* je vous dis est vrai.

*Ce qu'*elle vous a dit est faux.

*Ce que* vous m'avez dit est surprenant.

*Ceci* vous plaît-il?

*Cela* vous fâche-t-il?

*Cela* me surprend.

Que pensez-vous de *cela*?

Je n'ai jamais pensé à *cela*.

Gardez *ceci* et donnez-moi *celui*.

Avez-vous écrit *cela*?

Je n'aime pas *cela*.

*Cela* est admirable.

## SECTION IV.

*Relative Pronouns.*

1. The relative pronoun *qui* is the nominative, and *que* the accusative, in speaking of all sorts of objects; as, the stone which is here, *la pierre qui est ici*; the house that you see, *la maison que vous voyez*.

Except that *qui* is used in the accusative case instead of *que*, when it signifies that person; as, *je sais qui vous aimez*, I know whom you love, or what person you love; and when it is governed by a preposition; as, *en qui*, *sur qui*, *avec qui*, &c. In the last case, *lequel*, &c. may likewise be used.

2. When *qui* is in the second case, or comes after any preposition whatever, it is applied only to persons, or objects used as persons; and therefore it would be a fault to say, *c'est la maison de qui je vous ai parlé*, it is the house of which I have spoken to you. In this case we make use of *duquel*, *de laquelle*, &c. or *dont*, which is used equally for all objects, and often more properly than *de qui*, or *duquel*, *de laquelle*, &c.; as, *c'est la maison dont je vous ai parlé*.

3. *A qui* is sometimes used in speaking of animate objects, though they are not persons, or objects used as persons; but as we can never err by making use of *quel*, *à laquelle*, &c., I would advise the learner to do so.

4. The relative pronoun, though not expressed in English, must always be expressed in French; as, the man you see, *l'homme que vous voyez*; the book you speak of, *le livre dont vous parlez*.

5. *Lequel*, *laquelle*, &c., are to be used instead of *qui*, 1st, when *qui* is equivocal: 2dly, when the relative pronoun is in the second case after a substantive; as, a courier has been sent to court, at whose return . . . *on a envoyé un courrier à la cour, au retour duquel* . . . 3dly,



when the relative pronoun expresses a choice; as, which will you see? *lequel, or laquelle, voulez-vous voir?*

6. Speaking of things, *in which, in what, to which, at which, at what*, in the sense of *where, wherein, or when*, are rendered in French by *où* instead of *dans lequel, laquelle, &c.*: as, the house *in which*, or *where* he lives, *la maison où il demeure*; the end *at which* he aims, *le but où il tend*; the century *in which* he lived, *le siècle où il vivoit*. *From which, from what*, are rendered by *d'où* instead of *duquel, de laquelle, &c.*: as, the country *from which* I come, *le pays d'où je viens*. *Through which, by which*, are rendered by *par où, or par lequel, &c.*

7. The relative pronoun *quoi* is used only in speaking of inanimate objects.

*A quoi* must always be used when it has for it's antecedent *ce* and the verb *être*, or *rien*, and is followed by a noun, or verb governing the third case; as, it is to that I apply myself, *c'est à quoi je m'applique*; there is nothing, to which I am not disposed, *il n'y a rien à quoi je ne sois disposé*.

8. *De quoi* is used when it follows immediately *ce* and the verb *être*, and is followed by a noun, or a verb governing the second case; as, it is that I complain of, *c'est de quoi je me plains*. But after *rien* we make use of *dont*; at least it is a great deal better; as, there is nothing in the world of which God is not the author, *il n'y a rien au monde dont Dieu ne soit l'auteur*.

9. Obs. *Quoi* may likewise be used instead of *lequel, laquelle, &c.* after a preposition governing it, such as, *sur, en, après, avec, &c.*; as, the reason I rely upon, *la raison sur quoi je me fonde*.

However, in most circumstances, *auquel, duquel, sur lequel, &c.*, may, and even must be used; but these practice alone can teach.

10. Obs. *Que* is used instead of *de qui* and *à qui*. It happens not only when the second or third case of a personal pronoun comes immediately before it, but likewise after any other noun, when the sentence begins with *ce* and *être*: as, it is to you that I speak, *c'est à vous que je parle*; it is to happiness that I aspire, *c'est au bonheur que*

*j'aspire* : it is from the public, that I expect approbation, *c'est du public que j'attends l'approbation.*

The true rule for distinguishing this is when *que* has the signification of the conjunction *that*, nor of *which*, as you may see by the foregoing examples: by this rule there is no danger of being mistaken. Hence it may appear, that in such cases *que* is to be looked upon as conjunction, rather than a relative pronoun.

### *Relative Pronouns, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

- |                                                                           |                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| [1.] It is the Lady <i>who</i> spoke to you.                              | C'est la Dame <i>qui</i> vous a parlé.                                    |
| Speak to this Gentleman <i>who</i> is here.                               | Parlez à ce M <sup>onsieur</sup> <i>qui</i> est ici.                      |
| Is this the new hat <i>which</i> you bought?                              | Est-ce là le chapeau neuf <i>que</i> vous avez acheté?                    |
| The book <i>which</i> you lent me is very well written.                   | Le livre <i>que</i> vous m'avez prêté est très-bien écrit.                |
| I know <i>whom</i> you mean.                                              | Je sais <i>qui</i> vous voulez dire.                                      |
| You do not know <i>who</i> it is.                                         | Vous ne savez pas <i>qui</i> c'est.                                       |
| Do you know <i>whom</i> I love?                                           | Savez-vous <i>qui</i> j'aime?                                             |
| I know <i>whom</i> she loves.                                             | Je sais <i>qui</i> elle aime.                                             |
| [2.] He is a friend <i>in whom</i> I put my confidence.                   | C'est un ami <i>en qui</i> je mets ma confiance.                          |
| He is a person <i>to whom</i> you may confide.                            | C'est une personne <i>à qui</i> on peut se fier.                          |
| She is a Lady <i>against whom</i> nothing can be said with truth.         | C'est une Demoiselle <i>contre qui</i> on ne peut mal parler avec vérité. |
| I know the person <i>to whom</i> you were talking.                        | Je connois la personne <i>avec qui</i> vous avez parlé.                   |
| It is the man <i>of whom</i> I spoke to you.                              | C'est l'homme <i>de qui</i> , ou <i>dont</i> je vous ai parlé.            |
| [3.] The dog of which they have cut the ears.                             | Le chien <i>à qui</i> , ou <i>auquel</i> on a coupé les oreilles.         |
| There is a bird <i>to which</i> it is necessary to give something to eat. | Voilà un oiseau <i>à qui</i> , ou <i>auquel</i> il faut donner à manger.  |
| [4.] It is the horse he spoke to you about.                               | C'est le cheval <i>duquel</i> , ou <i>dont</i> il vous a parlé.           |
| [5.] She is a woman <i>in</i>                                             | C'est une femme <i>sur la con-</i>                                        |

*whose* behaviur there is nothing to censure.

He is a merchant whose honour and probity cannot be doubted.

[6.] The circumstances you are in.

The danger he is in.

The end she aims at.

The house *where* she lives.

He has the same frame of mind and the same sentiments, *which* he has always had.

I know the place *whence* you come.

These are the reasons *from which* I conclude.

These are his discourses *by which* he insinuates.

This is the city *through which* I have passed.

I know the means *by which* he has gained his point.

[7.] It is *what* I am thinking about.

It was *what* he applied himself to.

It was *what* she exhorted him to.

I will think *about it*.

There is nothing *in which* I am not ready to oblige you.

[8.] That is the matter in question.

It is *what* he complains of.

It is *what* I am sorry for.

There is nothing I am more sorry for.

There is nothing he complains of more.

*de laquelle* il n'y a rien à redire.

C'est un négociant sur l'honneur et la probité *duquel* il ne peut y avoir de doute.

Les circonstances *où* vous êtes.

Le danger *où* il se trouve.

Le but *où* elle vise.

La maison *où* elle demeure.

Il est dans la même disposition d'esprit, et dans les mêmes sentimens, *où* il a toujours été.

Je sais la place *d'où* vous venez.

Voilà les raisons *d'où* je conclus.

Voilà ses discours *par où* il insinue.

Voilà la ville *par où* j'ai passé.

Je sais les moyens *par où* il parvint à ses fins.

C'est *à quoi* je pense.

C'étoit *à quoi* il s'appliquoit.

C'étoit *à quoi* elle l'exhortoit.

C'est *à quoi* je penserai.

Il n'y a rien *à quoi* je ne sois disposé pour vous obliger.

Voilà *de quoi* il s'agit.

C'est *de quoi* il se plaint.

C'est *de quoi* je suis fâché.

Il n'y a rien *dont* je sois plus fâché.

Il n'y a rien *dont* il se plaigne davantage.

- There is nothing *that* he is not capable of. Il n'y a rien *dont* il ne soit capable.
- [9.] I do not see *upon what* his discourse is grounded. Je ne vois pas *sur quoi* son discours peut être fondé.
- It is *what* you may rely on. C'est *sur quoi* vous pouvez compter.
- It is an argument *to which* there is no answer. C'est un raisonnement *auquel* il n'y a point de réponse.
- Death is an evil *for which* there is no remedy. La mort est un mal *auquel* il n'y a point de remède.
- Idleness is a vice *to which* young people are much inclined. La paresse est un vice *auquel* les jeunes gens sont très-enclins.
- This is the reason *upon which* I am grounded. C'est la raison *sur laquelle* je me fonde.
- It is the happiness *to which* I aspire. C'est le bonheur *après lequel* j'aspire.
- These are the reasons *by which* I convinced him. Ce sont les raisons *avec lesquelles* je l'ai convaincu.
- [10.] It is to you *that* I shall speak. C'est à vous *que* je parlerai.
- It is to her *that* I had promised it. C'est à elle *que* je l'avois promis.
- It is from his friend *that* he has received so many favours. C'est de son ami *qu'il* a reçu tant d'amitiés.
- It is his brother *that* he complains of. C'est de son frère *qu'il* se plaint.
- It was by my friend *that* I was betrayed. Ce fut par mon ami *que* je fus trahi.
- It is to continual study *that* your brother owes his great learning. C'est à une étude continuelle *que* votre frère doit ses grandes connoissances.
- It is to my sister *that* you have given it. C'est à ma sœur *que* vous l'avez donné.
- It is to her *that* you have spoken. C'est à elle *que* vous avez parlé.
- It is from her *that* I expect that favour. C'est d'elle *que* j'attends cette grâce.



|                                                                     |                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| It is to trade <i>that</i> he applies himself.                      | C'est au commerce qu'il s'applique.                      |
| It is to the protection of friends <i>that</i> he owes his fortune. | C'est à la protection de ses amis qu'il doit sa fortune. |
| It is by the public <i>that</i> he is approved.                     | C'est du public qu'il est approuvé.                      |

## SECTION V.

*Interrogatory Pronouns.*

1. *Que*, as interrogative, is applied only to things, and *qui* only to persons; as, what do you say? *que dites-vous?* for whom are you looking? *qui cherchez-vous?* Both are used in all their cases as above.

2. *Quoi*, interrogative, is used after a preposition; as, upon what are you grounded? *sur quoi vous fondez-vous?* about what do you busy yourself? *de quoi vous mêlez-vous?*

3. If *quoi* be not immediately followed by a verb, it may sometimes be used in the first case; as, what is there greater? *quoi de plus grand?* It sometimes expresses only an emotion of the mind; as, *how!* you are angry! *quoi! vous êtes fâché!*

4. *Quel, quelle, &c.*, are said of persons and things. It is to be observed, that *quel* is always followed by it's substantive; as, what man is it? *quel homme est-ce?* Except when the noun was expressed before; as, this is my opinion; what is yours? *voilà mon sentiment; quel est le vôtre?*

5. *Lequel, &c.*, is also said of persons and things; it is always followed by a genitive expressed or understood; as, which of the two will you have? *lequel des deux voulez-vous?* *Quel* answers to *what*: *lequel*, to *which*.

6. *Whose*, signifying *to whom* a thing belongs, is translated into French by the dative, *à qui*; as, *whose* house is that? *à qui est cette maison?*

*Interrogatory Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

|                                             |                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| [1.] <i>What</i> do you say ?               | <i>Que</i> * dites-vous ?                                    |
| <i>What</i> do you want ?                   | <i>Que</i> souhaitez-vous ?                                  |
| <i>What</i> do you ask for ?                | <i>Que</i> demandez-vous ?                                   |
| <i>What</i> do you fear ?                   | <i>Que</i> craignez-vous ?                                   |
| <i>What</i> is the matter ?                 | <i>Qu'est-ce que c'est ?</i> or <i>Qu'est-ce qu'il y a ?</i> |
| <i>What</i> shall we do ?                   | <i>Que</i> ferons-nous ?                                     |
| For <i>whom</i> are you looking ?           | <i>Qui</i> † cherchez-vous ?                                 |
| <i>Who</i> has done that ?                  | <i>Qui</i> a fait cela ?                                     |
| <i>Who</i> spoke to you ?                   | <i>Qui est-ce qui</i> vous a parlé ?                         |
| <i>Whom</i> do you suspect ?                | <i>Qui est-ce que</i> vous soupconnez ?                      |
| From <i>whom</i> have you that news ?       | <i>De qui</i> tenez-vous cette nouvelle ?                    |
| <i>Who</i> is come ?                        | <i>Qui est-ce qui</i> est venu ?                             |
| To <i>whom</i> do you give the preference ? | <i>A qui</i> donnez-vous la préférence ?                     |
| [2.] <i>Why</i> do you concern yourself ?   | <i>De quoi</i> vous mêlez-vous ?                             |
| Of <i>what</i> does she complain ?          | <i>De quoi</i> se plaint-elle ?                              |
| <i>What</i> is the matter ?                 | <i>De quoi</i> s'agit-il ?                                   |
| <i>Why</i> so much ado ?                    | <i>A quoi</i> bon tant de façons ?                           |
| To <i>what</i> do you apply yourself ?      | <i>A quoi</i> vous appliquez-vous ?                          |
| <i>How</i> do you spend your time ?         | <i>A quoi</i> passez-vous le temps ?                         |
| <i>What</i> can she expect ?                | <i>A quoi</i> peut-elle s'attendre ?                         |
| Of <i>what</i> is he talking ?              | <i>De quoi</i> parle-t-il ?                                  |
| For <i>what</i> is she so angry ?           | <i>De quoi</i> est-elle si fâchée ?                          |

\* Observe here, that instead of *que*, we often make use of *qu'est-ce que*. In this case the personal pronoun comes before the verb.

† Instead of *qui*, in this and similar interrogation, it is equally proper to use *qui est-ce qui* in the nominative, and *qui est-ce que* in the accusative; in this case the personal pronoun is put before the verb.

- Of what* are they so jealous ? *De quoi* sont-ils si jaloux ?  
*To what* do you impute the fault ? *A quoi* attribuez-vous la faute ?  
*How* shall we spend our time ? *A quoi* nous amuserons-nous ?
- [3.] *What* is there more glorious than to die for our country ? *Quoi* de plus glorieux que de mourir pour notre patrie ?  
*How!* would you deceive me ? *Quoi!* voudriez-vous me tromper ?  
 [4.] *What* man spoke to you ? *Quel* homme vous a parlé ?  
*What* woman have you seen ? *Quelle* femme avez-vous vue ?  
*What* lace has she bought ? *Quelle* dentelle a-t-elle achetée ?  
*What* books have you read ? *Quels* livres avez-vous lus ?  
*What* sort of shirts does he wear ? *Quelles* chemises porte-t-il ?
- This is my opinion ; *what* is his ? *Voilà* mon opinion ; *quelle* est la sienne ?  
 This is your advice ; *what* is hers ? *Voilà* votre avis ; *quel* est le sien ?  
 It was her sentiment ; *what* was yours ? *C'étoit* son sentiment ; *quel* étoit le vôtre ?  
*What* grammar do you read ? *Quelle* grammaire lisez-vous ?
- [5.] Of all the grammars which have been printed, to *which* do you give the preference ? *De toutes* les grammaires qui ont été imprimées, *à laquelle* donnez-vous la préférence ?  
 There are apples and pears ; *which* do you like best ? *Voilà* des pommes et des poires ; *lesquelles* aimez-vous le mieux ?  
*Which* of these two oranges will you have ? *Laquelle* de ces deux oranges voulez-vous ?  
*Which* of these two ladies do you think the handsomest ? *Laquelle* de ces deux dames trouvez-vous la plus belle ?  
*Which* of all the grammarians has written most clearly and precisely ? *Lequel* de tous les grammairiens a écrit le plus clairement, et avec le plus de précision ?

|                                                                       |                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Which</i> of the books you have read do you think the most useful? | Des livres que vous avez lus, lesquels trouvez-vous les plus utiles? |
| [6.] <i>Whose</i> penknife is this?                                   | <i>A</i> qui est ce canif?                                           |
| <i>Whose</i> pen is this?                                             | <i>A</i> qui est cette plume?                                        |
| <i>Whose</i> hat is this?                                             | <i>A</i> qui est ce chapeau?                                         |
| <i>Whose</i> garden is this?                                          | <i>A</i> qui est ce jardin?                                          |

## SECTION IV.

*Indefinite or Indeterminate Pronouns.*

1. *Pas un, aucun, nul*, are three negative pronouns, having the signification of no person or nothing, and require the particle *ne* before the verb; as: nobody spoke of it; *aucun*, or *pas un*, or *nul n'en a parlé*; nobody knows it; *aucun*, or *pas un*, or *nul ne le sait*.

*Nul* is never used in an interrogation; for we do not say, *nul ne le sait-il*?

2. OBS. *Aucun* is sometimes used without a negation, in phrases of interrogation or doubt. In such a case it may be rendered by *quelqu'un*; as: of all those who know my reasons, is there any one who has blamed me? *de tous ceux qui savent mes raisons, y en a-t-il aucun qui m'ait blâmé*?

3. OBS. When *aucun* and *nul* are followed by a second case, or a substantive either expressed or understood, they must be in the same gender as that second case or substantive, but not in the same number; as: none of them has been there, *aucun d'eux*, speaking of men, or *aucune d'elles*, speaking of women, *n'y a été*. These three pronouns, used as pronouns, have no plural.

4. *Nul* and *aucun* are sometimes to be looked upon as adjectives: this happens when they are joined to a substantive; as, he yields to no reason, *il ne se rend à aucune raison*: she has no pleasure, *elle n'a aucun plaisir*. *Nul* may likewise be used, but *aucun* in such a case is far better.

5. OBS. *Nul* is also a law term signifying void; in such a case it has a plural, if the noun be in the plural; as: the proceedings are void, *les procédures sont nulles*.

6. *Chacun*, each, signifies every person or thing, has no plural, is indifferently applied to persons and things,



and follows the gender of the noun to which it is joined, or relates ; as, each of these two women has seen it, *chacune de ces deux femmes l'a vu.*

Obs. If the noun be a collective one, and cannot be divided by one or two, *chacun* is put in the masculine gender, though the collective noun be feminine ; as: the Commons withdrew, each of them to their own home ; *les communes se retirèrent, chacun chez soi.*

N. B. Custom does not allow us to say *un chacun*, instead of *chacun*.

7. *Personne* signifies nobody, has no plural, is always of the masculine gender, and is attended by the particle *ne* before the verb ; as, nobody saw it, *personne ne l'a vu.*

8. Obs. When *personne* signifies any body, and is not preceded by an adverb of denial ; such as ; not, never, &c., the particle *ne* must be omitted ; as, did ever any body find the philosopher's stone ? *personne a-t-il jamais trouvé la pierre philosophale ?* This way of speaking insinuates, that you do not believe the thing concerning which you inquire. Take care not to confound this pronoun with the noun substantive ; a person, *une personne*, the person, *la personne*, which is always feminine.

9. *Tout* has many significations ; it sometimes signifies, all, every, or the whole. When it is joined to a substantive, it requires the definite article before the following noun, notwithstanding its having before it *de* or *à* ; as, the whole house ; *toute la maison* ; of the whole house, *de toute la maison* ; to the whole house, *à toute la maison.*

10. The pronoun *tout*, used by itself, is always put in the masculine singular ; as : almost every thing is uncertain in this world : *presque tout est incertain dans le monde.* Sometimes it has the signification of *chaque* ; as : every day, *tous les jours* ; every moment, *à tout moment*, &c. But we say, *à chaque instant*, *à chaque minute*, every instant, every minute.

11. Obs. *Tout* sometimes signifies although, followed by a word denoting the quality, office, dignity, trade, calling, circumstance, &c., of the subject ; in such a case, the word denoting such quality, &c., which is placed after the verb in English, must be placed in French immediately after *tout*, and must be followed by *que* ; as : though he

is learned, he mistakes sometimes, *tout savant qu'il est, il se trompe quelquefois*. When *tout* is rendered by *bien que*, or *quoique*, the verb must be put in the subjunctive mood; as, *bien que*, or *quoiqu'il soit, savant, &c.*

12. OBS. When the word that comes after the verb does not denote the quality of the subject, then, *notwithstanding*, or *although* must be rendered in French by *bien que*, or *quoique*; as, although you make use of this physician, *bien que*, or *quoique vous vous serviez de ce médecin*.

13. OBS. *Tout*, in the sense of *although*, is indeclinable, except before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant.

14. OBS. *Tout* sometimes signifies quite, entirely; as, she is in every respect lovely; *elle est tout aimable*. In this sense it is likewise declinable only before a noun feminine beginning with a consonant.

15. OBS. When *rien* signifies nothing, or not any thing, the particle *ne* must be placed before the verb; as, I have seen nothing prettier, *je n'ai rien vu de plus beau*.

But when it signifies any thing, and is not preceded by an adverb of denial, the particle *ne* is omitted; as, have you ever seen any thing so beautiful? *avez-vous jamais rien vu de si beau?*

16. *Plusieurs* signifies *many* or *several*. It is always plural; as several have believed, that the world was eternal, *plusieurs ont cru le monde éternel*. It is sometimes an adjective; as, many friends, *plusieurs amis*. It is declined with the indefinite articles *de* and *à*.

17. OBS. *Autre*, other, is sometimes an adjective; as, another book, *un autre livre*: sometimes a substantive, when it is preceded by *en*, to which it has relation; as, *j'en connais un autre*, I know another: sometimes a pronoun; as, another than you, *un autre que vous*.—*Autrui* our neighbour, others, or other people, is more commonly used in the second and third cases; as, of others, to others, *d'autrui, à autrui*.—*Ni l'un ni l'autre*, neither the one nor the other, will have the verb in the plural, whether it come after or before; as, neither the one nor the other knows the reason of it, *ni l'un ni l'autre, n'en savent la raison*; *ils n'en savent la raison ni l'un ni l'autre*.—*L'un l'autre*, one the other, one another, is used to express the mutual action of two objects on each other, and consequently it is always reciprocal; as, they love one another, *ils s'aiment l'un l'autre*. The first is always in the first case.—*L'un et l'autre*, the one and the other, or both, has a different meaning: it signifies the union of two objects already mentioned; as, both are in the wrong; *ils ont tort l'un et l'autre* or *l'un et l'autre ont tort*; it always governs the plural. Both of these two words are declined with the definite article.

Take notice, that *l'un l'autre* comes always after the verb; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, and *l'un et l'autre*, in the first case, go indifferently before or after, with this difference, that, when they are put after, the personal pronoun goes always before the verb, though not expressed in English; and, when they are before the verb, the personal pronoun is omitted, though expressed in English; as, they are both in the wrong, or both are in the wrong; *ils ont tort l'un et l'autre*, or *l'un et l'autre ont tort*.

18. *Quelque*, some, signifies in the singular, that the object is taken indeterminately: as, he is always reading some good book, *il lit toujours quelque bon livre*. In the plural, it expresses an indeterminate number of objects; as, he is addicted to some vices, *il est adonné à quelques vices*.

19. Obs. Sometimes *quelque* signifies not the indeterminate number, but the indeterminate quality or quantity of things, and answers the English expressions, *whatever, although, though, ever so much, &c.*: as, although they are learned, *quelque savans qu'ils soient*. *Quelque*, taken in this sense, has no plural before adjectives, unless they are immediately followed by their substantive; as, though they seem ever so rich, *quelque riches qu'ils paroissent*; though he has performed ever so good actions, *quelques belles actions qu'il ait faites*. Hence it appears, how much an author is mistaken, who says that, *quelque* can never come before an adjective except with *être*.

Observe, that *quelque* in this case is always followed by *que*, or *qui*, which governs the following verb in the subjunctive mood.

20. Obs. *Quel que*, whatever, is followed immediately by a verb in the subjunctive mood. It must be separated into two words, and then *quel* has both numbers and genders, and *que* is not repeated in the following part of the sentence; as, whatever his intentions appear, *quelles que paroissent ses intentions*; whatever I am, *quel que je sois*; whatever they may be, (speaking of women) *quelles qu'elles puissent être*.

21. *Quelqu'un*, in the sense of somebody, or any body, is used in all its cases in the singular masculine only; as, somebody has told it to me, *quelqu'un me l'a dit*. I know it from somebody, *je le sais de quelqu'un*; I have given it to somebody, *je l'ai donné à quelqu'un*. However, *quelques-uns* is used as the nominative of the verb; as, some persons have said it, *quelques-uns l'ont dit*. In the other cases we make use of *quelques personnes*, and not *quelques-uns*.

22. *Quelqu'un* sometimes signifies an indeterminate part of a number, and is then joined with the second case of

some other noun expressed, or sufficiently understood; or with the particle *en* instead of the second case; in this sense *quelqu'un* is used in all the genders, numbers, and cases; as, has any of these gentlemen heard any thing of it? *quelqu'un*, or *quelques-uns de ces Messieurs en auroit-il*, or *auroient-ils entendu parler?* Those are fine flowers, give me some; *voilà de belles fleurs, donnez-m'en quelques-unes.*

23. OBS. When *whatever* has no relation either to an adjective or a substantive, it must be rendered by *quoi que*, *tout ce qui*, *tout ce que*; as, whatever happens, *quoi qu'il arrive*; whatever you please, *tout ce qu'il vous plaira*—*Qui que* is used only in the first case, whereas *tout ce qui*, *tout ce que*, are used in all their cases. Observe, that *qui que ce soit* (whatever it may be) is likewise used in all its cases; as, of whatever he may speak, *de quoi que ce soit qu'il parle*; to whatever he may apply himself, *à quoi que ce soit qu'il s'applique*: this last pronoun, when followed by a verb, requires that verb in the subjunctive mood with *que* before it, as may be seen by the foregoing example.

*Qui que ce soit*, in a sentence with the particle *ne* before the verb, signifies *nothing at all*, or *nothing whatever*: as he talks of nothing whatever; *il ne parle de quoi que ce soit.*

14. OBS. *Qui que ce soit*, whoever, or whatever person, is used in all it's cases; as, from whomever he may have learned it, *de qui que ce soit qu'il l'ait appris*; to whomever he may address himself, *à qui que ce soit qu'il s'adresse*. When this pronoun belongs to a sentence wherein *ne* precedes the verb, it stands for nobody whatever; as, I shall speak of it to nobody whatever, *je n'en parlerai à qui que ce soit*. Hence it appears, that *quoi que ce soit* is used for things only, and *qui que ce soit* for persons.

Observe, that instead of *qui que ce soit que*, in the sense of whoever, or whatever person, it is often more elegant to use only *qui que*; as, whomever you may see, *qui que vous voyez*, except before the pronouns *il*, *ils*, to avoid the hard sound *qu'il*.

25. OBS. *Qui que ce soit*, in the sense of *quiconque*, whoever, or whatever person, must always be followed by *il*, *elle*, &c., or *qui*, and sometimes by both: as: whoever it may be, he will be discovered, *qui que ce soit, il sera découvert*: whoever deceives me shall be discovered, *qui que ce soit qui me trompe, il sera découvert*: but after *quiconque* *il* and *qui* are omitted; as, *quiconque me tramera, sera découvert*, and not *il sera*, &c.

26. *Même* is sometimes an adjective; as, the same author, *le même auteur*: sometimes it answers to *self* in English; as, myself, *moi-même*: in these two senses it



has a plural \*: sometimes it answers to *even* in English; as, *even* this book, *ce livre même*.

27. *Je ne sais qui*, I do not know who, is used in all its cases in the singular only for persons. *Je ne sais quoi*, I do not know what, is used in all its cases for things only in the singular. *Je ne sais quel* is used in all its numbers, cases, and genders, speaking of persons or things, and is always followed by a substantive.

28. They, people, men, we, &c., are sometimes rendered by *on*; as, they, or people, talk; *on parle*: may I know? *peut-on savoir?*

Sometimes *on* signifies *it*: in this case the verb, which is in English in the passive voice, must be changed in French into the active; as, it is hoped, *on espère*; it was said, *on disoit*. Farther, as the passive voice is seldom used in French, in such a case the noun, or pronoun, which is the object of the passive verb in English, must be made the object of the verb in French, and the passive verb must be changed into the active, and put into the same tense as in English: as, great rejoicings have been made this week; *on a fait cette semaine de grandes réjouissances*, instead of *de grandes réjouissances ont été faites*.

### *Indeterminate Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

|                                           |                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| [1.] Nobody spoke to him.                 | <i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne lui a parlé.</i>                        |
| Nobody knows it.                          | <i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne le sait.</i>                            |
| Nobody has seen it.                       | <i>Aucun, pas un, ou nul ne l'a vu.</i>                             |
| Nobody can boast of it.                   | <i>Aucun pas un, ou nul ne peut s'en vanter.</i>                    |
| Of all the grammars I am a slave to none. | <i>De toutes les grammaires, je ne m'attache à aucune.</i>          |
| I never saw any of them.                  | <i>Je n'en ai jamais vu un, ou aucun, and not nul.</i>              |
| Did you ever see any one, who . . . ?     | <i>En avez-vous jamais vu un, ou aucun qui . . . ? and not nul.</i> |

\* See rule 22, of the personal pronouns, at the end of page 170.

- [2.] Is there *any one*, who can blame me? Y en a-t-il *aucun* qui puisse me blâmer?
- Is there *any one*, who has seen it? Y en a-t-il *aucun* qui l'ait vu?
- [3.] I have not read *any* of the books you lent me. Je n'ai lu *aucun* des livres que vous m'avez prêtés.
- I did not see *any* of the ladies you spoke of. Je n'ai vu *aucune* des Dames dont vous avez parlé.
- I knew *none* of those merchants. Je ne connois *aucun* de ces commerçans.
- I saw *none* of them. Je n'ai vu *aucun* d'eux, *for the masculine: aucune d'elles, for the feminine.*
- [4.] He has *no* rest. Il n'a *nul* repos—*aucun* repos.
- She has *no* uneasiness of mind. Elle n'a *nulle*, ou *aucune* inquiétude d'esprit.
- I have *no* interest in it. Je n'ai *nul*, ou *aucun* intérêt en cela.
- [5.] The sentence was annulled. La sentence fut déclarée *nulle*.
- All their privileges are annulled. Tous leurs privilèges sont *nuls*.
- [6.] *Every one* lives after his own manner. *Chacun* vit à sa mode.
- All men* are faulty. *Chacun* fait des fautes.
- All men* desire to be happy. *Chacun* veut être heureux.
- Every one* of them was surprised. *Chacun* d'eux fut surpris, *for the masculine: chacune d'elles fut surprise, for the feminine.*
- I know two ladies; they have, *each of them* two thousand pounds a year. Je connois deux demoiselles: elles ont *chacune* deux mille livres sterling de rente.
- The two clerks have, *each of them*, written four letters. Les deux commis ont écrit *chacun* quatre lettres.
- The commons withdrew, *each of them* to his own home. Les Communes se retirèrent *chacun* chez soi.

*Each* of the shires sends two representatives to Parliament.

Put the books in order, and put *every one* into its place.

[7.] *Nobody* talks of it.

*Nobody* has seen you.

*Nobody* has guessed the meaning of the riddle.

*Nobody* knows it.

*Nobody* suspected her.

She told it to *nobody*.

He mistrusts *nobody*.

She trusts *nobody*.

[8.] Did ever *any body* know all the properties of matter?

Did ever *any body* seriously doubt of the existence of God?

Did ever *any man* comprehend the mysteries of religion?

[9. 10.] *All* is lost.

*All* is quiet now.

*Every thing* in nature is liable to change.

He mistrusts *every thing*.

She is frightened at *every shadow*.

He is capable of *every thing*.

Can a man be sure of *every thing*?

I am disposed for *any thing* you please.

He is fit for *any thing*.

They are against *every thing*.

I see her, and speak to her *every day*.

She goes to the play almost *every evening*,

Les provinces envoient *chacune* deux députés au Parlement.

Arrangez les livres, et les mettez *chacun* à sa place.

*Personne* n'en parle.

*Personne* ne vous a vu.

*Personne* n'a deviné l'énigme.

*Personne* ne sait.

*Personne* ne la soupçonnoit.

Elle ne l'a dit à *personne*.

Il ne se méfie de *personne*.

Elle ne se fie à *personne*.

*Personne* a-t-il jamais connu toutes les propriétés de la matière?

*Personne* a-t-il jamais douté sérieusement de l'existence de Dieu?

*Personne* a-t-il jamais compris les mystères de la religion?

*Tout* est perdu.

*Tout* est tranquille à présent.

*Tout* dans la nature est sujet au changement.

Il se méfie de *tout*.

Elle est épouvantée de *tout*.

Il est capable de *tout*.

Peut-on être sûr de *tout*?

Je suis prêt à *tout* ce qu'il vous plaira.

Il est propre à *tout*.

Ils s'opposent à *tout*.

Je la vois, et lui parle *tous* les jours.

Elle va à la comédie presque *tous* les soirs.

- He flies into a passion *every* moment. Il s'emporte à *tout* moment.
- [11, 12.] *Though* he is rich, he is not the more contented. *Tout* riche qu'il est, ou *quoi*-qu'il soit riche, il n'en est pas plus content.
- Although* he seems angry, he is not really so. *Tout* fâché qu'il paroît, ou *quoiqu'*il paroisse fâché, il ne l'est pas.
- [13, 14.] She was *quite* frightened. Elle fut *tout* épouvantée.
- She lives *wholly* in retirement. Elle vit *toute* retirée.
- [15.] I saw *nothing* more extraordinary. Je n'ai *rien* vu de plus extraordinaire.
- He applies himself to *nothing*. Il ne s'applique à *rien*.
- Nothing* is more surprising. *Rien* n'est plus surprenant.
- I do not suspect you of *any* thing. Je ne vous soupçonne de *rien*.
- Is there any thing more wonderful? Y a-t-il *rien* de plus admirable?
- I doubt whether *any* thing be more useful. Je doute que *rien* soit plus utile.
- [16.] *Many* are not of your opinion. *Plusieurs* ne sont pas de votre opinion.
- Many* are of this opinion. *Plusieurs* sont de ce sentiment.
- It is the lot of *many*. C'est le partage de *plusieurs*.
- It is the voice of *many*. C'est le défaut de *plusieurs*.
- She told it to *many*. Elle l'a dit à *plusieurs*.
- [17.] Have you read the book? will you have *another*? Avez-vous lu le livre? en voulez-vous *un autre*?
- If you do not like that pen, I will give you *another*. Si vous n'aimez pas cette plume, je vous en donnerai *une autre*.
- Another* would be more grateful. *Un autre* seroit plus reconnoissant.
- Another* would have married him. *Une autre* l'auroit épousé.
- Anotder* would have been deceived. *Un autre* auroit été trompé.



I gave it to *another*.  
I know *neither of them*.

*Neither of them* spoke to him.

*Neither of them* studies.

They hate *one another*.  
We know *one another*.

They cheat *one another*.  
They mistrust *one another*.  
It is uncommon for two authors to speak well of *one another*.

We trust *one another*.

You wrong *one another*.

Let us not hurt *one another*.

*Each of them* is good.  
*Both* are bad.  
*Both* shall be punished.

*Each of them* shall be rewarded.  
I do not care for *either*.

She complains of *both*.

He has been cheated by *both*.

I confide in *both*.

Give to *both*.

She speaks to *both*.

[18.] I have received *some* money.

He has fallen into *some* errors.

Je l'ai donné à *un autre*.  
Je ne connois ni *l'un* ni *l'autre*.

Ni *l'un* ni *l'autre* ne lui ont parlé, ou, ils ne lui ont parlé, ni *l'un* ni *l'autre*.

Ni *l'un* ni *l'autre* n'étudient; ou, ils n'étudient ni *l'un* ni *l'autre*.

Ils se haïssent *l'un l'autre*.  
Nous nous connoissons *l'un l'autre*.

Ils se trompent *l'un l'autre*.  
Il se méfient *l'un de l'autre*.  
Il est rare que deux auteurs disent du bien *l'un de l'autre*.

Nous nous fions *l'un à l'autre*.

Vous vous faites du tort *l'un à l'autre*.

Ne nous nuisons pas *l'un à l'autre*.

*L'un et l'autre* sont bons.  
*L'un et l'autre* sont mauvais.  
Ils seront punis *l'un et l'autre*.

Ils seront récompensés *l'un et l'autre*.

Je ne me soucie ni de *l'un* ni de *l'autre*.

Elle se plaint de *l'un et de l'autre*.

Il a été trompé par *l'un et par l'autre*.

Je me fie à *l'un et à l'autre*.

Donnez à *l'un et à l'autre*.

Elle parle à *l'un et à l'autre*.

J'ai reçu *quelque* argent.

Il est tombé dans *quelques* erreurs.

You are mistaken by *some* shillings.

Apply yourself to *some* useful work.

[19.] *Though* you pretend to be ever so bold.

*Though* he be ever so rich, he is very covetous.

*Whatever* happy talents a man may have, he ought to cultivate them.

*However* far I may be from you, I shall not forget you.

*However* rich you saw them, they are now very poor.

*However* cunning they appear, they are sometimes deceived.

*Though* they pretend to *ever so much* honesty, they sometimes cheat.

*Whatever* friends he may have, he will never succeed.

*Whatever* small rewards you may give him, he will be grateful for them.

*Whatever* riches you have.

[20.] Send me some news *whatever* it may be.

He shall be punished *whoever* he may be.

*Whoever* you may be, they will render you justice.

*Whatever* his sister may be, I will never marry her.

*Whatever* her sisters may be, they are not so lovely as she is.

Vous vous trompez de *quelques* schellings.

Occupez-vous à *quelque* ouvrage utile.

*Quelque* hardi *que* vous affectiez d'être.

*Quelque* riche *qu'il* soit, il est fort avare.

*Quelques* heureux talens *qu'un* homme puisse avoir, il faut *qu'il* les cultive.

*Quelque* éloigné *que* je sois de vous, je ne vous oublierai pas.

*Quelque* riches *que* vous les ayez vus, ils sont à présent fort pauvres.

*Quelque* rusés *qu'ils* paroissent, ils sont quelquefois trompés.

*Quelque* honnêtes *qu'ils* prétendent être, ils trompent quelquefois.

*Quelques* amis *qu'il* ait, il ne réussira jamais.

*Quelques* petites récompenses *que* vous lui donniez, il en sera reconnoissant.

*Quelques* richesses *que* vous ayez.

Envoyez-moi des nouvelles, *quelques* *qu'elles* soient.

Il sera puni, *quel* *qu'il* soit.

*Quel* *que* vous soyez, on vous rendra justice.

*Quelle* *que* soit sa sœur, je ne l'épouserai jamais.

*Quelles* *que* soient ses sœurs, elles ne sont pas si aimables *qu'elle*.

*Whatever* these conditions may be, I will never submit to them.

*Whatever* these goods are, send them to me.

Do not rely upon the promises of men, *whatever* they may be.

He will not hear of any accommodation, *whatever* it may be.

I do not care for him, *whoever* he is.

[21.] *Is any body* come?

*Somebody* told it you.

Did *any body* speak to him (or to her?)

Did you see *any body* there?

She knows it from *some body*.

He took it from *somebody*.

She mistrusts *somebody*.

Give this to *somebody*.

They spoke to *somebody*.

He wrote to *somebody*.

*Some people* say.

*Some* believe.

I have this news from *some persons*.

I told this news to *somebody*.

[22.] *Some* of the prisoners made their escape.

I know it from *some* of those who were present.

He has given bread to *some* of those who were in need of it.

*Some* of the robbers have been taken.

*Some* of them will be hanged.

*Quelles que* soient ces conditions, je ne m'y soumettrai jamais.

*Quelles que* soient ces marchandises, envoyez-les-moi.

Ne vous fiez pas aux promesses des hommes, *quelles qu'elles* soient.

Il ne veut entendre parler d'aucun accommodement, *quel qu'il* puisse être.

Je ne me soucie pas de lui, *quel qu'il* soit.

*Quelqu'un* est-il venu.

*Quelqu'un* vous l'a dit.

*Quelqu'un* lui a-t-il parlé?

Y avez-vous vu *quelqu'un*?

Elle le sait de *quelqu'un*.

Il l'a pris de *quelqu'un*.

Elle se méfie de *quelqu'un*.

Donnez cela à *quelqu'un*.

Ils ont parlé à *quelqu'un*.

Il a écrit à *quelqu'un*.

*Quelques-uns* disent.

*Quelques-uns* croient.

Je tiens cette nouvelle de *quelques personnes*.

J'ai dit cette nouvelle à *quelques personnes*.

*Quelques-uns* des prisonniers se sont évadés.

Je le sais de *quelques-uns* de ceux qui étoient présents.

Il a donné du pain à *quelques-uns* de ceux qui en avoient besoin.

*Quelques-uns* des voleurs ont été pris.

*Quelques-uns* d'eux seront pendus.

Do you know *any* of those ladies?

know *some* of them.

Will you have *any* of these oranges?

Give me *some*.

Buy *some* of those apples.

Will you taste *any* of them?

[26.] *Whatever* may happen, he is always the same.

*Whatever* you say, it shall be so.

*Whatever* he may undertake he will never succeed.

I know *every thing* he is able to do.

Do *whatever* you please.

I do not care for *whatever* he may do.

Take *whatever* you like best.

I am ready for *whatever* you please.

She applies herself to *every thing*, that may be useful to her.

*Any thing* he writes to you, tell it me.

Do not talk of *any thing*.

He succeeds in *whatever* he applies himself to.

[24.] They will tell him the same thing, to *whomever* he may address himself.

He does not care for *any person whatever*.

I saw *nobody* at all.

He knows *nobody*.

Connoissez-vous *quelques-unes* de ces Dames?

J'en connois *quelques-unes*.

Voulez-vous *quelques-unes* de ces oranges?

Donnez-m'en *quelques-unes*.

Achetez *quelques-unes* de ces pommes.

En voulez-vous goûter *quelques-unes*?

*Quoi* qu'il puisse arriver, il est toujours le même.

*Quoi* que vous disiez, il en sera ainsi.

*Quoi* qu'il puisse entreprendre, il ne réussira jamais.

Je sais *tout* ce qu'il peut faire.

Faites *tout* ce que vous voudrez.

Je ne me soucie pas de *tout* ce qu'il peut faire.

Prenez *tout* ce que vous aimez le mieux.

Je suis prêt à *tout* ce que vous voudrez.

Elle s'applique à *tout* ce qui peut lui être utile.

*Qui* que ce soit qu'il vous écrive, dites-le-moi.

Ne parlez de *quoi* que ce soit.

Il réussit à *quoi* que ce soit qu'il s'applique.

On lui dira la même chose, à *qui* que ce soit qu'il s'adresse.

Il ne se soucie de *qui* que ce soit.

Je n'ai vu *qui* que ce soit.

Il ne connaît *qui* que ce soit.



I spoke to *nobody whatever*.

Do not talk to *any body*.

*Whoever* we may be, it is nothing to you.

To *whomever* you may speak, do not mention that affair.

*Whoever* you may be, I do not fear you.

[25.] *Whoever* he is that speaks to you, give him an answer.

*Whoever* he is, he is in the wrong.

*Whoever* speaks English shall be fined.

*Whoever* does not learn his lesson, shall be marked.

[26.] *The same* author has written other books.

I shall speak to him *or* to her, *myself*.

Write your letter *yourself*.

They wrong *themselves*.

[28.] *People* say, *people* talk, *people* believe, *people* fancy, *people* do not know, &c.

May I know, &c.

Has *any one* spoken to you?

May I ask you?

Has *any one* seen you?

May *we* go along this street?

May *we* see the Queen's apartments?

*It is* said, *it is* reported, *it is* asserted, *it is* doubted, *it has been* proposed, *it has been* resolved, &c.

The letters *have not yet been* received.

Je n'ai parlé à *qui que ce soit*.

Ne parlez à *qui que ce soit*.

*Qui que* nous soyons, peu vous importe.

A *qui que* vous parliez, ne dites rien de cette affaire.

*Qui que* vous soyez, je ne vous crains pas.

*Qui que ce soit* qui vous parle, répondez-lui.

*Qui que ce soit*, il a tort.

*Quiconque* parlera Anglois, sera mis à l'amende.

*Quiconque* ne saura pas sa leçon, sera marqué.

*Le même* auteur a fait d'autres livres.

Je lui parlerai *moi-même*.

Ecrivez votre lettre *vous-même*.

Ils se font tort à *eux-mêmes*.

*On* dit, *on* parle, *on* croit, *on* s'imagine, *on* ne sait pas, &c.

Peut-*on* savoir?

Vous-a-t-*on* parlé?

Peut-*on* vous demander?

Vous-a-t-*on* vu?

Peut-*on* passer par cette rue?

Peut-*on* voir les appartemens de la Reine?

*On* dit, *on* rapporte, *on* assure, *on* doute, *on* a proposé, *on* a résolu, &c.

*On n'a pas encore* reçu les lettres.

|                                                                              |                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Great preparations <i>have been</i> made for the reception of . . . .        | <i>On a fait de grands préparatifs pour la réception de . . . .</i>                         |
| Great rejoicings <i>were</i> made at St. James's on the Queen's birthday.    | <i>On a fait de grandes réjouissances à St. James, le jour de la naissance de la Reine.</i> |
| Great news <i>was</i> received by the last mail.                             | <i>On a reçu de grandes nouvelles par l'ordinaire dernier.</i>                              |
| A courier <i>has been</i> dispatched to the French court.                    | <i>On a dépêché un courrier à la cour de France.</i>                                        |
| <i>It is</i> believed, that war <i>will be</i> declared against France.      | <i>On croit qu'on déclarera la guerre à la France.</i>                                      |
| <i>It was</i> said so, but contrary news <i>has been</i> received this week. | <i>On le disoit, mais on a reçu des nouvelles contraires cette semaine-ci.</i>              |

## SECTION VII.

*Supplying Pronouns, le, en, y.*

1. *It, or so, is sometimes rendered by le; as, give it to me, donnez-le-moi; I will give it to you, je vous le donnerai; I think so, je le crois.*

In some instances the English *for le* is not expressed.

2. *Of, from, with, by, about, &c., him, her, it, them, some, any, &c., and thence, by en; as, do not speak of it to me; ne m'en parlez pas.*

3. *To it, there, therein, in it, in them, about it, about them, &c., by y; as, I will not be against it, je ne m'y opposerai pas.* These pronouns are called *supplying*, because they stand not only for one preceding word, but sometimes for whole sentences, and are chiefly used instead of the pronouns, *lui, elle; eux, elles.*

4. *Le and en* are applied either to persons or things, and *y* to things only; except in a few instances, and in an answer to a question; as, Do you think of me; Yes, I do. *Pensez-vous à moi? Oui, j'y pense.*

5. *Le* put after *ce*, when we speak of things, is declinable ; as, Are these your horses ? Yes, they are : *Sont-ce là vos chevaux ? Oui, ce les sont.* I say when we speak of things ; because, when we speak of persons, we make use of the personal pronouns ; as, Are these your brothers ? Yes, they are : *Sont-ce là vos frères ? Oui, ce sont eux,* and not *ce les sont.*

It is the opinion of several, that *le* is declinable after an adjective in the feminine singular only, in the following and similar expressions spoken by women ; I was frightened, and I am so still ; *je fus effrayée et la suis encore* : of others, that it would be more proper to say, *et je le suis encore.* *Vaugelas*, the Abbé Girard, *Restaut*, the FRENCH ACADEMY, &c., are for the latter ; so that there can be no doubt.

*Supplying Pronouns exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

|                                                 |                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| [1.] Will you give <i>it</i> him [or her] ?     | <i>Le lui donnerez-vous ?</i>                            |
| Have you given <i>it</i> him [or her] ?         | <i>Le lui avez-vous donné ?</i>                          |
| I have promised <i>it</i> him [or her].         | <i>Je le lui ai promis.</i>                              |
| I have not promised <i>it</i> him [or her].     | <i>Je ne le lui ai pas promis.</i>                       |
| Have you sent <i>it</i> to them ?               | <i>Le leur avez-vous envoyé ?</i>                        |
| I have not sent <i>it</i> to them.              | <i>Je ne le leur ai pas envoyé.</i>                      |
| Have you told <i>it</i> him [or her] ?          | <i>Le lui avez-vous dit ?</i>                            |
| I have not told <i>it</i> him [or her].         | <i>Je ne le lui ai pas dit.</i>                          |
| Do not tell <i>it</i> him [or her].             | <i>Ne le lui dites pas.</i>                              |
| Do you know <i>it</i> ?                         | <i>Le savez-vous ?</i>                                   |
| She does know <i>it</i> .                       | <i>Elle ne le sait pas.</i>                              |
| I do not know <i>it</i> .                       | <i>Je ne le sais pas.</i>                                |
| He told me something, will you know <i>it</i> ? | <i>Il m'a dit quelque chose, le voulez-vous savoir ?</i> |
| Ask him, I will not tell <i>it</i> you.         | <i>Demandez-le-lui, je ne veux pas vous le dire.</i>     |

|                                                          |                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Why will you not tell <i>it</i> me ?                     | Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas me <i>le</i> dire ? |
| Because he forbade me.                                   | Parce qu'il me l'a défendu.                     |
| Tell <i>it</i> me.                                       | Dites- <i>le</i> -moi.                          |
| I will never tell <i>it</i> you.                         | Je ne vous <i>le</i> dirai jamais.              |
| Do you believe <i>it</i> ?                               | <i>Le</i> croyez-vous ?                         |
| I do not believe <i>it</i> .                             | Je ne <i>le</i> crois pas.                      |
| She believes <i>it</i> .                                 | Elle <i>le</i> croit.                           |
| [2.] Give me <i>some</i> .                               | Donnez-m' <i>en</i> .                           |
| Do not give him [ <i>or her</i> ] <i>any</i> .           | Ne lui <i>en</i> donnez pas                     |
| Will you give him [ <i>or her</i> ] <i>any</i> ?         | Lui <i>en</i> donnerez-vous ?                   |
| Do not speak <i>of it</i> to him [ <i>or to her</i> ].   | Ne lui <i>en</i> parlez pas.                    |
| Did you speak <i>of it</i> to him [ <i>or to her</i> ] ? | Lui <i>en</i> avez-vous parlé ?                 |
| I did not say a word <i>of it</i> .                      | Je n' <i>en</i> ai pas dit le mot.              |
| Will you have <i>any</i> ?                               | <i>En</i> voulez-vous ?                         |
| Take <i>some</i> .                                       | Prenez- <i>en</i> .                             |
| Give him [ <i>or her</i> ] <i>some</i> .                 | Donnez-lui- <i>en</i> .                         |
| Will you be satisfied <i>with it</i> ?                   | <i>En</i> serez-vous content ?                  |
| I will not meddle <i>with it</i> .                       | Je ne veux pas m' <i>en</i> mêler.              |
| I am sorry <i>for it</i> .                               | J' <i>en</i> suis fâché.                        |
| I am very glad <i>of it</i> .                            | J' <i>en</i> suis bien aise.                    |
| She wonders <i>at it</i> .                               | Elle s' <i>en</i> étonne.                       |
| She complains <i>of it</i> .                             | Elle s' <i>en</i> plaint.                       |
| He is overjoyed <i>at it</i> .                           | Il s' <i>en</i> réjouit.                        |
| I will not hear any more <i>about it</i> .               | Je n' <i>en</i> veux plus entendre parler.      |
| What do you say <i>to it</i> ?                           | Qu' <i>en</i> dites-vous ?                      |
| I wonder <i>at it</i> .                                  | J' <i>en</i> suis surpris.                      |
| She will repent <i>it</i> .                              | Elle s' <i>en</i> repentira.                    |
| I am sure <i>of it</i> .                                 | J' <i>en</i> suis sûr.                          |
| Have you any money ? Yes, I have <i>some</i> .           | Avez-vous de l'argent ? Oui, j' <i>en</i> ai.   |
| She has <i>none</i> .                                    | Elle n' <i>en</i> a point.                      |
| Will you join <i>with us</i> ?                           | <i>En</i> voulez-vous être ?                    |
| I come <i>thence</i> .                                   | J' <i>en</i> viens.                             |
| Do you know any thing <i>of it</i> ?                     | <i>En</i> savez-vous quelque-chose ?            |



I know nothing *of it*.

He shall know nothing *of it*.

Have you *any*?

[3.] Have you been *there*?

Have you thought *of it*?

I have not yet been *there*.

She was forced *to it*.

Has he consented *to it*?

I shall never consent *to it*.

They have been against *it*.

Do not think of *it* any more.

The government have wisely provided *for it*.

The King will not be against *it*.

I am prepared *for it*.

Will you go *thither*?

You pay no attention *to it*.

Mind *it*.

I shall mind *it*.

I have added many new observations *to it*.

[4.] He is a traitor; do not go *to him*.

He is an honest man; trust *to him*.

Do you think of me? Yes, I do.

[5.] Are these your books? Yes, *they* are.

Are these your pens? Yes, *they* are.

Are those your father's horses? Yes, *they* are.

Are these your favours? Yes, *they* are.

Are these your sentiments? Yes, *they* are.

Are these your reasons? Yes, *they* are.

Je n'en sais rien.

Il n'en saura rien.

En avez-vous?

Y avez-vous été?

Y avez-vous pensé?

Je n'y ai pas encore été.

Elle y a été forcée.

Y a-t-il consenti?

Je n'y consentirai jamais.

Ils s'y sont opposés.

N'y pensez plus.

Le gouvernement y a sagement pourvu.

Le Roi ne s'y opposera pas.

J'y suis préparé.

Y voulez-vous aller?

Vous n'y prenez pas garde.

Prenez y garde.

J'y prendrai garde.

J'y ai ajouté plusieurs nouvelles remarques.

C'est un traître; ne vous y fiez pas.

C'est un honnête homme: fiez-vous-y.

Pensez-vous à moi? Oui, j'y pense.

Sont-ce là vos livres? Oui, ce *les* sont.

Sont-ce là vos plumes? Oui, ce *les* sont.

Sont-ce là les chevaux de votre père? Oui, ce *les* sont.

Sont-ce là vos amitiés? Oui, ce *les* sont.

Sont-ce là vos sentiments? Oui, ce *les* sont.

Sont-ce là vos raisons? Oui, ce *les* sont.

|                                                   |                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Is that your penknife? Yes,<br><i>it is.</i>      | Est-ce là votre canif? Oui,<br><i>ce l'est.</i>        |
| Are they your sisters? Yes,<br><i>they are.</i>   | Sont-ce là vos sœurs? Oui,<br><i>ce sont elles.</i>    |
| Are these his brothers?<br>Yes, <i>they are.</i>  | Sont-ce là ses frères? Oui,<br><i>ce sont eux.</i>     |
| Are these her cousins? Yes,<br><i>they are.</i>   | Sont-ce là ses cousines? Oui,<br><i>ce sont elles.</i> |
| Are these your brothers?<br>Yes, <i>they are.</i> | Sont-ce là vos frères? Oui,<br><i>ce sont eux.</i>     |
| Is it your cousin? Yes,<br><i>it is.</i>          | Est-ce votre cousin? Oui,<br><i>c'est lui.</i>         |

## CHAP. IV.

*Rules and Observations upon the Degrees of Comparison.*

Obs. GRAMMARIANS seem to be in a mistake about the degrees of comparison; for comparison implies a relation to another thing, with which the comparison is made: whereas the positive is the adjective in it's natural state, without relation to another thing; as when I say, this house is pretty; *cette maison est belle*, there is in fact no comparison at all. However, if by degrees of comparison we mean different manners of expressing the quality of something, there are three; the positive, the comparative and the superlative.

1. When the adjective is compared in an equal, higher, or less degree, it is called comparative, which comparison is made in French by placing before it *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *si*, so; *aussi*, as, &c.

2. *Plus* and *moins* are commonly followed by the particle *que*, and, when a verb comes immediately after it, that verb has the negative particle *ne* before it; as, he was richer than was believed; *il étoit plus riche qu'on ne croyoit.*

Except, when the following verb is in the infinitive mood, or preceded by a conjunction, *ne* must be left out; as, he finds himself more undisturbed in the country than in town; *il se trouve plus tranquille à la campagne, que d'être à la ville, or que s'il vivoit à la ville.*

3. *Si*, so; *tant*, so much, as much, as many, so many, comparatively used, are always used negatively; as you are not so rich as he, *vous n'êtes pas si riche que lui*; he has not so many friends as you, *il n'a pas tant d'amis que vous*. In other cases, *aussi*, or *autant*, is to be used; except in an interrogation, where *si* and *tant* may be used either with or without a negation, according to the interrogation being affirmative or negative.

4. When *plus*, *moins*, *autant*, *tant*, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by the preposition *de*; as, more money, *plus d'argent*; less credit, *moins de crédit*; so much pain, *autant de peine*; so many rings, *tant de bagues*.

5. When the verb *avoir*, or *être*, is before *plus*, *moins*, *autant*, &c., and the same verb follows *que*, the second *avoir*, or *être*, is more properly left out in the French, though it may be expressed in the English; and we are contented with *que* and the pronoun only, or any other noun; as, you have more money than I, or we have, *vous avez plus d'argent que moi*; or *que nous*; or sometimes *vous avez plus d'argent, que je n'en ai, or que vous n'en avons*; Miss A. is as sensible as she is, *Mademoiselle A. est aussi sensée qu'elle*, and not *qu'elle est*. Except when *que* is followed by a conjunction, or by the same verb in the infinitive mood, with a government after it, or a preposition; as, you have more pleasure, than if you had great riches, *vous avez plus de plaisir, que si vous aviez beaucoup de richesses*, or *que d'avoir beaucoup de richesses*; you are more happy, than if you were married, *vous êtes plus heureux que si vous étiez marié, or que d'être marié.*

6. When *plus* and *moins* are adverbs of quantity, or meet with a noun of number, the word *than*, which immediately follows *more* or *less*, is expressed by the preposition *de*: as, he has more than ten guineas; *il a plus de dix guinées.*

7. When the quality is raised to the highest degree, or depressed to the lowest, it is called superlative.

8. The definitive article, *le, la*, &c., are put before *plus, moins, meilleur, pire*, &c., in the superlative degree; and, when the superlative is followed by the noun with which the comparison is made, this noun must be in the second case, as: he is the best of my friends; *il est le meilleur de mes amis*, or *c'est le meilleur de mes amis*.

9. When the superlative is followed by a verb, that verb must be in the subjunctive mood, preceded by *qui, dont*, or *que*, as, the most happy woman alive, *la femme la plus heureuse qui soit*; the most happy man that I know, *l'homme le plus heureux que je connaisse*.

10. Sometimes a quality is mentioned in the highest degree without comparison; and this is done in French by placing adverbs of exaggeration before it; as, very rich; *très-riche*: very polite; *très-poli*: extremely obliged; *infiniment obligé*.



## EXCEPTIONS.

*The following Adjectives form their Degrees of Comparison in this manner :*

## FRENCH TONGUE.

| POSITIVE.                   | COMPARATIVE.                                      | SUPERLATIVE.                                                        |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| M. bon,<br>F. bonne,        | { <i>good.</i> }                                  | { <i>the best.</i> }                                                |
| M. méchant,<br>F. méchante, | { pire, <i>or</i> plus méchant,<br>plus méchante, | { le plus méchant,<br>la plus méchante,                             |
| M. mauvais,<br>F. mauvaise, | { <i>bad.</i> }                                   | { <i>the worst.</i> }                                               |
| M. petit,<br>F. petite,     | { pire, <i>or</i> plus mauvais,<br>plus mauvaise, | { le pire, la pire, <i>or</i> la plus mauvais,<br>la plus mauvaise, |
|                             | { <i>little.</i> }                                | { le plus petit, <i>the least.</i> }                                |
|                             | { moindre, <i>or</i> plus petite,                 | { le moindre, la moindre, <i>or</i> la plus petite,                 |

N.B. *Adverbs form their Degrees of Comparison in the same manner as Adjectives, except these following.*

| POSITIVE.                | COMPARATIVE.                           | SUPERLATIVE.                                     |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| bien, <i>well.</i>       | mieux, <i>better.</i>                  | le mieux, <i>the best.</i>                       |
| mal, <i>ill.</i>         | pis, <i>or</i> plus mal, <i>worse.</i> | le pis, <i>or</i> le plus mal, <i>the worst.</i> |
| peu, <i>little, few.</i> | moins, <i>less, fewer.</i>             | le moins, <i>the least.</i>                      |

*The Degrees of Comparison exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1.] London is *more* populous than Paris.

France is larger than England, Ireland, and Scotland.

The streets of London are wider than those of Paris.

My snuff-box is prettier than yours.

My books are dearer than yours.

He is *more* idle than his brother.

Your father is richer than his.

His house is greater than yours.

[2.] They are *more* forward, than I thought.

He gave me *more* money, than I asked for.

You have met with *more* obstacles, than you thought.

I have found it easier, than I foresaw.

They have *more* friends, than you believe.

He has lost more, than he has won.

You have asked for *less*, than was your due.

She has worked more than her task.

Londres est *plus* peuplé que Paris.

La France est *plus* étendue que l'Angleterre, l'Irlande, et l'Ecosse.

Les rues de Londres sont *plus* larges que celles de Paris.

Ma tabatière est *plus* belle que la vôtre.

Mes livres sont *plus* chers que les vôtres.

Il est *plus* paresseux que son frère.

Votre père est *plus* riche que le sien.

Sa maison est *plus* grande que la vôtre.

Ils sont *plus* avancés que je ne croyois.

Il m'a donné *plus* d'argent que je ne demandois.

Vous avez trouvé *plus* d'obstacles que vous ne pensiez.

J'y ai trouvé *plus* de facilité que je ne prévoyois.

Ils ont *plus* d'amis que vous ne croyez.

Il a perdu *plus* qu'il n'a gagné.

Vous avez demandé *moins* qu'il ne vous étoit dû.

Elle a fait *plus* d'ouvrage qu'on ne lui avoit prescrit.

I did not ask for *more*, than  
was my due.

Have you not undertaken  
*more*, than you were able  
to perform?

She is happier, *than if she*  
*were* married.

He is *more* contented with  
her, *than if* he had all the  
gold of Peru.

I am quieter in my room,  
*than if* I were in com-  
pany.

You look *more* sickly, *than*  
*while* you were in the  
country.

They are *less* troubled in the  
country, *than if* they were  
in town.

[3.] He is not *so* rich *as* it  
is said.

She is not *so* old *as* you be-  
lieve.

I am not *so* idle *as* my bro-  
ther.

We are not *so much* sur-  
prised *as* you think.

You are not so brave, *as* you  
pretend to be.

They are not *so* learned, *as*  
they would make us be-  
lieve.

They are not *so* proud *as* to  
despise your praises.

She is not *so* vain, *as* to listen  
to your flatteries.

I have not won *so much* *as* I  
thought.

Je n'ai pas demandé *plus*  
qu'il *ne* m'étoit dû.

N'avez-vous pas entrepris  
*plus* que vous *ne* pouviez  
exécuter?

Elle est plus heureuse *que*  
*d'être* mariée, ou *que si*  
elle étoit mariée.

Il est *plus* content avec elle  
*que* s'il avoit tout l'or du  
Pérou.

Je suis *plus* tranquille dans  
ma chambre *que si* j'étois  
en compagnie.

Vous paroissez *plus* malade  
*que lorsque* vous étiez à la  
campagne.

Ils sont *moins* dérangés à la  
campagne, *que* s'ils étoient  
à la ville.

Il n'est pas *si* riche *qu'on* le  
dit.

Elle n'est pas *si* âgée *que*  
vous croyez.

Je ne suis pas *si* paresseux  
*que mon* frère.

Nous ne sommes pas *si* sur-  
pris *que* vous pensez.

Vous n'êtes pas *si* braves  
*que* vous dites.

Il ne sont pas *si* savans  
*qu'ils* voudroient nous  
le faire croire.

Elles ne sont pas *si* fières  
*que* de mépriser vos lou-  
anges.

Elle n'est pas *si* vaine *que*  
*d'écouter* vos flatteries.

Je n'ai pas *tant* gagné *que*  
je pensois.

He has not lost *so much* as you.

[4.] She has not *so much* money *as* you think.

We have not *so much* self-love, *as* to prefer ourselves to you.

You have not *so much* business, *as* to hinder you from applying yourself to the study of the French language.

They have not *so much* courage, *as* they pretend to.

They have not *so much* pleasure in the country *as* in town.

[5.] I am *as much* surprised *as* you.

He is *as* learned *as* his elder brother.

She is *as* lovely *as* her sister.

We are *as* quiet *as* you.

You are *as* brisk *as* he.

They are *as* rich *as* your father.

They are *as* witty *as* his sisters.

I have *as many* friends *as* you.

He is *as* covetous *as* ever.

She has *as* much beauty *as* formerly.

We have *as* much trouble *as* you.

You have *as many* books *as* I have.

Il n'a pas *tant* perdu *que* vous.

Elle n'a pas *tant* d'argent *que* vous pensez.

Nous n'avons pas *tant* d'amour-propre, *que* de nous préférer à vous.

Vous n'avez pas *tant* d'occupations, *que* vous ne puissiez vous appliquer à l'étude de la langue Française.

Ils n'ont pas *tant* de courage *qu'ils* se flattent d'en avoir.

Elles n'ont pas *tant* de plaisir à la campagne *qu'à* la ville.

Je suis *aussi* surpris *que* vous.

Il est *aussi* savant *que* son frère aîné.

Elle est *aussi* aimable *que* sa sœur.

Nous sommes *aussi* tranquilles *que* vous.

Vous êtes *aussi* vif *que* lui.

Ils sont *aussi* riches *que* votre père.

Elles sont *aussi* spirituelles *que* ses sœurs.

J'ai *autant* d'amis *que* vous.

Il a *autant* d'avarice *que* jamais.

Elle a *autant* de beauté *qu'autrefois*.

Nous avons *autant* de peine *que* vous.

Vous avez *autant* de livres *que* moi.



They have *as much* honour  
as your countrymen.

They have *as much* love for  
the sciences as their brothers.

Your suit is *more* worn  
than mine.

Her apron is cleaner *than*  
her sister's.

You are *more* learned *than* I  
am.

He is older *than* you.

She is *more* lovely *than* he.

You are older *than* she is.

[6.] My brother has *more*  
books *than* you.

We have *more* pleasure *than*  
they.

I have lost *more* *than* ten  
guineas.

She has brought him for her  
portion *more* *than* ten  
thousand pounds.

She has *less* vivacity *than*  
her sister.

We have *less* trouble *than*  
you.

They have spent *more* *than* a  
thousand pounds a year.

He owes *more* *than* four  
thousand pounds.

He has written *more* *than* ten  
letters to day.

I am *more* *than* half per-  
suaded of it.

My brother is *more* *than*  
twenty years old.

I am no *more* *than* twelve  
years old,

I have *more* friendship for  
him, *than* he has for me.

Ils ont *autant* d'honneur *que*  
vos compatriotes.

Elles ont *autant* d'amour  
pour les sciences *que* leurs  
frères.

Votre habit est *plus* usé *que*  
le mien.

Son tablier est *plus* blanc  
*que* celui de sa sœur.

Vous êtes *plus* savant *que*  
moi.

Il est *plus* âgé *que* vous.

Elle est *plus* aimable *que* lui.

Vous êtes *plus* âgé *qu'*elle.

Mon frère a *plus* de livres  
*que* vous.

Nous avons *plus* de plaisir  
*qu'*eux.

J'ai perdu *plus* de dix gui-  
nées.

Elle lui a apporté en mariage  
*plus* de dix mille livres  
sterling.

Elle a *moins* de vivacité *que*  
sa sœur.

Nous avons *moins* de peine  
*que* vous.

Il ont dépensé *plus* de mille  
livres sterling par an.

Il doit *plus* de quatre mille  
livres sterling.

Il a écrit *plus* de dix lettres  
aujourd'hui.

J'en suis *plus* d'à moitié  
persuadé.

Mon frère a *plus* de vingt  
ans.

Je n'ai pas *plus* de douze  
ans.

J'ai *plus* d'amitié pour lui  
*qu'*il n'en a pour moi.

|                                                                              |                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| She has <i>more</i> money <i>than</i> I have.                                | Elle a <i>plus</i> d'argent <i>que</i> moi.                                     |
| I have not <i>more</i> cunning <i>than</i> they.                             | Je n'ai pas <i>plus</i> de finesse <i>qu'eux</i> .                              |
| I take <i>more</i> pains <i>than</i> you.                                    | Je prends <i>plus</i> de peine <i>que</i> vous.                                 |
| You have <i>less</i> pride <i>than</i> he.                                   | Vous avez <i>moins</i> d'orgueil <i>que</i> lui.                                |
| [7.] He is <i>the most</i> skilful physician in the whole city.              | C'est <i>le plus</i> habile médecin de toute la ville.                          |
| He is <i>the</i> idlest of them all.                                         | C'est <i>le plus</i> paresseux de tous.                                         |
| She is <i>the</i> loveliest of them all.                                     | C'est <i>la plus</i> aimable de toutes.                                         |
| England has given birth to <i>the most</i> skilful philosophers in Europe.   | L'Angleterre a donné naissance <i>aux plus</i> habiles philosophes de l'Europe. |
| [8.] She is <i>the most</i> lovely lady I know.                              | C'est <i>la plus</i> aimable demoiselle que je connoisse.                       |
| It is the greatest piece of folly you <i>can</i> ever commit.                | C'est <i>la plus</i> grande sottise <i>que</i> vous puissiez jamais faire.      |
| He is the greatest ninny you ever saw.                                       | C'est l'homme <i>le plus</i> sot <i>que</i> vous puissiez voir.                 |
| The French is <i>the most</i> useful language you <i>can</i> possibly learn. | Le François est la langue <i>la plus</i> utile <i>qu'on</i> puisse apprendre.   |
| [9.] I am <i>very</i> glad of it.                                            | J'en suis <i>bien</i> aise.                                                     |
| I am <i>very</i> much concerned at it.                                       | J'en suis <i>très</i> -mortifié.                                                |
| He is a <i>very</i> polite man.                                              | C'est un homme <i>très</i> -poli.                                               |
| He is <i>very</i> diligent.                                                  | Il est <i>très</i> -diligent.                                                   |
| She is <i>very</i> lovely.                                                   | Elle est <i>très</i> -aimable.                                                  |
| I am <i>much</i> indebted to you.                                            | Je vous suis <i>très</i> -redevable.                                            |
| I am <i>infinitely</i> obliged to you.                                       | Je vous suis <i>infinitement</i> obligé.                                        |
| His father is <i>very</i> rich.                                              | Son père est <i>très</i> -riche.                                                |
| We are <i>very much</i> persuaded of it.                                     | Nous en sommes <i>très</i> -persuadés.                                          |

I am your *most* humble  
servant.

Your *most* obedient servant.

Je suis votre *très*-humble  
serviteur.

Votre *très*-obéissant servi-  
teur.

*The Exceptions p. 215, exemplified.*

He is *the best* man in the  
world.

Your pen is *better* than  
mine.

French fruit is *better* than  
English.

It is *the best* reason you can  
give him.

They are *the best* people in  
the world.

His theme is *better* written  
than yours.

The *least* thing makes me  
catch cold.

His writing is *very bad*;  
but yours is *worse*.

Let the *worst* come to the  
*worst*.

I shall do it *to the best* of my  
power.

He obliged me *the least* of  
any.

It is *the least thing* you can  
do.

C'est *le meilleur* homme du  
monde.

Votre plume est *meilleure* que  
la mienne.

Les fruits de France sont  
*meilleurs* que ceux d'An-  
gleterre.

C'est *la meilleure* raison que  
vous puissiez lui donner.

Ce sont *les meilleures* gens du  
monde.

Son thème est *mieux* fait que  
le vôtre.

*La moindre* chose m'enrhu-  
me.

Son écriture est *très-mau-  
vaise*; mais la vôtre est  
*pire*.

Au *pis* aller.

Je le ferai *le mieux* qu'il me  
sera possible.

Il m'a obligé *le moins* de  
tous.

C'est *le moins* que vous puis-  
siez faire.

## CHAP. V.

*Rules and Observations upon Verbs.*

**T**HE verb agrees in person and number with it's subject, or nominative case. All nouns whatever, in grammatical construction, are of the third person; as, the air prepossesses; the behaviour engages; *l'air prévient, les manières engagent.*

2. Two or more nouns in the singular number have verbs agreeing with them in the plural number; as, the father and the mother have consented to it, *le père et la mère y ont consenti.*

Except when they are joined by the disjunctive conjunction *ou*; as, *ou le père ou la mère y a consenti.*

3. The verb following the conjunction *ni* is always put in the plural; as, neither mildness nor force can move him, *ni la douceur ni la force ne peuvent l'émouvoir.*

4. Obs. If many nouns, or pronouns, singular or plural, be separated by *mais, rien, tout, &c.*, then the verb agrees in number and person with the noun or pronoun which follows these words; as, not only his estate and health, but also his reputation, has suffered by it: *non-seulement ses biens et sa santé, mais encore sa réputation en a souffert.*

5. Collective partitive\* nouns, as, *infinité, nombre, la plupart, quantité, troupe, multitude* †, &c., followed

\* They are called *partitive*, and not general, because they denote some parts of a whole. For want of making that distinction, *Restaut* seems to contradict himself; for page 34 of his *French Grammar*, 9th Edition, he says, that *forêt, peuple, armée*, are collective nouns; and, page 174, he says, that when the verb has for it's nominative a collective noun in the singular, used by itself, or followed by a noun in the plural, the verb is put in the plural, which is false; because *forêt, peuple, armée*, always govern the verb in the singular.

† Except from these, *la moitié, le tiers, le quart*, which always govern the verb in the singular.



by a noun in the plural, require the verb in the plural; as, most men are of that sentiment; *la plupart des hommes sont de ce sentiment.*

When they are used by themselves, they generally govern the verb in the plural, if they have a relation to a noun in the plural which is understood. *La plupart*, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY, almost always governs the verb in the plural, whether the noun to which it relates be in the plural or not.

6. When *ce* is the nominative to the verb *être*, this verb is put in the singular, if it be followed by the personal pronoun *nous* or *vous*; as, it is we, *c'est nous*; is it you, my friends? *est-ce vous, mes amis*; but it is always put in the plural, when followed by *eux, elles*, or a substantive in the plural; as, it is they, *ce sont eux*, these are my books, *ce sont là mes livres*; were these your reasons? *étoient-ce là vos raisons*?

7. After the determining pronoun *qui*, the verb is put in the same number and person, as the word to which *qui* relates; as, you who speak, *vous qui parlez*: we who study, *nous qui étudions*.

8. The verb is commonly repeated in French, 1st when the first member of the sentence is affirmative, and the second negative; or the first negative, and the second affirmative; as, we ought to expect every thing of God, and nothing of ourselves, *on doit attendre tout de Dieu et ne rien attendre de soi-même*; our reputation does not depend on the caprice of men, but on the praise-worthy actions which we do, *notre réputation ne dépend pas du caprice des hommes, mais elle dépend des actions louables que nous faisons*.

2dly. When the verb is active in the first member, and passive or reflected in the second; as, lazy men are not esteemed, because they do not deserve it; *on n'estime pas les fainéans, parce qu'ils ne méritent pas d'être estimés*.

N. B. Three things are chiefly to be considered in verbs, viz. the use of tenses, the use of moods, and the government of verbs.

## SECTION I.

*The Use of the Tenses.*

1. The present denotes the actual or habitual action or passion of the subject: as *j'écris*, which answers to the English, I write, I do write, I am writing.

This tense is often used in familiar discourse instead of the future, but then it must be joined to some words which denote futurity; as, I shall be with you in a moment, *je suis à vous dans un moment*. It is also used, as in all other tongues, particularly in the French, in orations, poetry, or set discourses, instead of some other tenses, to represent an action past in a more lively and emphatical manner.

2. The imperfect tense represents the time of an event under two points of view, or relative circumstances.

1st. The imperfect represents a past event, as present at the time of another event past, and mentioned or understood in the sentence; and then it exactly answers the English expression, *I was doing*, as I was reading when you came into my room; *je lisois quand vous entrâtes dans ma chambre*. The action of reading is past in itself, but it is present in respect of your entrance into my room: I had a design to speak to him, but he was not at home, *j'avois dessein de lui parler, mais il n'étoit pas chez lui*. My design to speak to him, though past in itself, was present in respect of the circumstance understood, *when I went to his house*.

2dly. The imperfect is used to represent a continuity, a repetition, a habitude, and then it exactly answers the English expression, *I used to do*; as this man altered his mind every day, *cet homme changeoit tous les jours de dessein*. The act of altering his mind being repeated, requires the imperfect. Lewis XIV loved war too much, *Louis XIV aimoit trop la guerre*. Here also

the imperfect must be used to express a habitual disposition. But should we specify how many times, or how long an action has been repeated, or the exact duration of the habitude, the preterit ought to be employed instead of the imperfect; as, this man altered his mind three times, or, for three days, *cet homme changea de dessein trois fois*, or, *pendant trois jours*, and not *changeoit*. Lewis XIV loved war too much all his life, *Louis XIV aima trop la guerre pendant toute sa vie*, and not *aimoit*.

N.B. The imperfect is used after *si*, if, instead of the subjunctive mood, expressed by *should*, *could*, *would*, in English: as, if you would come, *si vous vouliez venir*: if virtue should reign, *si la vertu régnoit*.

3. The preterit denotes an action entirely past, in a time also entirely past; as, he was happy last week, last month, last year; *il fut heureux la semaine passée, le mois passé, l'année passée*. If the time be not entirely past, we make use of the compound of the present tense; as, he has been happy this week, this month, this year: *il a été heureux cette semaine-ci, ce mois-ci, cette année-ci*.

The preterit is used when we speak of an action done but once or very seldom, and the time is specified; as, Edward III took Calais the 3d of August, 1347; *Edouard III prit Calais le 3 d'Août, 1347*. If the time be not specified, we more commonly use the compound of the present: as, *Edouard III a pris Calais*.

We commonly make use of the compound of the present tense before *depuis*, since: as, there has been a great battle, since I saw you, *il y a eu une grande bataille, depuis que je ne vous ai vu*. Sometimes we make use of this tense instead of the compound of the future; as, will you have done soon? *avez-vous bientôt fait*, instead of, *aurez-vous bientôt fait*?

4. The future is used as in other languages.

5. The conditional is used as in English, but never after the conjunctions which govern the subjunctive mood, though it has been erroneously placed by some grammarians among the tenses of that mood.

*The Tenses of Verbs exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[Chap. V. 1.] The sun Le soleil *luit*.

*shines.*

The summer *is* a very agreeable season.

L'été *est* une saison très-agréable.

Winter *does not please* me.

L'hiver ne me *plaît pas*.

The stars *begin* to appear.

Les étoiles *commencent* à paroître.

The days *are* very much lengthened.

Les jours *sont* très-alongés.

These meadows *are* very beautiful.

Ces prairies *sont* très-belles.

[2.] The brother and sister *were* against it.

Le frère et la sœur *s'y sont* opposés.

The father and mother *have* consented to it.

Le père et la mère *y ont* consenti.

[3.] Neither he nor she *has* spoken to him. [*or to her.*]

Ni lui ni elle ne *lui ont* parlé.

Either your brother, or your sister, *has* told it you.

Ou votre frère, ou votre sœur, vous *l'a* dit.

[4.] Prayers, threats, *nothing* can move him.

Prières, menaces, *rien* ne peut l'émouvoir.

Honours, riches, pleasures, *every thing* disappears at death.

Honneurs, richesses, plaisirs, *tout* disparaît à la mort.

[5.] A vast number of people *are* duped by one another.

Une infinité de gens *sont* les dupes les uns des autres.

A great number of ships *are* ready to sail.

Un grand nombre de vaisseaux *sont* prêts à faire voile.

Most part of the goods *have* been sold.

La plupart des marchandises *ont* été vendues.

[6.] *It was* I who saw it.

*C'est* moi qui *l'ai* vu.

*It was* we who hindered him.

*C'est* nous qui *l'avons* empêché.

*It was* you who made the noise.

*C'est* vous qui *avez* fait le bruit.



|                                                                           |                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>It was they who heard it.</i>                                          | <i>Ce sont eux qui l'ont entendu.</i>                                        |
| [Sect. I. 2.] When I <i>was</i> young, I <i>loved</i> play greatly.       | Quand j' <i>étois</i> jeune, j' <i>aimois</i> beaucoup le jeu.               |
| I <i>had</i> a mind to write to him.                                      | J' <i>avois</i> envie de lui écrire.                                         |
| He <i>had</i> a mind to come and see you.                                 | Il <i>avoit</i> envie de venir vous voir.                                    |
| When I was in London, I <i>used</i> to go very often to the play.         | Quand j' <i>étois</i> à Londres, j' <i>allois</i> très-souvent à la comédie. |
| You <i>were</i> scarcely gone, when he arrived.                           | A peine <i>étiez-vous</i> parti, qu'il arriva.                               |
| I <i>expected</i> nothing else.                                           | Je ne m' <i>attendois</i> à rien autre chose.                                |
| He <i>was</i> afraid to interrupt you.                                    | Il <i>avoit</i> peur de vous interrompre.                                    |
| She <i>was</i> not so angry, as she <i>seemed</i> to be.                  | Elle n' <i>étoit</i> pas si fâchée qu'elle le <i>paroissoit</i> .            |
| I <i>was</i> in the Park, when he spoke to you.                           | J' <i>étois</i> au Parc quand il vous parla.                                 |
| I <i>was</i> in London, when the duke of Cumberland died.                 | J' <i>étois</i> à Londres, quand le duc de Cumberland mourut.                |
| He <i>seemed</i> much surprised at that news.                             | Il <i>paroissoit</i> fort surpris de cette nouvelle.                         |
| Where <i>were</i> you, when the King was crowned? I <i>was</i> in France. | Où <i>étiez-vous</i> , quand le Roi fut couronné? J' <i>étois</i> en France. |
| He <i>was</i> very sprightly in his youth.                                | Il <i>étoit</i> très-vif dans sa jeunesse.                                   |
| He <i>had</i> a great many friends in London.                             | Il <i>avoit</i> beaucoup d'amis à Londres.                                   |
| He <i>was</i> not persuaded of what he said.                              | Il n' <i>étoit</i> pas persuadé de ce qu'il disoit.                          |
| My father <i>was</i> seventy years old when he died.                      | Mon père <i>avoit</i> soixante-et-dix ans, quand il mourut.                  |
| His mother <i>was</i> forty years old, when she married again.            | Sa mère <i>avoit</i> quarante ans quand elle se remaria.                     |
| If you <i>would</i> speak to him. [or to her.]                            | Si vous lui <i>parliez</i> .                                                 |

|                                                            |                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>If you should write to him</i><br>[or to her.]          | <i>Si vous lui écriviez.</i>                                   |
| <i>If she would be angry at it.</i>                        | <i>Si elle s'en fâchoit.</i>                                   |
| <i>If I should go and see him.</i>                         | <i>Si je l'allois voir.</i>                                    |
| <i>If he would employ half his time.</i>                   | <i>S'il employoit la moitié de son temps.</i>                  |
| <i>If she would apply herself to music.</i>                | <i>Si elle s'appliquoit à la musique.</i>                      |
| <i>If we could know.</i>                                   | <i>Si nous savions.</i>                                        |
| <i>If they would apply themselves to something useful.</i> | <i>S'ils s'appliquoient à quelque chose d'utile.</i>           |
| <i>If they would listen to flatteries.</i>                 | <i>Si elles prêtoient l'oreille aux flatteries.</i>            |
| [3.] <i>I have written six letters to day.</i>             | <i>J'ai écrit six lettres aujourd'hui.</i>                     |
| <i>Have you seen him to day?</i>                           | <i>L'avez-vous vu aujourd'hui?</i>                             |
| <i>I have not spoken to him [or to her] to day.</i>        | <i>Je ne lui ai pas parlé aujourd'hui.</i>                     |
| <i>Where have you been to day?</i>                         | <i>Où avez-vous été aujourd'hui?</i>                           |
| <i>I have been in the Park.</i>                            | <i>J'ai été au Parc.</i>                                       |
| <i>I saw him to day.</i>                                   | <i>Je l'ai vu aujourd'hui.</i>                                 |
| <i>She went to the play this week.</i>                     | <i>Elle a été à la comédie cette semaine.</i>                  |
| <i>He has not studied this week.</i>                       | <i>Il n'a pas étudié cette semaine-ci.</i>                     |
| <i>I went into the country this week.</i>                  | <i>J'ai été à la campagne cette semaine-ci.</i>                |
| <i>You have lost your time this week.</i>                  | <i>Vous avez perdu votre temps cette semaine-ci.</i>           |
| <i>What have you done this week?</i>                       | <i>Qu'avez-vous fait cette semaine?</i>                        |
| <i>We have spent a great deal of money this week.</i>      | <i>Nous avons dépensé beaucoup d'argent cette semaine-ci.</i>  |
| <i>You have done more work than I this week.</i>           | <i>Vous avez fait plus d'ouvrage que moi cette semaine-ci.</i> |
| <i>This month has not been very sharp.</i>                 | <i>Ce mois-ci n'a pas été très-rude.</i>                       |

|                                                        |                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| It <i>has been</i> very hot this month.                | Il <i>a fait</i> très-chaud ce mois-ci.                     |
| It <i>has rained</i> all this month.                   | Il <i>a plu</i> tout ce mois-ci.                            |
| It <i>has not snowed</i> this month.                   | Il <i>n'a pas neigé</i> ce mois-ci.                         |
| It <i>has been</i> exceeding cold this month.          | Il <i>a fait</i> très-froid ce mois-ci.                     |
| They <i>have had</i> a plentiful harvest this year.    | On <i>a eu</i> une moisson abondante cette année-ci.        |
| This year <i>has not been</i> very favourable to me.   | Cette année-ci <i>ne m'a pas été</i> très-favorable.        |
| You <i>have been</i> very lucky this year.             | Vous <i>avez été</i> très-heureux cette année-ci.           |
| They <i>have lost</i> a great deal of money this year. | Ils ont <i>perdu</i> beaucoup d'argent cette année-ci.      |
| I <i>have been</i> in France this year.                | J' <i>ai été</i> en France cette année-ci.                  |
| She <i>died</i> this year.                             | Elle <i>est morte</i> cette année-ci.                       |
| He <i>has been</i> very sick this year.                | Il <i>a été</i> très-malade cette année-ci.                 |
| He <i>is arriv'd</i> from the West Indies this year.   | Il <i>est revenu</i> des Indes Occidentales cette année-ci. |
| I <i>wrote</i> six letters yesterday *.                | J' <i>écrivais</i> hier six lettres.                        |
| Did you <i>see</i> him yesterday ?                     | Le <i>vîtes-vous</i> hier ?                                 |
| I <i>did not speak</i> to him [or to her] yesterday.   | Je <i>ne lui parlai</i> pas hier.                           |
| Where <i>did you go</i> yesterday ?                    | Où <i>fûtes-vous</i> hier ?                                 |
| I <i>went</i> to the Park.                             | Je <i>fus</i> au Parc.                                      |
| I <i>saw</i> him yesterday.                            | Je <i>le vis</i> hier.                                      |
| I <i>met</i> with her yesterday in the street.         | Je <i>la rencontrai</i> hier dans la rue.                   |
| She <i>went</i> to the play last week.                 | Elle <i>fut</i> à la comédie la semaine passée.             |
| He <i>did not study</i> last week.                     | Il <i>n'étudia</i> pas le semaine passée.                   |
| I <i>went</i> into the country last week.              | Je <i>fus</i> à la campagne la semaine passé.               |
| You <i>lost</i> your time last week.                   | Vous <i>perdîtes</i> votre temps la semaine passée.         |

\* I repeat, purposely, the foregoing examples, to render the different uses of the tenses more intelligible to the learner.

|                                                                            |                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| What <i>did</i> you <i>do</i> last week ?                                  | Que <i>fîtes</i> -vous la semaine passée ?                                            |
| We <i>spent</i> a great deal of money last week.                           | Nous <i>dépensâmes</i> beaucoup d'argent la semaine passée.                           |
| You <i>did</i> more work than I last week.                                 | Vous <i>fîtes</i> plus d'ouvrage que moi la semaine passée.                           |
| Last month <i>was</i> not very sharp.                                      | Le mois passé ne <i>fut</i> pas très-rude.                                            |
| It <i>was</i> exceeding hot last month.                                    | Il <i>fit</i> très-chaud le mois passé.                                               |
| It <i>rained</i> all last month.                                           | Il <i>plut</i> tout le mois passé.                                                    |
| It <i>did</i> not <i>snow</i> last month.                                  | Il ne <i>neigea</i> pas le mois passé.                                                |
| It <i>was</i> exceeding cold last month.                                   | Il <i>fit</i> très-froid le mois passé.                                               |
| They <i>had</i> a plentiful harvest last year.                             | On <i>eut</i> une moisson abondante l'année passée.                                   |
| Last year <i>was</i> not very favourable to me.                            | L'année passée ne me <i>fit</i> pas très-favorable.                                   |
| You <i>were</i> very lucky last year.                                      | Vous <i>fûtes</i> très-heureux l'année passée.                                        |
| They <i>lost</i> a great deal of money last year.                          | Ils <i>perdirent</i> beaucoup d'argent l'année passée.                                |
| I <i>went</i> to France last year.                                         | J' <i>allai</i> en France l'année passée.                                             |
| She <i>died</i> last year.                                                 | Elle <i>mourut</i> l'année passée.                                                    |
| He <i>was</i> very sick last year.                                         | Il <i>fut</i> très-malade l'année passée.                                             |
| He <i>arrived</i> from the West Indies last year.                          | Il <i>arriva</i> des Indes Occidentales l'année passée.                               |
| How <i>have</i> you <i>been</i> , since I had the pleasure of seeing you ? | Comment vous <i>êtes</i> -vous porté, depuis que je n'ai en le plaisir de vous voir ? |
| I <i>have been</i> very sick, since I arrived from the East-Indies.        | J' <i>ai été</i> très-malade, depuis que je suis arrivé des Indes Orientales.         |
| I <i>have received</i> no tidings of him, since he went away.              | Je n'ai pas <i>reçu</i> de ses nouvelles depuis qu'il est parti.                      |



Have you seen him, since he arrived from France? L'avez-vous vu, depuis qu'il est arrivé de France?  
 Where have you been, since you went out? Où avez-vous été, depuis que vous êtes sorti?

## SECTION II.

*The Use of the Subjunctive Mood.*

1. The subjunctive mood is used after *que*, or *qui*, preceded by a verb denoting doubt, wish, fear, command, prohibition, &c.; such are *craindre*, *prier*, *douter*, *souhaiter*, *permettre*, *commander*, *défendre*, &c.; as, his father has forbidden him to go thither; *son père a défendu qu'il y allât*. But when any of these verbs govern a noun or pronoun, and the action of the verb following belongs to the person designated by the noun or pronoun, it is put in the infinitive mood, commonly with the preposition *de* before it; as in the foregoing example, *son père lui a défendu d'y aller*.

2. The subjunctive mood is likewise used after *que* preceded by an impersonal verb that denotes a thing ought to be, or to be done; as, I must go thither; *il faut que j'y aille*. See the 9th observation upon impersonal verbs.

3. There are some impersonal verbs which govern the indicative mood: such are, *il paroît*, *il y apparence*, &c., and those which denote any thing as more positively existing or being done. But, when the same impersonal verbs are used negatively or interrogatively, they govern the subjunctive mood; as, it is true that you are married; *il est vrai que vous êtes marié*; is it true, that you are married? *est il vrai que vous soyez marié?*

4. The subjunctive mood is used after verbs preceded by *ne* or *si*, used in a doubtful manner, and followed by *que* or *qui*; as, I do not believe, that he has done it; *je ne crois pas qu'il l'ait fait*; if you think I am an honest man, *si vous croyez que je sois bonnête homme*. Some grammarians say, that, speaking in the last instance positively, the verb following *que* is put in the indicative mood; as, *si vous croyez que je suis bonnête homme* \*.

The indicative mood is more properly used in the foregoing case, after the verbs *dire*, *énoncer*, *affirmer*, and the like, as: if you say, that he is an honest man; *si vous dites qu'il est bonnête homme*; Except when the verb *dire* implies a command or prohibition; as, tell him to come; *dites-lui qu'il vienne*.

6. The subjunctive mood is used after the verb *il semble*, it seems, when it implies a doubt, when it means *to look as if*; as, it seems that you are angry, or, you look as if you were angry; *il semble que vous soyez fâché*. But if that verb imply a persuasion, or have a pronoun

\* N. B. In this last instance, *si* has the import of *puisque*, and signifies *as*).

before it, or a governed word after it, the indicative mood is to be used; as, *il me semble*, or, *il semble à la compagnie que vous êtes fâché*.

7. A verb following another, which is in the subjunctive mood, must also be put in the same mood after *que* or *qui*; as, do you believe, that he expects I shall come? *croyez-vous qu'il s'attende que je vienne*?

8. The subjunctive mood is used, 1st. after *quoique*, *quelque que*, *quel que*, &c., signifying whomever, whatever, &c.: as, though you are rich, *quoique vous soyez riche*; though you are ever so rich, *quelque riche que vous soyez*. See the 19th and 20th observations upon indeterminate pronouns, page 197.

2dly, After *que* used instead of repeating the conjunctions *si* in the second member of a sentence; as, if you study and take pains; *si vous étudiez et que vous preniez de la peine*. See the 5th observation upon the conjunctions *si* and *que*, ch. x. page 294.

3dly, After the pronoun *qui* or *que* preceded immediately by a superlative; as, it is the best news you can tell me, *c'est la meilleure nouvelle que vous puissiez me dire*.

4thly, After *que* used instead of *de ce que*, which governs the indicative mood; as, I am sorry he is not come; *je suis fâché qu'il ne soit pas venu*, or, *de ce qu'il n'est pas venu*.

5thly, After the relative pronoun *qui* or *que* between two verbs, so as to express some desire, need, or necessity; as, I seek a woman who is handsome, rich, and wise, *je cherche une femme qui soit belle, riche, et sage*.

6thly, We elegantly make use of the compound of the preterit of the subjunctive mood after *si*, instead of the compound of the imperfect of the indicative; as, if I had been informed of it sooner, that would not have happened; *si j'en eusse été averti plus tôt, cela ne seroit pas arrivé*.

9. The verb which is in the future in English is put in the present in French, whenever it ought to be in the subjunctive mood; as, do you think, that he will come? *croyez-vous qu'il vienne*? I do not believe that he will write, *je ne crois pas qu'il écrive*. Except after the verbs *savoir*, *assurer*, &c., where *si* signifying whether, must be used instead of *que*: as, do you know whether he will come? *savez-vous s'il viendra*?

10. The verb, which according to the aforesaid rules, is put in the subjunctive mood, must be put in the present tense of that mood, if it be preceded by a verb in the present or future tense, or in the imperative; as do you believe that he will guess it, *croyez-vous qu'il le devine*? will you believe now, that he has written? *croirez-vous à présent qu'il ait écrit*? If the first verb be in any other tense, or in a compound one, the preterit of the subjunctive mood is to be used: as, what would you have him do? *Que voudriez-vous qu'il fît*?

This tense is likewise used, when the verb which is in the subjunctive mood is followed by the conjunction *si*, and a verb in the imperfect tense, or a conditional expression, though the first verb is in the present; as, do you believe, that he could guess it, if you would not

tell it him? *croyez-vous qu'il le devinât, si vous ne le lui dissiiez pas?* I doubt whether he would have succeeded without the help of his friends, *je doute qu'il eût réussi sans le secours de ses amis.*

N. B. As there are some conjunctions, which require the subjunctive mood, and are every where the same, it will not be amiss to set them down here, as I have met with them in other grammars.

### *Conjunctions governing the Subjunctive Mood.*

|                               |   |   |                               |
|-------------------------------|---|---|-------------------------------|
| Afin que, pour que,           | — | — | <i>that, to the end that.</i> |
| avant que,                    | — | — | <i>before.</i>                |
| sans que,                     | — | — | <i>without that.</i>          |
| quoique, bien que, encore que | — | — | <i>though.</i>                |
| soit que,                     | — | — | <i>whether and or.</i>        |
| supposé ou supposons que      | — | — | <i>suppose that.</i>          |
| au cas, ou en cas que,        | — | — | <i>in that case, or if.</i>   |
| à la bonne heure que,         | — | — | <i>I grant that.</i>          |
| non que,                      | } | — | <i>not that.</i>              |
| non pas que,                  |   | — |                               |
| ce n'est pas que,             | — | — | <i>it is not that.</i>        |
| pourvu que,                   | — | — | <i>provided.</i>              |
| à moins que,                  | — | — | <i>unless.</i>                |
| pour peu que,                 | — | — | <i>if ever so little.</i>     |
| de peur que,                  | — | — | <i>for fear that.</i>         |
| de crainte que,               | — | — | <i>lest.</i>                  |
| loin que,                     | — | — | <i>far from.</i>              |
| bien loin que,                | — | — | <i>very far from.</i>         |
| malgré que,                   | — | — | <i>for all that, though.</i>  |
| nonobstant que,               | — | — | <i>notwithstanding that.</i>  |
| Dieu veuille que,             | — | — | <i>God grant.</i>             |
| Plaise, ou plutôt à Dieu que, | — | — | <i>would to God.</i>          |
| à Dieu ne plaise que,         | — | — | <i>God forbid.</i>            |
| sinon que,                    | } | — | <i>save, but.</i>             |
| si ce n'est que,              |   | — |                               |

N. B. The last two govern the subjunctive mood, when they are preceded by a verb expressing command, desire, or uncertainty. In other cases they govern the indicative mood; as, I want nothing of you, but to do your duty; *je ne veux rien autre chose de vous sinon que,* ou, si ce n'est que, *vous fassiez votre devoir;* I answered him nothing, but that I had executed his orders, *je ne lui ai répondu autre chose, sinon que,* ou si ce n'est que, *j'avois exécuté ses ordres.*

*The Subjunctive Mood exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

|                                                               |                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| [1.] I was afraid he <i>would come.</i>                       | Je craignois qu'il ne vînt.                                                         |
| I suspected he <i>would write to you.</i>                     | Je doutois qu'il vous écrivît.                                                      |
| I did not doubt, but he <i>would be</i> very glad to see you. | Je ne doutois pas qu'il ne fût bien aise de vous voir.                              |
| Her mother commanded her to <i>marry</i> him.                 | Sa mère a commandé qu'elle l'épousât, ou lui a commandé de l'épouser.               |
| His father has forbidden him to <i>play</i> .                 | Son père a défendu qu'il jouât, ou lui a défendu de jouer.                          |
| Her husband permitted her to <i>go</i> to the play.           | Son mari a permis qu'elle allât à la comédie, ou lui a permis d'aller à la comédie. |
| [2.] I must <i>write</i> to him.                              | Il faut que je lui écrive.                                                          |
| It is convenient for you to <i> speak</i> to her.             | Il convient que vous lui parliez.                                                   |
| It is of consequence for him to <i>keep</i> good company.     | Il est de conséquence qu'il fréquente la bonne compagnie.                           |
| There is no way for her to <i>escape</i> .                    | Il n'y a pas moyen qu'elle échappe.                                                 |
| It is surprising <i>that</i> she <i>has</i> succeeded.        | Il est surprenant qu'elle ait réussi.                                               |
| It is just, <i>that</i> he <i>should be</i> rewarded.         | Il est juste qu'il soit récompensé.                                                 |
| It is unjust, <i>that</i> he <i>should be</i> punished.       | Il est injuste qu'il soit puni.                                                     |
| It is fit, <i>that</i> you <i>give</i> him <i> warning</i> .  | Il est à propos que vous l'avertissiez.                                             |
| It is necessary for him to <i>go</i> thither.                 | Il est nécessaire qu'il y aille.                                                    |
| It is improper for you to <i>go</i> alone.                    | Il est indécent que vous alliez seul.                                               |



|                                                                     |                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| It is astonishing, <i>that he knew</i> nothing of it.               | Il est étonnant <i>qu'il n'en sût</i> rien.                |
| It is lucky, <i>that she is</i> not dead.                           | Il est heureux <i>qu'elle ne soit</i> pas morte.           |
| It is impossible for him <i>to recover</i> .                        | Il est impossible <i>qu'il en re-vienne</i> .              |
| It is next to impossible, <i>that she should be ignorant</i> of it. | Il est presque impossible <i>qu'elle ne le sache</i> .     |
| [3.] It seems, <i>that you know</i> him.                            | Il paroît <i>que vous le connois-</i><br><i>sez</i> .      |
| It seems, <i>that he speaks</i> truth.                              | Il paroît <i>qu'il dit</i> vrai.                           |
| It seems, <i>that he is</i> an honest man.                          | Il paroît <i>qu'il est</i> honnête homme.                  |
| It seems <i>that she is</i> surprised.                              | Il paroît <i>qu'elle est</i> surprise.                     |
| It seems <i>that he is</i> angry.                                   | Il paroît <i>qu'il est</i> fâché.                          |
| It is likely, <i>that he knew</i> her.                              | Il y a apparence <i>qu'il l'a</i> connue.                  |
| It is likely, <i>that you saw</i> him.                              | Il y a apparence <i>que vous l'avez</i> vu.                |
| It is likely, <i>that he wrote</i> to her.                          | Il y a apparence <i>qu'il lui a</i> écrit.                 |
| It is likely, <i>that she loved</i> him.                            | Il y a apparence <i>qu'elle l'a</i> aimé.                  |
| It is true, <i>that I spoke</i> to him.                             | Il est vrai <i>que je lui ai</i> parlé.                    |
| It is true, <i>that he saw</i> her.                                 | Il est vrai <i>qu'il l'a</i> vue.                          |
| It is true, <i>that she wrote</i> to him.                           | Il est vrai <i>qu'elle lui a</i> écrit.                    |
| It is true, <i>that my father knows</i> him.                        | Il est vrai <i>que mon père le</i> connoît.                |
| It is certain, <i>that he is</i> dead.                              | Il est certain <i>qu'il est</i> mort.                      |
| It is certain, <i>that he is</i> come from Flanders.                | Il est certain <i>qu'il est</i> revenu de Flandre.         |
| It is certain, <i>that he does not know</i> him.                    | Il est certain <i>qu'il ne le con-</i><br><i>noît</i> pas. |
| It is certain, <i>that he told</i> him that news.                   | Il est sûr <i>qu'il lui a</i> dit cette nouvelle.          |
| It is certain, <i>that he wrote</i> to her.                         | Il est sûr <i>qu'il lui a</i> écrit.                       |
| It is certain, <i>that he under-</i><br><i>stands</i> his lesson.   | Il est sûr <i>qu'il sait</i> sa leçon.                     |
| It is said, <i>that the king of Spain is</i> dead.                  | On dit <i>que le roi d'Espagne</i><br><i>est</i> mort.     |

|                                                                    |                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| It is thought, <i>that</i> he <i>has</i> made his fortune.         | On croit qu'il a fait sa fortune.                  |
| [4.]* It does not seem, <i>that</i> you <i>know</i> him.           | Il ne paroît pas que vous le connoissiez.          |
| It does not seem, <i>that</i> he <i>speaks</i> truth.              | Il ne paroît pas qu'il dise vrai.                  |
| It does not seem, <i>that</i> he <i>is</i> an honest man.          | Il ne paroît pas qu'il soit honnête homme.         |
| It does not seem, <i>that</i> she <i>is</i> surprised.             | Il ne paroît pas qu'elle soit surprise.            |
| It does not seem, <i>that</i> she <i>is</i> angry.                 | Il ne paroît pas qu'elle soit fâchée.              |
| It is not likely, <i>that</i> he <i>knew</i> her.                  | Il n'y a point d'apparence qu'il l'ait connue.     |
| It is not likely, <i>that</i> you <i>saw</i> him.                  | Il n'y a point d'apparence que vous l'ayez vu.     |
| It is not likely, <i>that</i> he <i>wrote</i> to her.              | Il n'y a point d'apparence qu'il lui ait écrit.    |
| It is not likely, <i>that</i> she <i>loved</i> him.                | Il n'y a point d'apparence qu'elle l'ait aimé.     |
| It is not true, <i>that</i> I <i>spoke</i> to him.                 | Il n'est pas vrai que je lui aie parlé.            |
| It is not true, <i>that</i> he <i>saw</i> her.                     | Il n'est pas vrai qu'il l'ait vue.                 |
| It is not true, <i>that</i> she <i>wrote</i> to him.               | Il n'est pas vrai qu'elle lui ait écrit.           |
| It is not true, <i>that</i> my father <i>knows</i> him.            | Il n'est pas vrai que mon père le connoisse.       |
| It is not certain, <i>that</i> he <i>is</i> dead.                  | Il n'est pas certain qu'il soit mort.              |
| It is not certain, <i>that</i> he <i>is</i> come from Flanders.    | Il n'est pas certain qu'il soit venu de Flandre.   |
| It is not certain, <i>that</i> he <i>does</i> not <i>know</i> him. | Il n'est pas certain qu'il ne le connoisse pas.    |
| It is not certain, <i>that</i> he <i>told</i> him that news.       | Il n'est pas sûr qu'il lui ait dit cette nouvelle. |
| It is not certain, <i>that</i> he <i>wrote</i> to her.             | Il n'est pas sûr qu'il lui ait écrit.              |
| It is not certain, <i>that</i> he <i>understands</i> his lesson.   | Il n'est pas sûr qu'il sache sa leçon.             |

\* The twenty-one preceding examples are varied here purposely, to render the third rule, and the exceptions to it more intelligible to the learner.

- It is not said, *that* the king of Spain is dead.
- It is not thought, *that* he has made his fortune.
- [5.] He told me, *that* he would write to you.
- I shall tell him, *that* you are come to see him.
- Tell him I will come and see him.
- Did you tell him, *that* I saw you?
- Do not tell him, *that* I shall go to the play.
- Do not tell him, *that* you saw me.
- Tell him, *that* I went out.
- Tell him, *that* I came to speak to him.
- I shall tell him, *that* you spoke to me.
- I shall tell him, *that* you were perfect in your lesson.
- Tell him to come and see me.
- Tell him not to call to day.
- Tell him to write his theme out fair.
- Tell her to hold her tongue.
- Tell him to bring his books.
- Tell him to learn his lesson.
- Tell him to give you my penknife back again.
- Tell him to give you paper.
- I shall tell him, to write to you.
- I shall tell him, to take care of you.
- On ne dit pas *que* le roi d'Espagne soit mort.
- On ne pense pas *qu'il* ait fait sa fortune.
- Il m'a dit *qu'il* vous écrira.
- Je lui dirai *que* vous êtes venu pour le voir.
- Dites-lui *que* je viendrai le voir.
- Lui avez-vous dit *que* je vous ai vu?
- Ne lui dites pas *que* j'irai à la comédie.
- Ne lui dites pas *que* vous m'avez vu.
- Dites-lui *que* je suis sorti.
- Dites-lui *que* je suis venu pour lui parler.
- Je lui dirai *que* vous m'avez parlé.
- Je lui dirai *que* vous saviez votre leçon.
- Dites-lui *qu'il* vienne me voir.
- Dites-lui *qu'il* ne vienne pas aujourd'hui.
- Dites-lui *qu'il* mette son thème au net.
- Dites-lui *qu'elle* se taise.
- Dites-lui *qu'il* apporte ses livres.
- Dites-lui *qu'il* apprenne sa leçon.
- Dites-lui *qu'il* vous rende mon canif.
- Dites-lui *qu'il* vous donne du papier.
- Je lui dirai *qu'il* vous écrive.
- Je lui dirai *qu'il* ait soin de vous.

Do not tell her *to write to* me.

Will you tell him *to bring his* bill?

Will you tell him not *to be* angry?

I shall tell him not *to be* uneasy.

I shall tell her *to send you* your book.

I shall tell them *to give you* an answer.

I shall tell him *to be* moderate.

[6.] She seems *to be* angry.

It seems, *that you know* him.

It seems, *that he is* in the right.

It seems, *that she is* in the wrong.

It seems, *that you are* older.

It does not seem, *that she is* sick.

It seems *to me, that you are* sorry.

It seems *to me, that he is* very learned.

It seems *to him, that she is* very pretty.

*A covetous man* thinks he never *has* enough.

*Your brother* thinks he is rich enough.

[8.] If he come and *ask for* me, tell him I am not at home.

If you study, and *if you* take pains, you will learn

Ne lui dites pas *qu'elle* m'*écrive*.

Lui direz-vous *qu'il apporte* son mémoire?

Lui direz-vous *qu'il ne soit* pas fâché?

Je lui dirai *qu'il soit* tranquille.

Je lui dirai *qu'elle vous en-*voie votre livre.

Je leur dirai *qu'ils vous fas-*sent réponse.

Je lui dirai *qu'il soit* modéré.

Il semble *qu'elle soit* fâchée.

Il semble *que vous le connois-*siez.

Il semble *qu'il ait* raison.

Il semble *qu'elle ait* tort.

Il semble *que vous êtes* plus âgé.

Il ne semble pas *qu'elle soit* malade.

Il *me* semble *que vous êtes* fâché.

Il *me* semble *qu'il est* fort savant.

Il *lui* semble *qu'elle est* fort jolie.

Il semble *à un avare* *qu'il* n'a jamais assez.

Il semble *à votre frère* *qu'il* est assez riche.

S'il vient et *qu'il demande* après moi, dites-lui que je ne suis pas au logis.

Si vous étudiez, et *que vous* prenez de la peine, vous



- the French language in a short time.  
 He is the most conceited man I *know*.  
 She is the handsomest lady you ever *saw*.  
 I am sorry he *is* sick.  
 I am glad she *is* better.  
 I am surprised, *that* he *is* not come.  
 I am overjoyed, *that* he *has* gained his lawsuit.  
 I am surprised, *that* she *has* married him.  
 She is grieved, *that* you *send* her no news.  
 I am surprised *at* his *having* made his fortune in so short a time.  
 Give me a handkerchief *that* *is* clean.  
 I look for a servant *whom* I *may* trust.  
 He looks for a woman *who* *is* rich.  
 She looks for a husband *who* *is* handsome.  
 [9.] Is it certain, *that* he *will* come to day?
- apprendrez le François en peu de temps.  
 C'est l'homme le plus suffisant *que* je *connoisse*.  
 C'est la plus belle demoiselle *que* vous *ayez* jamais vue.  
 Je suis fâché *qu'il* *soit* malade, ou *de* *ce* *qu'il* *est* malade.  
 Je suis bien aise *qu'elle* se *porte* mieux.  
 Je suis surpris *qu'il* ne *soit* pas venu, ou *de* *ce* *qu'il* *n'est* pas venu.  
 Je suis ravi *qu'il* ait gagné son procès, ou *de* *ce* *qu'il* a gagné son procès.  
 Je suis surpris *qu'elle* l'ait épousé, ou *de* *ce* *qu'elle* l'a épousé.  
 Elle est chagrine *que* vous ne lui *donniez* point de nouvelles, ou *de* *ce* *que* vous ne lui *donnez* pas de nouvelles.  
 Je suis surpris *qu'il* ait fait sa fortune eu si peu de temps, ou *de* *ce* *qu'il* a fait sa fortune en si peu de temps.  
 Donnez-moi un mouchoir *qui* *soit* blanc.  
 Je cherche un domestique *à* *qui* je *puisse* me fier.  
 Il cherche un femme *qui* *soit* riche.  
 Elle cherche un mari *qui* *soit* bel homme.  
 Est-il sûr *qu'il* *viene* aujourd'hui?

|                                                                        |                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| [10.] Do you believe, <i>that</i> she <i>will</i> go to the play ?     | Croyez-vous <i>qu'elle aille</i> à la comédie ?                    |
| I do not believe, <i>that</i> she <i>will</i> be angry with you.       | Je ne crois pas <i>qu'elle soit</i> fâchée contre vous.            |
| I suspect, <i>that</i> he <i>will</i> write to you.                    | Je doute <i>qu'il vous écrive</i> .                                |
| Is it certain, <i>that</i> he <i>will</i> go to France next spring ?   | Est-il sûr <i>qu'il aille</i> en France au printemps prochain ?    |
| Is it not certain, <i>that</i> he <i>will</i> come back this summer.   | Il n'est pas sûr <i>qu'il revienne</i> cet été.                    |
| Do you think, <i>that</i> he <i>will</i> learn French in four months ? | Croyez-vous <i>qu'il apprenne</i> le François en quatre mois ?     |
| Do you think, <i>that</i> he <i>will</i> be in the country next week ? | Pensez-vous <i>qu'il soit</i> à la campagne la semaine prochaine ? |

## SECTION III.

*The Government of Verbs.*

1. Active verbs govern the first case ; as, I read the books, *je lis* les livres. Passive verbs govern the second case : as, he is esteemed by all men, *il est estimé* de tout le monde.

They also govern the first case with the preposition *par*, speaking of some bodily action ; as, he was killed by robbers, *il a été tué* par des voleurs. In speaking of actions, which partake both of the sentiments of the mind, and motion of the body, we commonly make use of *par*, though we say, *il est entouré* de gens ennuyeux, he is surrounded by troublesome people ; here *entouré* expresses only, that troublesome people are round about him.

2. Verbs that signify *to give*, or *to take away*, govern the first case of the thing, and the third case of the person : as, I have given him the book, *je lui ai donné* le livre ; they have taken his sword from him, *ils lui ont ôté* son épée.

3. Many verbs govern the infinitive of a verb, with the preposition *de* before it ; which occurs when *to* in English may be changed into of, from, by, or with ; as, he hindered me from working ; *il m'a empêché* de travailler.

4. Many verbs govern the infinitive with the preposition *à* before it: in this case, *to*, in English, almost always may be changed into *in*, or, *for*; as, help me to do it, or in doing it, *aidez-moi à le faire*.

5. Some verbs have the preposition *pour* before their infinitive, which occurs when *to* denotes the design, end, or reason of the passion or action of the verb. In this case, *to* can be changed into *in order to*, *with a design to*, *to the end that*; as, I came to see you, or in order to see you, or with a design to see you; *je suis venu pour vous voir*.

6. There are five verbs after which *de* and *à* are used indiscriminately before the infinitive; *contraindre*, *continuer*, *discontinuer*, *essayer*, *forcer*.

The verb *obliger*, in the sense of to force, to excite, to engage, is followed by the preposition *à* before the infinitive; as, I will oblige him to do it, *je l'obligerai à le faire*: when it is used passively, it is followed by the preposition *de*; as, he was obliged to do it, *il fut obligé de le faire*.

When the verb *tâcher* means simply to seek or aim at something, it takes the preposition *à* before the infinitive; as, he seeks to injure me, *il tâche à me nuire*: when it implies effort, it requires the preposition *de*; as I will endeavour to please you, *je tâcherai de vous plaire*.

When the verb *s'efforcer* is used in the sense of to strive, to strain, to make use of all our strength, it requires the preposition *à* before the next infinitive: but when it is used in the sense of to endeavour, to make use of our industry, it requires the preposition *de*; as, he strove to run, *il s'est efforcé à courir*: he endeavours to please her, *il s'efforce de lui plaire*.

When the verb *tarder* is used personally, it requires the preposition *à*: when impersonally, the preposition *de*; as, do not stay, *ne tardez pas à revenir*: I long to get rid of the business, *il me tarde d'être hors d'affaire*. In this tense it is always joined to a third case, and may be followed by *que*, with the verb in the subjunctive mood; as *il me tarde que je sois hors d'affaire*.

The verb *commencer* is sometimes followed by *de*; according to the FRENCH ACADEMY, the ear is the judge in such a case. When it signifies to begin by, it is followed by *par*; as, he began by reading Æsop's Fables, *il commença par lire les Fables d'Esop*.

The verb *manquer* requires the preposition *de* before the infinitive, when it is used negatively; as, I will not fail to do what you please, *je ne manquerai pas de faire ce que vous voulez*: or when it signifies to be near, to be like, to do or suffer any thing; as, I was like to fall, *j'ai manqué de tomber*. In this sense it is always used affirmatively, and in familiar discourse.

But when it is used affirmatively in the sense of not to do what we ought, it is followed by the preposition *à*; as, he has failed to do his duty, *il a manqué à faire son devoir*.

7. *De* is used before the infinitive of verbs, to which certain nouns are joined without an article; such are *avoir congé, permission, envie, coutume, besoin, sujet, raison, droit, tort, occasion, &c. de*.

8. Infinitive moods governed by the verb *être*, followed by an adjective governing the second case, take also *de* before them; as, I am glad to see you, *je suis bien aise de vous voir*. But if the verb *être* be followed by an adjective which governs the third case, the verb which is in the infinitive takes before it the preposition *à*; as, he is ready to go thither, *il est prêt à y aller*.

9. When *être*, signifying to be, is followed by a noun, and preceded by *ce*, the following verb, in the infinitive mood, is preceded by *que de*; as, it is a folly for a man to forget himself: *c'est une folie que de se méconnoître*.

10. *De* is put before the infinitive after *venir* and *ne faire que*, signifying an action that has just taken place; as, I left him just now, *je viens de le quitter*, or *je ne fais que de le quitter*. These two verbs are frequently used thus in the present and imperfect tense, but in no other.

11. *A* is put after the verb *venir*, signifying to begin, or to set about doing something: as, when I began to speak; *quand je vins à parler*. This verb is used in all it's tenses, and is commonly placed after some conjunctions. Sometimes it is not expressed in English, though it is added to the French verb; as when he shall know that, *quand il viendra à savoir cela*.

12. *A* is put before infinitive moods or verbal nouns governed by *être*, preceded by *ce*, and used in the sense of to be a person's turn, his business, or his duty; as, it is your turn to drink, *c'est à vous à boire*.

13. A verb coming after *assez* or *trop* very often requires the preposition *pour* before it; as, he has vanity enough to believe it, *il a assez de vanité pour le croire*. Sometimes it takes the preposition *de*; as, to affront him was not sufficient, *ce n'étoit pas assez de l'outrager*: sometimes no preposition at all; as, this is insulting me enough, or too much, *c'est assez ou c'est trop m'insulter*. Hence it appears how much grammarians are in the wrong, in saying that *assez* and *trop* always require the preposition *pour* before the next infinitive mood.

14. When two or more verbs requiring different cases after them govern the same object, this must follow the



first verb in the case this verb governs, and a relative pronoun must be put after each of the other verbs in the case governed by that verb; as, that pleased and charmed the prince, *cela plut au prince et le charma*; and not *cela plut et charma le prince*; because *plaire* governs the third case of the person, and *charmer* the first.

15. There are some verbs which take no preposition after them before the infinitive mood; as, *aller, venir, envoyer, savoir, faire, oser, voir, pouvoir, vouloir, croire, prétendre, devoir, écouter, entendre, daigner, &c.*

*Government of Verbs exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1.] I like Pope's works.  
You like apples and pears.

J'aime les œuvres de Pope.  
Vous aimez les pommes et les poires.

He is beloved by all his relations.

Il est aimé de tous ses parents.

He is respected by all his pupils.

Il est respecté de tous ses élèves.

He was robbed by two rogues.

Il fut volé par deux coquins.

He is surrounded with flatterers.

il est entouré de flatteurs.

[2.] I gave it to him.  
When will you give me my book?

Je le lui ai donné.  
Quand me donnerez-vous mon livre?

Will you give it to him?

Le lui donnerez-vous?

I did not give it to him.

Je ne le lui ai pas donné.

She took it from him.

Elle le lui a ôté.

Take this knife from him.

Otez-lui ce couteau.

Do not take it from her.

Ne le lui ôtez pas.

[3.] Make an end of playing.

Finissez de jouer.

I have not blamed you for having kept him company.

Je ne vous ai point blâmé de l'avoir fréquenté.

He has censured him for having written.

Il l'a censuré d'avoir écrit.

Cease to reproach me with my foible.

Cessez de me reprocher mon foible.

Warn her *to* take care of her reputation.

I advised him *to* ask her pardon.

Why have you deferred paying him?

I wrote to him, *to* send me my books.

I was frightened *to* see him.

Excuse me *from* learning my lesson *to* day.

Do not undertake *to* deceive her.

Try *to* persuade her.

He was constrained *to* pay.

He deserves *to* be punished.

He has neglected *to* study.

I forgot *to* bring my books.

He pressinglly invited me *to* dine with him.

Did you promise *to* go thither?

I advised him *to* be more diligent.

She refused *to* speak to him.

I intend *to* go to France next year.

Endeavour *to* please her.

Take care not *to* tell her, that you know me.

I repent *of* having sold my book.

She cannot forbear lying.

Make haste *to* prevent him.

Make haste *to* write your letter.

He flatters himself, that he knows almost every thing that happens in the city.

Avertissez-la *de* prendre soin de sa réputation.

Je lui ai conseillé *de* lui demander pardon.

Pourquoi avez-vous différé *de* le payer?

Je lui ai écrit *de* m'envoyer mes livres.

Je fus effrayé *de* le voir.

Dispensez-moi *d'*apprendre ma leçon aujourd'hui.

N'entreprenez pas *de* la désabuser.

Essayez *de* la persuader.

Il fut contraint *de* payer.

Il mérite *d'*être puni.

Il a négligé *d'*étudier.

J'ai oublié *d'*apporter mes livres.

Il m'a pressé *de* dîner avec lui.

Avez-vous promis *d'y* aller?

Ju lui ai recommandé *d'*être plus diligent.

Elle refusa *de* lui parler.

Je me propose *d'*aller en France l'année prochaine.

Tâchez *de* lui plaire.

Gardez-vous *de* lui dire que vous me connoissez.

Je me repens *d'*avoir vendu mon livre.

Elle ne peut s'empêcher *de* mentir.

Hâtez-vous *de* le prévenir.

Dépêchez-vous *d'*écrire votre lettre.

Il se flatte *de* savoir presque tout ce qui se passe dans la ville.

I take upon myself the care  
of speaking to him of it.

[4.] He learns fencing.

You love to play.

He seeks to wrong me.

Give me some drink.

I am disposed to obey you.

He has encouraged him, to  
undertake that work.

She has engaged him to play.

You have induced me to eat.

I have exhorted him to be  
wise and dutiful.

Help me to write my letters.

Think of paying me.

You expose yourself to fall  
sick.

He prepares himself for his  
departure.

She delights in tormenting  
me.

[5.] I did not do it to make  
you uneasy.

I told it him to inspire him  
with emulation.

He came to see you.

In order to be happy, we must  
be contented.

I shall do every thing to  
please you.

[6.] I shall oblige him to  
do it

You will never oblige him,  
to submit to her.

Oblige him to see her.

He was obliged to do it.

I am obliged to go out.

He will be obliged to see  
her.

Je me charge de lui en par-  
ler.

Il apprend à faire des armes.

Vous aimez à jouer.

Il cherche à me faire tort.

Donnez-moi à boire.

Je suis disposé à vous obéir.

Il l'a encouragé à entrepren-  
dre cet ouvrage.

Elle l'a engagé à jouer.

Vous m'avez excité à man-  
ger.

Je l'ai exhorté à être sage  
et obéissant.

Aidez-moi à écrire mes let-  
tres.

Songez à me payer.

Vous vous exposez à tomber  
malade.

Il se prépare à partir.

Elle se plaît à me tourmen-  
ter.

Je ne l'ai pas fait pour vous  
faire de la peine.

Je le lui ai dit pour lui don-  
ner de l'émulation.

Il vint pour vous voir.

Pour être heureux, il faut  
être content.

Je ferai tout pour vous  
plaire.

Je l'obligerai à le faire.

Vous ne l'obligerez jamais  
à se soumettre à elle.

Obligez-le à la voir.

Il fut obligé de le faire.

Je suis obligé de sortir.

Il sera obligé de la voir.

He aims *to* hurt me.

They aim *to* deceive you.

I shall endeavour *to* bring him to his duty.

Do not stay.

Do not delay *to* speak to her.

Why do you delay going thither?

I long *to* see her.

I shall begin *to* apply myself to the French language.

I begin *to* understand French a little.

He began *to* take more care.

We began *by* breakfasting before we went out

I shall not fail *to* do what you please.

Do not fail *to* be in such a place.

He has failed *to* do his duty.

[7.] You are in the wrong *to* complain.

You are in the right *to* be angry with him.

Have you not a mind *to* take a little walk?

I have leave *to* go out.

I want *to* see him, and speak to him.

You have no occasion *to* complain of me.

Take care *to* write your theme.

[8.] I am very glad *to* see you in good health.

I am overjoyed *to* hear,

Il tâche *à* me nuire.

Ils tâchent *à* vous tromper.

Je tâcherai *de* le ramener à son devoir.

Ne tardez pas *à* revenir.

Ne tardez pas *à* lui parler.

Pourquoi tardez-vous *à* y aller?

Il me tarde *de* la voir.

Je commencerai *à* m'appliquer au François.

Je commence *à* comprendre un peu le François.

Il commença *d'*avoir plus de soin.

Nous commençâmes *par* déjeuner avant de sortir.

Je ne manquerai pas *de* faire ce qui vous plaît.

Ne manquez pas *de* vous trouver en tel lieu.

Il a manqué *à* faire son devoir.

Vous avez tort *de* vous plaindre.

Vous avez raison *d'être* fâché contre lui.

N'avez-vous pas envie *de* faire un petit tour de promenade?

J'ai permission *de* sortir.

J'ai besoin *de* le voir et *de* lui parler.

Vous n'avez pas sujet *de* vous plaindre de moi.

Ayez soin *de* faire votre thème.

Je suis bien aise *de* vous voir en bonne santé.

Je suis ravi *d'apprendre* que



- that all your family is well.  
 I am sorry *to* see you sick.  
 He is very near his death.  
 He is very capable *of* teaching mathematics.  
 He is incapable *of* wronging any body.  
 She is worthy *to* be loved.  
 I am tired *with* writing.  
 Are you able *to* walk ?  
 Are you sure *of* pleasing her ?  
 It is easy *to* guess.  
 This fruit is good *to* eat.  
 He is much inclined *to* slander.  
 You are not exact *in* learning your lesson.  
 Are you ready *to* go ?  
 She plays upon the harpsichord very well.  
 I am assiduous *in* reading Telemachus.  
 He is first *in* prattling.  
 [9.] It is to no purpose, *to* speak to him about it.  
 It is a misfortune, *to* have no friends.  
 It is a folly *to* despise others.  
 [10.] I have *just* breakfasted.  
 I have *just* written my letter.  
 I have *just* left him.  
 He had *just* dined.
- toute votre famille se porte bien.  
 Je suis fâché *de* vous voir malade.  
 Il est sur le point *de* mourir.  
 Il est très-capable *d'*enseigner les mathématiques.  
 Il est incapable *de* faire tort à qui que ce soit.  
 Elle est digne *d'*être aimée.  
 Je suis las *d'*écrire.  
 Etes-vous en état *de* marcher ?  
 Etes-vous sûr *de* lui plaire ?  
 Cela est aisé *à* deviner.  
 Ce fruit est bon *à* manger.  
 Il est très-enclin *à* médire.  
 Vous n'êtes pas exact *à* apprendre votre leçon.  
 Etes-vous prêt *à* partir ?  
 Elle est habile *à* toucher du clavecin.  
 Je suis assidu *à* lire Télémaque.  
 Il est le premier *à* babiller.  
 C'est temps perdu *que* de lui en parler.  
 C'est un malheur *que* de n'avoir point d'amis.  
 C'est une folie *que* de mépriser les autres.  
 Je viens de déjeuner, *ou* je ne fais *que* de déjeuner.  
 Je viens *d'*écrire ma lettre, *ou* je ne fais *que* *d'*écrire ma lettre.  
 Je viens *de* le quitter, *ou* je ne fais *que* de le quitter.  
 Il venoit *de* dîner, *ou* il ne faisoit *que* de dîner.

She was *just* arrived.

Elle venoit *d'arriver*, ou elle ne faisoit *que d'arriver*.

We had *just* got out of the coach.

Nous venions *de* sortir du carrosse, ou nous ne faisions *que de* sortir du carrosse.

They had *just* finished their play.

Ils venoient *de* finir leur jeu ou ils ne faisoient *que de* finir leur jeu.

[11.] When I began *to* write my letter.

Quand je vins *à* écrire ma lettre.

He began *to* speak of his riches.

Il vint *à* parler de ses richesses.

As soon as she began *to* speak of her misfortunes.

Dès qu'elle vint *à* parler de ses malheurs.

She was very much surprised, when we began *to* relate to her that story.

Elle fut fort surprise quand nous vînmes *à* lui raconter cette histoire.

When his father shall know of it.

Quand son père viendra *à* savoir cela.

If his wife should know his libertinism.

Si sa femme venoit *à* savoir son libertinage.

If you should speak to her about it, tell her, that I am not ignorant of it.

Si vous veniez *à* lui en parler, dites-lui que je ne l'ignore pas.

[12.] It is your part *to* obey me.

C'est à vous *à* m'obéir.

It is your part *to* play.

C'est à vous *à* jouer.

It is my turn *to* walk out.

C'est à moi *à* sortir.

It is his turn *to* stay at home.

C'est à lui *à* rester au logis.

Whose turn is it *to* drink?

A qui est-ce *à* boire?

It is her turn *to* write.

C'est à elle *à* écrire.

It is your turn *to* read.

C'est à vous *à* lire.

It is not my business, *to* correct him.

Ce n'est pas à moi *à* le corriger.

It is not your business, *to* meddle with it.

Ce n'est pas à vous *à* vous en mêler.

It is not her business, *to* find fault with it.

Ce n'est pas à elle *à* y trouver à redire.

It is not their business, *to* take you from your work.

Ce n'est pas à eux *à* vous distraire de votre ouvrage.

|                                                                  |                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| [13.] He has too much pride <i>to</i> own his faults.            | Il a trop d'amour-propre <i>pour</i> avouer ses fautes.               |
| She has still beauty enough <i>to</i> please.                    | Elle a encore assez de beauté <i>pour</i> plaire.                     |
| You have not money enough <i>to</i> bear great expences.         | Vous n'avez pas assez d'argent <i>pour</i> faire de grandes dépenses. |
| He is too proud, <i>to</i> ask her pardon.                       | Il est trop orgueilleux <i>pour</i> lui demander pardon.              |
| It will be sufficient, <i>to</i> write to me about it.           | Ce sera assez <i>de</i> m'en écrire.                                  |
| It will be sufficient, <i>to</i> tell it him in two words.       | Ce seroit assez <i>de</i> le lui dire en deux mots.                   |
| It is sufficient <i>to</i> warn her.                             | C'est assez <i>de</i> l'avertir.                                      |
| It is too much <i>to</i> ask of me.                              | C'est trop me demander.                                               |
| It was insulting him too much.                                   | C'étoit trop l'insulter.                                              |
| It is too much, <i>to</i> deplore your misfortune.               | C'est trop déplorer votre malheur.                                    |
| Cease from conversing with him; it is doing him too much honour. | Cessez de lui parler; c'est lui faire trop d'honneur.                 |
| [14.] I saw <i>her</i> , and spoke <i>to</i> her.                | Je l'ai vue, et <i>lui</i> ai parlé.                                  |
| That play pleased and charmed the <i>Queen</i> .                 | Cette comédie plut à la Reine et la charma.                           |
| She pleases and charms <i>him</i> .                              | Elle <i>lui</i> plaît et l'enchanté.                                  |

---

## CHAP. VI.

### *Rules and Observations upon the Impersonal Verbs.*

1. **I**MPERSONAL verbs are used only in the third person singular. They are of two kinds; some are impersonal by their nature; and these are never used but in the third person singular; as, *il neige, il pleut*: others are sometimes impersonal, sometimes personal. These are personal when *il*, in French, has a relation to some foregoing noun; as, drawing is a genteel amusement, it becomes young ladies; *le dessin est un amusement honnête, il con-*

vient *aux jeunes demoiselles*: here *il* has a relation to *dessin*. They are impersonal, when *il* has no relation to a foregoing noun; as, *le dessin est un amusement honnête*, *il convient que les jeunes demoiselles s'y appliquent*.

2. The verb *il pleut*, beside the use made of speaking of rain, may be used impersonally in a figurative sense, speaking of several other things which may be supposed to fall like rain: as, *il pleut des pierres*, *il plut de la manne dans le désert*. And in familiar discourse, to express eagerness for departing, we sometimes say proverbially, *je partirai demain, quand il pleuvrait des halberdes*. In this case, when it follows the substantive, it agrees with it in number, according to the FRENCH ACADEMY: thus, speaking of a bloody battle, we may say, *les mousquetares y pleuvoient*; thus the relations of cardinal *Mazarin*, who used to send them a great quantity of money, said, *il faut croire que l'or & l'argent pleuvent en France*.

3. Some personal verbs are used impersonally in the third person singular, though their following nominative is in the plural; as, many occasions are found; *il se trouve bien des occasions*, or *il y a bien des occasions*.

4. *Il y a*, there is, there are, some are, many are, may be followed by a noun in the plural; as, there are few people, who apply themselves to their own language; *il y a peu de gens qui s'appliquent à leur propre langue*.

Sometimes *en* is added to it; in this case it has a relation to some preceding noun; as, *parmi ceux qui apprennent les langues étrangères, il y en a qui négligent leur propre langue*: among those who learn foreign languages, there are some who neglect their own tongue.

When we speak of something present, as if pointed at with the finger, *there is*, is rendered in French by *voilà*; as, *there is a handsome lady*, *voilà une belle dame*.

N. B. *Vaugelas*, and, after him, the abbé *Girard*, will not allow, that *il est* might be used instead of *il y a*. However, they agree, that *il n'est* may sometimes be used instead of *il n'y a*, and sometimes not, as in the following example: there is nothing which pleases me more, *il n'est rien qui me plaise d'avantage*; whereas it is not used in the following: there is nothing but honour in serving our country, *il n'y a que de l'honneur à servir sa patrie*, and not *il n'est que*: but, as grammarians are divided here among themselves, I advise the learner to make use of *il y a* instead of *il est*, and particularly of *il n'y a* instead of *il n'est*, until he is perfect enough in the French tongue, to know in what circumstances the one may be used instead of the other; and even *Vaugelas*, *Corneille*, and the abbé *Girard*, do not agree about such circumstances.

5. The impersonal *il y a* is likewise used to denote a quantity of time. In this case, *ago*, *since*, *these*, and *for*, are rendered in French, by *il y a* beginning the sentence; afterward, comes the number, followed by *que*; as, *I have arrived in London three years ago*; *il y a trois ans*



que *je suis arrivé à Londres*. If the impersonal be transposed, *que* is omitted: as, *je suis arrivé à Londres il y a trois ans*. In an interrogation, *combien y a-t-il que . . .* is commonly used.

6. Verbs construed with the indeterminate pronoun *on* are not properly impersonal, though used only in the third person singular; because *on* may be resolved into a substantive; as, *on parle*, or *les hommes parlent*. It may even be resolved into a pronoun; as, I will see you to-morrow, *on vous verra demain*, or *je vous verrai demain*: consequently all verbs may be preceded by *on*, except those which are impersonal by their nature; as, for example, we never say, *on neige*.

7. The auxiliary verb to be, followed by the adjective *necessary* or *requisite*, when it may be resolved into *we must*, is commonly rendered in French by *il faut*, with the following verb in the infinitive mood; as, it is necessary to, or we must love our neighbour; *il faut aimer son prochain*.

8. *Il faut*, signifying a want, is followed by a substantive, preceded by one of these articles, *un, de, des, du, de la*; as, to write well, we must have good paper, ink, and pens: *pour bien écrire, il faut de bon papier, de bonne encre, et de bonnes plumes*. In this case, when a personal pronoun is expressed in English, it is put, in French, in the third case, between *il* and *faut*; as, he wants books, *il lui faut des livres*.

When a noun is expressed in English, signifying the subject that wants, it is likewise put in the third case, but after the noun which is the object; as, my brother wants books, *il faut des livres à mon frère*.

9. The verbs, *to be necessary, must, and should*, signifying duty, and preceded by a personal pronoun, or any other noun, are rendered in French by the verbs, *il faut, il faudroit, il faudra*, &c. according to the corresponding tense in English; in this case, *il faut* is followed by *que*, then comes the pronoun, or the noun; and the verb following both, is put in the subjunctive mood; as, I must go, *il faut que j'aille*; my brother must go, *il faut que mon frère aille*.

As the English verb *must* is often used personally, and the French verb *falloir* is always impersonal, whenever a noun or pronoun is used as the nominative of the verb *must*, if that verb implies an absolute necessity, it must be translated according to the foregoing rule; as, we must die; such is the law of nature, *il faut que nous mourions; telle est la loi de nature*; but when the obligation may be dispensed with or neglected, instead of *falloir* we may use the verb *devoir* personally, as *mes* must help one another, *les hommes doivent s'entr'aider*.

11. It is, followed by with, is expressed in French by *il en est*, and the two following nouns are put in the second case, and separated by *comme*; as, it is with you as with me, *il en est de vous comme de moi*.

*Rules and Observations upon Impersonal Verbs, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

|                                                                  |                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| [1.] <i>It is</i> very fine weather to day.                      | <i>Il fait</i> très-beau temps aujourd'hui.                        |
| How <i>is</i> the weather?                                       | Quel temps <i>fait-il</i> ?                                        |
| It rains, it snows, it freezes, it thaws, it thunders, it hails. | <i>Il pleut, il neige, il gèle, il dégèle, il tonne, il grêle.</i> |
| <i>It is</i> hot, <i>it is</i> cold.                             | <i>Il fait</i> chaud, <i>il fait</i> froid.                        |
| <i>It is</i> bad weather.                                        | <i>Il fait</i> mauvais temps.                                      |
| <i>It is</i> clear weather.                                      | <i>Il fait</i> un temps clair.                                     |
| <i>It is</i> dark weather.                                       | <i>Il fait</i> un temps obscur.                                    |
| The wind blows.                                                  | <i>Il fait</i> du vent.                                            |
| <i>It has rained</i> to day, as fast as it could pour.           | <i>Il a plu</i> à verse aujourd'hui.                               |
| <i>It snows</i> in great flakes.                                 | <i>Il neige</i> à gros flocons.                                    |
| The moon shines.                                                 | <i>Il fait</i> clair de lune.                                      |
| <i>It is</i> dirty.                                              | <i>Il fait</i> sale.                                               |
| What o'clock <i>is it</i> ?                                      | Quelle heure <i>est-il</i> ?                                       |
| Tell me, if you please, what o'clock <i>it is</i> .              | Dites-moi, s'il vous plaît, quelle heure <i>il est</i> ?           |
| <i>It is</i> twelve o'clock (at noon).                           | <i>Il est</i> midi.                                                |
| <i>It is</i> a quarter after twelve.                             | <i>Il est</i> midi et un quart.                                    |
| <i>It is</i> half an hour after twelve.                          | <i>Il est</i> midi et demi.                                        |
| <i>It is</i> three quarters after twelve.                        | <i>Il est</i> une heure moins un quart.                            |
| <i>It is</i> one o'clock.                                        | <i>Il est</i> une heure.                                           |
| <i>It is</i> a quarter after one.                                | <i>Il est</i> une heure et un quart.                               |
| <i>It is</i> half an hour after one.                             | <i>Il est</i> une heure et demie.                                  |
| <i>It is</i> three quarters after one, &c.                       | <i>Il est</i> deux heures moins un quart, &c.                      |

*It is not late.*

*It is early.*

*It is time to go.*

[3.] *Reports are spread in the city, that . . . .*

*Many opportunities are to be met with.*

[4.] *There are occasions on which delay is of the utmost consequence.*

*There are few people, who know themselves.*

*There are handsome women in London.*

*There is some danger in it.*

*There is no doubt of it.*

*There is some profit to be hoped.*

*Some books are very useful, many are very dangerous for youth.*

*Some women are very capricious.*

*There is a handsome lady.*

*There are fine oranges.*

*These are strange reasons.*

*There is a very rich shop.*

[5.] *How long have you been in England?*

*How long is it since you saw him?*

*How long has he been dead?*

*I have been in England these three years.*

*He has been dead these two years.*

*I have not seen him these four years.*

*Il n'est pas tard.*

*Il est de bonne heure.*

*Il est temps de partir.*

*Il s'est répandu un bruit par la ville, c'est que . . . .*

*Il se trouve bien des occasions.*

*Il y a des occasions où le délai est de la dernière conséquence.*

*Il y a peu de gens qui se connoissent eux-mêmes.*

*Il y a de belles femmes à Londres.*

*Il y a du danger.*

*Il n'y a point de doute.*

*Il y a du profit à espérer.*

*Il y a des livres fort utiles ; il y en a beaucoup de dangereux pour la jeunesse.*

*Il y a des femmes très-capricieuses.*

*Voilà une belle demoiselle.*

*Voilà de belles oranges.*

*Voilà d'étranges raisons.*

*Voilà une boutique très-riche.*

*Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes en Angleterre?*

*Combien y a-t-il que vous ne l'avez vu?*

*Combien y a-t-il qu'il est mort?*

*Il y a trois ans que je suis en Angleterre?*

*Il y a deux ans qu'il est mort.*

*Il y a quatre ans que je ne l'ai vu.*

She has been married *these*  
ten years.

Her husband has been sick  
*for these* five years.

My brother made his for-  
tune twenty years *ago* in  
the East Indies.

Where were you ten years  
*ago*?

[7.] Every man *should* love  
his neighbour.

[8.] I *want* pens.

I *want* nothing now.

He *wants* time to learn his  
lesson.

[9.] You *must* go thither.

She *must* speak to him.

He *must* know it.

She *must* learn French.

They *must* study.

*Are* you not *obliged* to go  
out?

*Is* he not *obliged* to accom-  
pany you?

He *must* not go out.

You *must* hold your tongue.

You *should* go and see him.

*It would be necessary* for you  
to know him.

*Would it not be necessary* for  
her to go thither?

*Would it not be necessary* for  
us to know your reasons?

*It will be necessary* for you  
to speak to his father.

*It will be necessary* for her to  
apply herself to history.

*Il y a* dix ans qu'elle est  
mariée.

*Il y a* cinq ans que son mari  
est malade.

*Il y a* vingt ans que mon  
frère a fait sa fortune  
dans les Indes.

Où étiez-vous *il y a* dix  
ans?

*Il faut* aimer son prochain.

*Il me faut* des plumes.

*Il ne me faut* rien à présent.

*Il lui faut* du temps pour  
apprendre sa leçon.

*Il faut* que vous y alliez.

*Il faut* qu'elle lui parle.

*Il faut* qu'il le sache.

*Il faut* qu'elle apprenne le  
Français.

*Il faut* qu'ils étudient.

*Ne faut-il* pas que vous sor-  
tiez?

*Ne faut-il* pas qu'il vous ac-  
compagne?

*Il ne faut* pas qu'il sorte.

*Il faut* que vous vous taisiez.

*Il faudroit* que vous allassiez  
le voir, ou, vous devriez  
aller le voir.

*Il faudroit* que vous le con-  
nussiez.

*Ne faudroit-il* pas qu'elle y  
allât?

*Ne faudroit-il* pas que nous  
sussions vos raisons?

*Il faudra* que vous parliez à  
son père.

*Il faudra* qu'elle s'applique  
à l'histoire.



|                                                         |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Will it not be necessary for her to prevent him?</i> | <i>Ne faudra-t-il pas qu'elle le prévienne?</i> |
| <i>My brother must go to France.</i>                    | <i>Il faut que mon frère aille en France.</i>   |
| <i>My sister must stay at home.</i>                     | <i>Il faut que ma sœur reste au logis.</i>      |
| <i>[10.] It is with poets as with painters.</i>         | <i>Il en est des poètes comme des peintres.</i> |
| <i>It is with you as with me.</i>                       | <i>Il en est de vous comme de moi.</i>          |

## CHAP. VII.

*Rules and Observations upon the Participles.*

**P**ARTICIPLES are either active or passive; therefore I shall take notice of them separately in the two following sections:

## SECTION I.

*The Active or Present Participle.*

1. The active or present participle is always indeclinable: as, a woman fearing God, and loving her husband; *une femme craignant Dieu et aimant son mari*. Except in a very few law terms.

2. We now seldom make use of a participle active, except *étant* and *ayant*, used before a participle passive; as, having met with his brother, he spoke to him; *ayant rencontré son frère, il lui parla*. Except too when it is preceded by *en*; as, in going, or while I was going, *en allant*; in eating, or while I was eating, *en mangeant*. Some call this a gerund. However it matters very little what it is called.

*En*, In this case, may be translated into English, by *while*, or *when*, which may likewise be rendered in French by *comme*, *lorsque*, or *quand*; the first of these requires the following verb in the imperfect; the other two require it in the present, or in any other tense; as, I never speak while eating, or while, or when, I eat; *je ne parle jamais, lorsque ou quand, je mange*, and not *comme je mange*; but we say, as I was at dinner, he came to see me; *comme je dînois, li vint me voir*.

3. Some participles are, by use, become adjectives, and some substantives : as, a detracting man, a detracting woman ; *un homme médisant, une femme médisante* or *un médisant, une médisante*. In such a case they are declinable.

4. According to the present usage, the present participle governs no case whatever, but we resolve it into a tense of the verb, with the pronoun relative preceding it. Thus, instead of saying with *Vaugelas*, in his remarks on the French tongue, these stuffs are not at all like those I saw yesterday, *ces étoffes ne sont pas approchantes de celles que je vis hier* ; or, his temper is so repugnant to mine, *son humeur est tellement répugnante à la mienne*, we say, *ces étoffes n'approchent pas de celles que je vis hier, son humeur répugne tellement à la mienne*. Even in the case of the first rule, instead of saying, *c'étoit une femme craignant Dieu et aimant son mari*, it is better to say, *c'étoit une femme qui craignoit Dieu et aimoit son mari*.

## SECTION II.

### *The Passive or Past Participle.*

To show exactly in what instances the participle passive or past is declinable or not, is one of the greatest difficulties of the French tongue. The following observations will set this nicety, hitherto so perplexed, in a clear light.

I. The passive participle is declinable, 1st, when it is used adjectively ; as men despised, *des hommes méprisés* ; they are loved, *ils sont aimés, ou elles sont aimées*.

2dly, It is declinable, when it is preceded by a noun or pronoun which it governs in the first case ; as, the letters which I have received, *les lettres que j'ai reçues*.

3dly, When, with the auxiliary verb *être*, it forms a neuter, reciprocal, or reflected verb, not governing a first case, or followed by any other word making but one sense with it ; as, they have addicted themselves to trade, *il se sont adonnés au négoce*. But we do not say, she put herself to death, *elle s'est donnée la mort* ; because *la mort* is a first case. If the verb has no governed word after it, the practice of the rule is still more certain.

The difficulty is to know whether the participle, followed by an infinitive mood, ought to agree with the foregoing noun or pronoun. As no grammarian explains this matter in a clear and intelligible man-

ner \*, and it is besides of great use, I shall give some observations upon it in the following rule.

II. The participle, followed by an infinitive mood, is declinable, if it govern the foregoing noun or pronoun; if the noun or pronoun be governed by the infinitive mood, the participle is indeclinable: this rule is plain and certain. Now to know whether the participle, or the infinitive mood, govern the foregoing noun or pronoun, attend to the following observations.

1st. If the infinitive be preceded by a preposition, the participle governs the noun or pronoun, if the noun or pronoun may be put, without altering the sense, between the participle and the infinitive; as, the soldiers whom they have compelled to march, *les soldats qu'on a contraints de marcher*; for we may say, they have compelled the soldiers to march; *on a contraint les soldats de marcher*. Again, the history which I gave you to read, *l'histoire que je vous ai donnée à lire*; for we may likewise say, I gave you the history to read; *je vous ai donné l'histoire à lire*.

On the contrary, the infinitive governs the foregoing noun or pronoun, if this cannot be put between the participle and the infinitive: as, we never ought to swerve from the good way, which we began to follow; *il ne faut jamais s'écarter de la bonne rout que l'on a commencé à suivre*; we cannot say, *on a commencé la bonne route à suivre*; but, we may say, *on a commencé à suivre la bonne route*.

2dly. If the infinitive be not preceded by a preposition, the participle governs the foregoing noun or pro-

\* Grammarians give false and inadequate rules about this matter. They say, commonly, that the participle passive is indeclinable, when a pure infinitive follows it; by a pure infinitive they understand an infinitive used without a preposition or any other word. How much they are in the wrong appears by the examples of the second rule.

Some say, that "the participle is indeclinable, when the pronoun is governed by a verb coming after the tense compound, and not by the tense compound." This rule is not clear, and leaves a learner in darkness: neither is he able to know when the pronoun is thus governed; consequently this rule is very inadequate.

According to others, the participle is indeclinable, when a verb in the infinitive immediately follows. This rule is false in many cases.

noun; if the infinitive may be turned into the present participle in English, or rendered in French by *qui*, and the imperfect of the indicative mood, without altering the sense; as, I saw her painting; *je l'ai vue peindre*: I heard her sing; *je l'ai entendue chanter*: the ladies whom I saw passing; *les dames que j'ai vues passer*: the soldiers whom I saw going; *les soldats que j'ai vus partir*. In all the foregoing examples I may say, without altering the sense, *je l'ai vue qui peignoit*, *je l'ai entendue qui chantoit*, &c.

On the contrary, the infinitive governs the noun or pronoun, when, the infinitive cannot be turned into the present participle, or rendered by *qui* and the imperfect tense; thus, speaking of a lady whose picture was drawn, we say, I saw her picture drawn; *je l'ai vu peindre*: of a song, I heard it sung; *je l'ai entendu chanter*.

The verbs *faire* and *laisser*, followed by an infinitive, form with it a sort of compound verb, and the participle is indeclinable; as, that woman whom you have put to death, *cette femme que vous avez fait mourir*; that opportunity which you have suffered to escape, *cette occasion que vous avez laissé échapper*.

III. The passive participle is indeclinable. 1st. When it is immediately followed by *que* or *qui*; as, the consequence which I intended, that you should draw from it; *la conséquence que j'ai prétendu que vous en tirassiez*.

2dly. When the participle and the auxiliary verb are used impersonally: as, the hot weather we have had; *les chaleurs qu'il a fait*.

3dly. When it cannot be joined to a substantive as it's adjective; therefore the participles *parlé*, *agi*, *été*, *craint*, *plaint*, &c., are never declined.

4thly. When it is followed by it's governed case; as, I have received the letters; *j'ai reçu les lettres*.

5thly. The participles *pu* from *pouvoir*, *voulu* from *vouloir*, are indeclinable, either because they are not used adjectively, or, because an infinitive is understood, which governs the preceding noun: as, I made all the endeavours I could; *j'ai fait tous les efforts que j'ai pu*; *faire* is understood after *pu*.



IV. It is the opinion of some grammarians, that when the subject or nominative case of the verb comes after it, the participle is indeclinable; but good authors, such as the abbés *Girard* and *d'Oliver*, Messieurs *Duclos*, *Marmontel*, &c., make it declinable; as, there is a good lesson our misanthrope has received: *voilà une bonne leçon qu'a reçue notre misanthrope*; *Marmontel*: the impression which the recital of your misfortunes made on me; *l'impression que m'a faite le récit de vos malheurs*; *ibid.*

The participles in the foregoing examples are declinable, because, according to the second observation, the foregoing nouns are governed by the participles.

V. According to the actual use, the participle is declinable, when it is followed by an adjective which it governs, and which has a relation to a preceding noun, and makes a part of it: as, *Amasis* is the only one of the Egyptian kings, who conquered the isle of Cyprus, and rendered it tributary; *Amasis est le seul des rois d'Egypte qui ait conquis l'île de Cypre, et qui l'ait rendue tributaire*; *Rollin.*

VI. According to the second observation we write, the ladies whom you came to see; *les dames que vous êtes venu voir*, because the foregoing noun is governed by the infinitive.

Though a personal conjunctive pronoun be put before *allé* or *venu*, followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, the participles *allé* and *venu* must agree with the person to which they relate: thus we write, she came to see you; *elle vous est venue voir*. But it is better to transpose the pronoun, and put it immediately before the word that governs it, *elle est venue vous voir*.

*N. B.* All the preceding rules are conformable to the present usage; all the grammarians and the best authors having agreed respecting them for the last sixty years. Every rule inconsistent with these is generally deemed erroneous.

*Rules and Observations on Participles exemplified  
for the Scholar's Practice.*

|                                                                           |                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| [Sect. I. 1.] A man <i>fearing</i> God.                                   | Un homme <i>qui craint</i> Dieu.                                              |
| A woman <i>loving</i> her husband.                                        | Une femme <i>qui aime</i> son mari.                                           |
| A lady <i>applying herself</i> to study.                                  | Une demoiselle <i>qui s'applique</i> à l'étude.                               |
| [2.] He died <i>while eating</i> his breakfast.                           | Il mourut <i>en déjeunant</i> .                                               |
| Why do you speak <i>while you are eating</i> ?                            | Pourquoi parlez-vous <i>en mangeant</i> ?                                     |
| I saw him <i>while I walked</i> in the Park.                              | Je le vis <i>en me promenant</i> au Parc.                                     |
| [3.] Fortune is <i>fickle</i> .<br>She is a <i>charming</i> lady.         | La fortune est <i>changeante</i> .<br>C'est une demoiselle <i>charmante</i> . |
| She is a <i>slandorous</i> woman.                                         | C'est une femme <i>médisante</i> .                                            |
| [4.] His [ <i>or her</i> ] temper is so <i>repugnant</i> to mine, that .. | Son humeur <i>répugne</i> tellement à la mienne, que ..                       |
| These are reasons <i>proving</i> the same thing.                          | Ce sont des raisons <i>qui concluent</i> la même chose.                       |
| [Sect. II. 1.] The idle are <i>despised</i> .                             | Les paresseux sont <i>méprisés</i> .                                          |
| She was <i>endowed</i> , in her youth, with wit and beauty.               | Elle étoit, dans sa jeunesse, <i>dotée</i> d'esprit et de beauté.             |
| Unpolite men are <i>hated</i> by all.                                     | Les impolis sont <i>haïs</i> de tout le monde.                                |
| He is <i>cherished</i> by the king.                                       | Il est <i>chéri</i> du roi.                                                   |
| Have you seen the stockings I <i>bought</i> ?                             | Avez-vous vu les bas <i>que j'ai achetés</i> ?                                |
| I have seen the shirts you <i>bought</i> .                                | J'ai vu les chemises <i>que vous avez achetées</i> .                          |
| I shall speak to him of the affair you <i>communicated</i> to me.         | Je lui parlerai de l'affaire <i>que vous m'avez communiquée</i> .             |
| I have read the letter you <i>wrote</i> to me.                            | J'ai lu la lettre <i>que vous m'avez écrite</i> .                             |

- Have you read the books I *lent* you ?  
 It is a piece of news I have not *read* in any newspaper.  
 I have not yet read the papers you *sent* me.  
 I had no time to give you an answer to the letters you *wrote* to me.  
 These are not the same hats as I *saw*.  
 You do not know the trouble I *had* to persuade her.  
 Do you know the reasons he *told* me ?  
 The lace you *bought* is very fine.  
 I have not learned the lesson you *gave* me.  
 You speak to him of sciences, which he has never *learned*.  
 You speak of a woman I *knew*.  
 These are things I never *foresaw*.  
 You talk of an affair I have not *forgotten*.  
 This is as good fruit as you have ever *eaten*.  
 This is the best liquor I ever *drank*.  
 These are the most honest people you ever *knew*.  
 The jewels you *showed* me are very rich.  
 The woman he has *married*
- Avez-vous lu les livres *que* je vous ai *prêtés* ?  
 C'est une nouvelle *que* je n'ai *lue* dans aucun papier de nouvelles.  
 Je n'ai pas encore lu les papiers *que* vous m'avez *envoyés*.  
 Je n'ai pas eu le temps de faire réponse aux lettres *que* vous m'avez *écrites*.  
 Ce ne sont pas les mêmes chapeaux *que* j'ai *vus*.  
 Vous ne savez pas la peine *que* j'ai *eue* à la persuader.  
 Savez-vous les raisons *qu'il* m'a *dites* ?  
 La dentelle *que* vous avez *achetée* est très-belle.  
 Je n'ai point appris la leçon *que* vous m'avez *donnée*.  
 Vous lui parlez de sciences *qu'il* n'a jamais *appries*.  
 Vous parlez d'une femme *que* j'ai *connue*.  
 Ce sont des choses *que* je n'ai jamais *prévues*.  
 Vous parlez d'un affaire *que* je n'ai pas *oubliée*.  
 Ce sont d'aussi bons fruits *que* vous avez jamais *man-gés*.  
 C'est la meilleure liqueur *que* j'ai jamais *bue*.  
 Ce sont les plus honnêtes gens *que* vous avez jamais *connus*.  
 Les bijoux *que* vous m'avez *montrés* sont très-riches.  
 La femme *qu'il* a *épousée*,

- has brought him a handsome fortune.      lui a apporté un bien considérable.
- There are the books you lent me.      Voilà les livres *que* vous m'avez prêtés.
- I have found my gloves again, which I had lost.      J'ai retrouvé mes gants *que* j'avois perdus.
- It is a thought I have read somewhere.      C'est une pensée *que* j'ai lue quelque part.
- She has applied herself to the French tongue.      Elle s'est appliquée à la langue Française.
- They have applied themselves to trade.      Ils se sont adonnés au commerce.
- They have ruined themselves by foolish expenses.      Ils se sont ruinés par de folles dépenses.
- They have drowned themselves.      Ils se sont noyés.
- The garrison has surrendered at discretion.      La garnison s'est rendue à discrétion.
- She gave herself up to despair.      Elle s'est abandonnée au désespoir.
- She has seen herself betrayed by her own relations.      Elle s'est vue trahie de ses propres parens.
- They have found themselves surrounded by their enemies.      Ils se sont trouvés environnés par leurs ennemis.
- [2.] The soldiers whom they have constrained to submit.      Les soldats *qu'on* a contraints de se soumettre.
- What is become of the books, which I gave you to read?      Que sont devenus les livres *que* je vous ai donnés à lire?
- The lesson, which I gave you to learn is not difficult.      La leçon *que* je vous ai donnée à apprendre n'est pas difficile.
- Where are the letters, which I gave you to write?      Où sont les lettres *que* je vous ai données à écrire?
- I expect the ladies, whom I invited to dinner to day.      J'attends les dames *que* j'ai priées de venir dîner aujourd'hui.



We ought not to swerve  
from the good way, which  
we *began* to follow.

The language that you *began*  
to learn is very use-  
ful.

The lady whom you *left off*  
visiting is very witty.

The history which I *began*  
to read is very entertain-  
ing.

I *saw* her painting.

I *heard* her sing.

The ladies whom I *saw*  
passing.

The soldiers whom I *saw*  
going.

I *saw* them arriving.

I *saw* her picture drawn.

It is a song, which I *heard*  
sung this week.

Several ladies came to the  
door, I *did not suffer* them  
to be refused.

The house, which he *or-  
dered* to be built, is very  
fine and well situate.

What news have you *heard*?

This is the news I have  
*heard*.

It is a thing, that I have  
*seen* done.

Have you seen the new  
suit of clothes, which he  
*ordered* to be made for  
him?

Il ne faut jamais s'écarter  
de la bonne route *que* l'on  
a *commencé* à suivre.

La langue *que* vous avez  
*commencé* d'apprendre, est  
fort utile.

La demoiselle *que* vous avez  
*cessé* de voir est très-spi-  
rituelle.

L'histoire *que* j'ai *commencé*  
à lire est très-amusante.

Je l'ai *vue* peindre.

Je l'ai *entendue* chanter.

Les dame *que* j'ai *unes*  
passer.

Les soldats *que* j'ai *vus* par-  
tir.

Je *les ai vus* arriver.

Je l'ai *vu* peindre.

C'est une chanson *que* j'ai  
*entendu* chanter cette se-  
maine.

Plusieurs dames se sont  
présentées à la porte,  
je ne les ai pas *laissé*  
renvoyer.

La maison *qu'il a fait* bâtir,  
est très-belle et très-bien  
située.

Quelle nouvelle avez-vous  
*entendu* dire?

Voilà la nouvelle *que* j'ai  
*entendu* raconter.

C'est un chose *que* j'ai *vu*  
faire.

Avez-vous vu l'habit neuf  
*qu'il a fait* faire?

- [3.] The books I have *ordered* to be sent to me. Les livres que j'ai *ordonné* qu'on m'envoyât.
- The lesson which I *commanded* that you should learn. La leçon que j'ai *commandé* que vous apprissiez.
- The consequences which I *intended* that you should draw from it. La conséquence que j'ai *prétendu* que vous en tirassiez.
- I have been ill during the hot weather we *have had*. J'ai été malade pendant les chaleurs qu'il a *fait*.
- The rain we *have had* this week has spoiled the roads. La pluie qu'il a *fait* cette semaine-ci a gâté les chemins.
- I *have read* those books. J'ai *lu* ces livres-là.
- I *received* your letter. J'ai *reçu* votre lettre.
- Have you *seen* the Queen? Avez-vous *vu* la Reine?
- Why have you not *translated* your fable? Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas *traduit* votre fable?
- She has not *learned* her lesson. Elle n'a pas *appris* sa leçon.
- She *used* her best endeavours. Elle a *fait* tous les efforts qu'elle a *pu*.
- I have *granted* her all the pleasures she *desired*. Je lui ai *accordé* tous les plaisirs qu'elle a *voulu*.
- [4.] The impression which the recital of your misfortunes *made* on me. L'impression que m'a *faite* le récit de vos malheurs.
- The trouble which your law suit *gave* me. La peine que m'a *donnée* votre procès.
- The letters which your brother *wrote* to me. Les lettres que m'a *écrites* Monsieur votre frère.
- The friends which your mother *procured* me. Les amis que m'a *procurés* Madame votre mère.
- The surprise which his presence *occasioned* me. La surprise que m'a *occasionnée* sa présence.
- [5.] The English *rendered* themselves masters of Quebec. Les Anglois *se sont rendus* maîtres de Québec.
- They have *rendered* themselves famous in war. Ils *se sont rendus* fameux dans la guerre.

|                                                                   |                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| She has <i>rendered</i> herself celebrated by her wit and beauty. | Elle s'est <i>rendue</i> célèbre par son esprit et par sa beauté.             |
| The garrison has <i>surrendered</i> prisoners of war.             | La garnison s'est <i>rendue</i> prisonnière de guerre.                        |
| She is <i>come</i> to see us.                                     | Elle est <i>venue</i> nous voir, <i>ou</i> elle nous est <i>venue</i> voir.   |
| They are <i>gone</i> to see him.                                  | Elles sont <i>allées</i> le voir, <i>ou</i> elles le sont <i>allées</i> voir. |
| They are <i>come</i> to see me.                                   | Elles sont <i>venues</i> me voir, <i>ou</i> elles me sont <i>venues</i> voir. |

---



---

## CHAP. VIII.

### *Rules and Observations upon Adverbs.*

1. **A**DVERBS, if simple, are commonly placed before adjectives and participles; as, this wine is very good, *ce vin est très-bon*. When they are compound, they are commonly placed after; as, he is arrived seasonably, *il est arrivé à propos*.

2. When adverbs, simple or compound, are joined to a verb, they are commonly placed after it; as, she loves him tenderly, *elle l'aime tendrement*. But when the adverb is simple, and joined to a verb in a compound tense, it may be placed before or after the participle, though it is better to place it before; as, *elle l'a tendrement aimé*. Except *davantage*, more, which is always put after the participle.

The following adverbs, *bien, mieux, trop, mal, fort, toujours, jamais*, and some others, are placed between the auxiliary and the participle: and when *jamais* or *toujours* meets with another adverb, it is always placed first? as he always spoke well of you, *il a toujours bien parlé de vous*.

3. *Beaucoup, peu, trop, assez*, and similar adverbs of quantity, take sometimes before them the particles *de* or *à*, in the manner of nouns; as, it is the custom of many people, *c'est la coutume de beaucoup de gens*: of few people, *de peu de gens*: that happens to too many

people, *cela arrive à trop de gens*: to too few people, à trop peu de gens.

4. In a negative sentence we generally make use of two negative words; as, *ne-plus*, no more; *ne-point*, not at all; *ne-pas*, not; *ne-rien*, nothing; *ne-jamais*, never; *ne-nullement*, by no means; *ne-personne*, *ne-pas-un*, *ne-aucun*, nobody; &c.

5. *Ne*, which is the first negation, always follows the subject of the verb, and whatever depends on it, if the subject be a noun; as, man, being born feeble, is never free from trouble; *l'homme étant né faible, n'est jamais exempt de peine*. If the subject be a pronoun personal, and the sentence interrogative, the sentence begins with *ne*; as, do not you know? *ne savez-vous pas?* In compound tenses, the second negation is always put between the auxiliary and the verb; as, I have not read your book, *je n'ai pas lu votre livre*. If the verb be in the infinitive mood, the two negatives come before it; as, not to tell you a falsehood, *pour ne pas vous dire un mensonge*.

6. We make use of the particle *ne*, without it's second negative word *pas* or *point*, in the following cases:

1st. When the negative *ni* follows; as, I neither love nor hate him, *je ne l'aime ni ne le hais*.

2dly. After the conjunctions *à moins que*, unless; *de peur que*, de crainte que, lest, or for fear that; as, unless he comes; *à moins qu'il ne vienne*.

3dly. After *que* preceded by the words *empêcher*, to hinder, or keep from; *craindre*, to fear; and others expressing fear in mentioning an effect not desired; as, he is afraid that he will come to day, *il craint qu'il ne vienne aujourd'hui*.

But if we wish, that the thing spoken of should happen, then the verb that follows *craindre*, or any other verb, expressing fear, must be attended with two negatives; as, he is afraid, that he will not come to day, *il craint qu'il ne vienne pas aujourd'hui*.

4thly. Before *que*, taken in the sense of *sinon*, beside, nothing but, only; as, I desire no recompense only, or but, the pleasure of obliging you, *je ne désire pour récompense que le plaisir de vous obliger*.

5thly. After *que ne*, taken in the sense of why not; as, why do not you answer, *que ne répondez-vous?*

6thly. After *ne savoir* used for *ne pouvoir*, or when it implies an uncertainty of the mind: as, I do not know whether he will succeed, *je ne sais s'il réussira*.

But, if it imply a full ignorance of the thing, it commonly requires two negatives; as, I do not know, whether he be come, *je ne sais pas s'il est venu*.

7thly. After the verbs *oser*, *cesser*, and *pouvoir*, used negatively; as, I dare not write to him, *je n'ose lui écrire*. In an interrogative phrase, a second negation is commonly added: as, dare you not write to him? *n'osa-tous pas lui écrire?*



8thly. After the verb *il y a*, followed by a compound of the present tense in a negative sentence; as, I have not been in Paris these ten years; *il y a dix ans que je n'ai été à Paris*: even if it be followed by any other tense, the second negative is still omitted; as, I had not been in Paris for a year, *il y avoit un an que je n'avois été à Paris*.

9thly. When, in a negative sentence, the particle *de* signifies a part of time: as, I will not see him for a year; *je ne le verrai d'un an*.

10thly. There are some expressions, in which we indiscriminately make use of a single or double negative, particularly after *si*: as, *si vous ne voulez m'y conduire, or si vous ne voulez pas m'y conduire*; if you will not carry me thither: *si vous ne venez cette semaine, or si vous ne venez pas cette semaine*; if you do not come this week, &c.

### Rules and Observations upon Adverbs, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.

[1.] I saw him *very often*.

You are in *great haste*.

[2.] You are come *very seasonably*.

*At present*, let us see.

For the present, I am *very easy*.

*Now*, I will tell you.

Come *to day* and see me.

*Quick*, make haste.

I went *yesterday* to the play.

I saw her *the day before yesterday*.

I have known him *formerly*.

He arrived *lately*.

She died *not long ago*.

You must write to her *before*.

I shall speak to you *to morrow*.

I shall have done *after to-morrow*.

Come back *soon*.

*Henceforward* you shall be my friend.

Je l'ai vu *très-souvent*.

Vous êtes *très-pressé*.

Vous êtes arrivé *très à propos*.

*A présent*, voyons.

Pour le présent, je suis *très-tranquille*.

*Maintenant*, je vous dirai.

Venez me voir *aujourd'hui*.

*Vite*, dépêchez-vous.

Je fus *hier* à la comédie.

Je la vis *avant-hier*.

Je l'ai connu *autrefois*.

Il arriva *dernièrement*.

Elle mourut *depuis peu*.

Il faut lui écrire *auparavant*.

Je vous parlerai *demain*.

J'aurai fait *après-demain*.

Revenez *bientôt*.

Vous serez *désormais* mon ami.

|                                                           |                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Henceforth</i> it will always be so.                   | <i>Dorénavant</i> , il en sera toujours de même.    |
| <i>At first</i> he spoke thus.                            | <i>D'abord</i> il parla ainsi.                      |
| I have been <i>often</i> astonished.                      | J'ai été <i>souvent</i> étonné.                     |
| She died <i>suddenly</i> .                                | Elle mourut <i>subitement</i> .                     |
| Do you <i>sometimes</i> read romances?                    | Lisez-vous <i>quelquefois</i> des romans?           |
| I <i>very seldom</i> read any.                            | J'en lis <i>très-rarement</i> .                     |
| <i>On a sudden</i> he presented himself before my eyes.   | <i>Soudain</i> il se présenta devant mes yeux.      |
| I shall come back, <i>at the latest</i> , by ten o'clock. | Je reviendrai à dix heures, <i>au plus tard</i> .   |
| Run thither <i>with all speed</i> .                       | Courez-y <i>au plus vite</i> .                      |
| I <i>never</i> consented to it.                           | Je n'y ai <i>jamais</i> consenti.                   |
| I shall <i>always</i> be faithful to you.                 | Je vous serai <i>toujours</i> fidèle.               |
| It is all over.                                           | C'en est fait <i>pour toujours</i> .                |
| She torments him <i>continually</i> .                     | Elle le tourmente <i>continuellement</i> .          |
| I shall speak to him <i>at leisure</i> .                  | Je lui parlerai <i>à loisir</i> .                   |
| I <i>commonly</i> breakfast at nine o'clock.              | Je déjeûne <i>ordinairement</i> à neuf heures.      |
| At what o'clock do you <i>commonly</i> dine?              | A quelle heure dînez-vous <i>communément</i> .      |
| We dine <i>almost always</i> at three o'clock.            | Nous dînons <i>presque toujours</i> à trois heures. |
| I <i>hardly ever</i> go out before dinner.                | Je ne sors <i>presque jamais</i> avant le dîner.    |
| I shall meet him <i>one time or other</i> .               | Je le rencontrerai <i>tôt ou tard</i> .             |
| You go to bed <i>too soon</i> .                           | Vous allez <i>trop tôt</i> au lit.                  |
| You rise <i>too late</i> .                                | Vous vous levez <i>trop tard</i> .                  |
| Rise <i>betimes</i> .                                     | Levez-vous <i>de bonne heure</i> .                  |
| Have you not seen him <i>yet</i> ?                        | Ne l'avez-vous <i>pas encore</i> vu?                |
| We shall be in the country <i>then</i> .                  | Nous serons <i>alors</i> à la campagne.             |
| <i>Then</i> we shall make ourselves merry.                | <i>Pour lors</i> nous nous divertirons.             |
| <i>From that time</i> I perceived his cheating tricks.    | <i>Dès-lors</i> je m'aperçus de ses fourberies.     |

|                                                     |                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| I have not seen her <i>since</i> .                  | Je ne l'ai pas vue <i>depuis</i> .                     |
| <i>When</i> will you come?                          | <i>Quand</i> viendrez-vous?                            |
| <i>Now and then</i> we play at cards.               | Nous jouons aux cartes <i>de temps en temps</i> .      |
| We have made ourselves merry <i>all the night</i> . | Nous nous sommes divertis <i>toute la nuit</i> .       |
| He has been robbed <i>at noon-day</i> .             | Il a été volé <i>en plein jour, ou en plein midi</i> . |
| I shall send it you <i>the first opportunity</i> .  | Je vous l'enverrai <i>au premier jour</i> .            |
| I shall be ready to serve you <i>at all times</i> . | Je serai prêt <i>en tout temps</i> à vous servir.      |
| <i>Where</i> are you going?                         | Où allez-vous?                                         |
| <i>Whence</i> do you come?                          | D'où venez-vous?                                       |
| <i>Which</i> way do you go?                         | Par où avez-vous passé?                                |
| Come <i>hither</i> .                                | Venez <i>ici</i> .                                     |
| Go <i>hence</i> .                                   | Sortez <i>d'ici</i> .                                  |
| Come <i>this way</i> .                              | Venez <i>par ici</i> .                                 |
| Stay <i>there</i> .                                 | Restez <i>là</i> .                                     |
| Do not stir <i>hence</i> .                          | Ne bougez pas <i>de là</i> .                           |
| Go <i>that way</i> .                                | Aidez <i>par là</i> .                                  |
| Look <i>up</i> .                                    | Regardez <i>là haut</i> .                              |
| Go <i>up stairs</i> .                               | Allez <i>en haut</i> .                                 |
| Your pen is down <i>here</i> .                      | Votre plume est <i>ici dessous</i> .                   |
| See <i>yonder</i> that beautiful flower.            | Regardez <i>là bas</i> cette belle fleur.              |
| She comes <i>from above</i> .                       | Elle vient <i>d'en haut</i> .                          |
| I come <i>from below</i> .                          | Je viens <i>d'en bas</i> .                             |
| Take it <i>by the top</i> .                         | Prenez-le <i>par en haut</i> .                         |
| Hold it <i>by the bottom</i> .                      | Tenez-le <i>par en bas</i> .                           |
| This old house is very fine <i>within</i> .         | Cette vieille maison est très-belle <i>en dedans</i> . |
| This house is very fine <i>without</i> .            | Celle-ci est très-belle <i>en dehors</i> .             |
| <i>How far</i> shall we go?                         | <i>Jusqu'où</i> irons-nous?                            |
| I have read this book <i>as far as this</i> .       | J'ai lu ce livre <i>jusqu'ici</i> .                    |
| Let us read <i>as far as this</i> .                 | Lisons <i>jusque-là</i> .                              |
| You will find him <i>hereabout</i> .                | Vous le trouverez <i>aux environs</i> .                |

You go *very far*.  
 He lives *hard by*.  
 I bought it *just by*.  
 I have followed him *close*.  
 Come *nearer*.  
 Go *before*, I will follow you.  
 Walk *behind*.  
 You will *nowhere* find the like.  
 Put this *over* and that *under*.  
 He struck me *behind*.  
 You would be rich *elsewhere*.  
 You will be contented *nowhere*.  
 She will be admired *every where*.  
 His house is *on this side*.  
 His garden is *on that side*.  
 They seek for him *on all sides*.  
 They have agreed *on both sides*.  
 He runs *hither and thither*.  
 She goes *up and down*.  
 Go *on the right*.  
 Do not go *on the left*.  
 Go *straight along*.  
 He fell *all along* into the dirt.  
 They went *together* to the coffee-house.  
 We treat one another *by turns*.  
 Let us drink *about*.  
 Do not speak *all at once*.  
 They run *helter skelter*.  
 They ran *in a crowd* to see the King.  
 You turn every thing *topsy turvy*.  
 And he *likewise*.  
 Give him *ever so little* of it,

Vous allez *bien loin*.  
 Il demeure *tout proche*.  
 Je l'ai acheté *ici près*.  
 Je l'ai suivi *de près*.  
 Approchez-vous *de plus près*.  
 Allez *devant*, je vous suivrai.  
 Marchez *derrière*.  
 Vous n'en trouverez *nulle part* de semblable.  
 Mettez ceci *dessus*, et cela *dessous*.  
 Il m'a frappé *par derrière*.  
 Vous seriez riche *ailleurs*.  
 Vous ne serez content *nulle part*.  
 Elle sera admirée *partout*.  
 Sa maison est *en-deçà*.  
 Son jardin est *au-delà*.  
 On le cherche *de tous côtés*.  
 Il se sont accordés *de part et d'autre*.  
 Il court *de côté et d'autre*.  
 Elle va *ça et là*.  
 Allez *à droite*.  
 N'allez pas *à gauche*.  
 Allez *tout droit*.  
 Il tomba *tout de son long* dans la boue.  
 Ils sont allés *ensemble* au café.  
 Nous nous traitons *tour à tour*.  
 Buons *à la ronde*.  
 Ne parlez pas tous *à la fois*.  
 Ils courent *pêle-mêle*.  
 Ils coururent *en foule* pour voir le Roi.  
 Vous mettez tout *sens dessus dessous*.  
 Et lui aussi, ou *pareillement*.  
 Donnez-lui *en tant soit peu*.



You give him *a great deal*.

Give her but *little*.

I have *not much* of it.

Have you *enough*?

I have eaten *sufficiently*.

You gave me *too much*.

You gave him *too little*.

*By little and little* he will become a doctor.

Do you owe him *so much*?

I have owed him *more*.

I may have it *at another place* for less.

I have been, *at most*, twice at her house.

Do not fail to write to her *at least*.

You bought it *too dear*.

I have not sold it *him dear*.

I am *infinitely* obliged to you.

He was almost killed.

You must ask it of him *by all means*.

She is *tolerably well*.

*Why* do you not answer me?

*How* is your sister?

She is *very well*.

She has been *very well*, since she went into the country.

I am *admirably well*.

My mother is *very ill*.

You have done *wisely*.

You accuse me *falsely*.

He *thoroughly* understands the French language.

Vous lui en donnez *beaucoup*.

Ne lui en donnez *guères*.

Je n'en ai *pas beaucoup*.

En avez-vous *assez*?

J'ai mangé *suffisamment*.

Vous m'en avez *trop* donné.

Vous lui en avez donné *trop peu*.

*Peu à peu* il deviendra docteur.

Lui devez-vous *tant*?

Je lui ai dû *davantage*.

Je l'aurai *ailleurs* à moins.

J'ai été deux fois chez elle, *tout au plus*.

*Au moins*, ne manquez pas de lui écrire.

Vous l'avez acheté *trop cher*.

Je ne le lui ai pas vendu *cher*.

Je vous suis *infinitement* obligé.

Il fut *presque* tué.

Il faut que vous le lui demandiez *absolument*.

Elle se porte *passablement bien*.

*Pourquoi* ne me répondez-vous pas?

*Comment* se porte mademoiselle votre sœur?

Elle se porte *très-bien*.

Elle se porte *très-bien*, depuis qu'elle est à la campagne.

Je me porte *parfaitement bien*.

Ma mère se porte *très-mal*.

Vous avez agi *sagement*.

Vous m'accusez *à faux*.

Il sait le François *à fond*.

You will *hardly* persuade her. *A peine* la persuaderez-vous.

She consented to it *with reluctance*. Elle y consentit *à regret*.

She went *against her will*. Elle y est allée *à contre-cœur*.

I agree to it *heartily*. J'y consens *de bon cœur*.

She is *secure from all danger*. Elle est *à couvert* de tout danger.

I have told you my sentiments *openly*. Je vous ai dit mon sentiment *à découvert*.

He has given us a description *to the life*. Il nous a fait une description *au naturel*.

He fell *upon his back*. Il tomba *à la renverse*.

They went *groping* along. Ils allèrent *à tâtons*.

You have put on your stockings the *wrong side outward*. Vous avez mis vos bas *à l'envers*.

He did it *on purpose*. Il l'a fait *exprès*.

I did not do it *designedly*. Je ne l'ai pas fait *à dessein*.

Do you speak *in earnest*? Parlez-vous *de bonne foi*?

I tell it you *seriously*. Je vous le dis *sérieusement*.

I did it *in a joke*. Je le fis *pour rire*.

I said it *in jest*. Je l'ai dit *pour badiner*.

She said it *in jest*. Elle l'a dit *en badinant*.

You have done it *in a hurry*. Vous l'avez fait *à la hâte*.

I have done it *unawares*. Je l'ai fait *par mégarde*.

You speak *at random*. Vous parlez *au hasard*.

Let the worst come to the worst, you can only lose your labour. *Au pis aller*, vous ne pouvez perdre que votre peine.

Their lodgings are *small*. Ils sont logés *à l'étroit*.

I shall *ingenuously* confess it. Je l'avouerai *de bonne foi*.

I won it *fairly*. Je l'ai gagné *de bon jeu*.

I am fully persuaded of it. J'en suis *tout-à-fait* persuadé.

He would *by all means* make me stay at dinner. Il voulut *à toute force* me faire rester à dîner.

Your book is, *in all respects*, better. Votre livre est meilleur *à tous égards*.

I warn you *as a friend*. Je vous avertis *en ami*.

Let us settle our affairs *amicably*. Régions nos affaires *à l'amiable*.

He awaked *suddenly*.  
 Let us live *in peace*.  
 You may sleep *quietly*.  
 Will you return *empty hand-*  
*ed*?

Make *free*, as if you were  
 at home.

She has resisted him *stoutly*.

Did you go thither *on foot*?

She was *on horseback* when  
 I saw her.

Yes, *indeed*, I have been  
 there.

*Perhaps* he will come to  
 day.

He *probably* does not know  
 it.

Put them *separate*.

I have put them *out of the*  
*way*.

I have left them *apart*.

I know it *better* than you.

Trade goes on *worse and*  
*worse*.

I know it *as well* as you.

My mother is *not so ill* as  
 she was.

His affairs go on *better and*  
*better*.

He shall pay *dearly* for it.

I am thirty years old, *nei-*  
*ther more or less*.

*Above all*, do not forget to  
 bring paper.

I shall speak to her *in pri-*  
*vate*.

[3.] It is the opinion of  
 many people.

It is the custom of few peo-  
 ple.

That happens *to many people*.

Il se réveilla *en sursaut*.

Vivons *en paix*.

Vous pouvez dormir *en repos*.

Vous en retournerez-vous  
*à vide*?

Agissez *librement*, comme si  
 vous étiez chez vous.

Elle lui a résisté *fort et ferme*.

Y allâtes-vous *à pied*?

Elle étoit *à cheval*, quand  
 je la vis.

Oui, *en vérité*, j'y ai été.

*Peut-être* viendra-t-il au-  
*jourd'hui*.

*Probablement* il ne le sait  
 pas.

Mettez-les *séparément*.

Je les ai mis *à l'écart*.

Je les ai laissés *à part*.

Je le sais *mieux* que vous.

Le commerce va *de pis en*  
*pis*.

Je le sais *aussi bien* que vous.

Ma mère se porte *moins mal*  
 qu'elle ne faisoit.

Ses affaires vont *de mieux en*  
*mieux*.

Il me le payera *cher*.

J'ai trente ans, *ni plus ni*  
*moins*.

*Surtout* n'oubliez pas d'ap-  
 porter du papier.

Je lui parlerai *en particulier*.

C'est l'opinion *de beaucoup*  
 de gens.

C'est la coutume *de peu de*  
 gens.

Cela arrive *à beaucoup de gens*.

- [4.] I have *not* learned my lesson. Je *n'ai pas* appris ma leçon.  
 I shall speak to him *no more*. Je *ne* lui parlerai *plus*.  
 I have *not* seen him *at all*. Je *ne* l'ai *point* vu.  
 He knows *nothing*. Il *ne* sait *rien*.  
 I *never* knew him. Je *ne* l'ai *jamaïs* connu.  
 By *no means* consent to it. *N'y* consentez *nullement*.  
 I did *not* see *any body* there. Je *n'y* ai vu *personne*.  
 [5.] Have you *not* seen my brother? *N'avez-vous pas* vu mon frère?  
 Have you *not* written your theme? *N'avez-vous pas* écrit votre thème?  
 Have they *not* yet break-fasted? *N'ont-ils pas* encore déjeûné?  
 Has she *not* consented to it? *N'y-a-t-elle pas* consenti?  
 Has he *not* spent all his money? *N'a-t-il pas* dépensé tout son argent?  
 Has he *not* sent for him? *Ne l'a-t-il pas* envoyé chercher?  
 [6.] I neither love *nor* hate him. Je *ne* l'aime *ni* *ne* le hais.  
 I neither see her *nor* speak to her. Je *ne* la vois *ni* *ne* lui parle.  
 Unless you come with me. *A moins* que vous *ne* veniez avec moi.  
 Lest he should die. *De crainte* qu'il *ne* mourût.  
 I shall hinder him from playing. J'empêcherai qu'il *ne* joue.  
 I am afraid he is sick. Je crains qu'il *ne* soit malade.  
 Be sure that he does *not* go out. Prenez garde qu'il *ne* sorte.  
 I am afraid he will *not* come to day. Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne *pas* aujourd'hui.  
 Why do you fear she will *not* write to you? Pourquoi craignez-vous qu'elle *ne* vous écrive *pas*?  
 She fears he does *not* love her. Elle craint qu'il *ne* l'aime *pas*.  
 She fears he is *not* in good health. Elle appréhende qu'il *ne* soit *pas* en bonne santé.



I desire no recompensé, *but*  
the pleasure of obliging  
you.

It is *only* through idleness.

I know *only* him.

It was *but* a false alarm.

It is *only* a jest.

We are *but* two.

I spoke *but* two words to  
him.

I have learned French *but*  
three months.

I heard *only* that news.

We staid there *only* one  
hour.

She wrote *only* six lines.

*Why* do not you answer?

*Why* do not you study?

*Why* do not you write?

*Why* does not he go thither  
himself?

*Why* did he not come sooner?

*Why* does not she rise ear-  
lier?

I cannot go thither.

I cannot keep pace with you.

You cannot speak to him to-  
day.

I cannot stay any longer.

Cannt you force him to it?

I dare not speak to her.

I dare not contradict him.

He does not dare take it  
upon himself.

She does not dare to declare  
her thoughts freely.

Dare you not write to him?

Je ne désire pour récom-  
pense *que* le plaisir de  
vous obliger.

Ce n'est *que* par pure fai-  
néantise.

Je ne connois *que* lui.

Ce n'étoit *qu'*une fausse  
alarme.

Ce n'est *qu'*un badinage.

Nous ne sommes *que* deux.

Je ne lui ai dit *que* deux  
mots.

Je n'ai appris le François  
*que* trois mois.

Je n'ai appris *que* cette nou-  
velle.

Nous n'y restâmes *qu'*une  
heure.

Elle n'a écrit *que* six lignes.

*Que* ne répondez-vous?

*Que* n'étudiez-vous?

*Que* n'écrivez-vous?

*Que* n'y va-t-il lui-même?

*Que* n'est-il venu plus tôt?

*Que* ne se lève-t-elle plus  
matin?

Je ne puis y aller.

Je ne puis vous tenir pied.

Vous ne pouvez lui parler  
aujourd'hui.

Je ne puis rester plus long-  
temps.

Ne pouvez-vous l'y forcer?

Je n'ose lui parler.

Je n'ose le contredire.

Il n'ose s'en charger.

Elle n'ose déclarer librement  
ses pensées.

N'osez-vous pas lui écrire?

|                                                       |                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Does not he dare to go to the play ?</i>           | <i>N'ose-t-il pas aller à la comédie ?</i>               |
| <i>Does not she dare to take the least pleasure ?</i> | <i>N'ose-t-elle pas prendre le moindre plaisir ?</i>     |
| <i>I have not seen him these ten years.</i>           | <i>Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu.</i>                 |
| <i>I had not spoken to her for two years.</i>         | <i>Il y avoit deux ans que je ne lui avois parlé.</i>    |
| <i>I have not been at the play these three years.</i> | <i>Il y a trois ans que je n'ai été à la comédie.</i>    |
| <i>I had not been in the Park for four years.</i>     | <i>Il y avoit quatre ans que je n'avois été au Parc.</i> |
| <i>I shall not see him for a year.</i>                | <i>Je ne le verrai d'un an.</i>                          |
| <i>I shall not speak to them for two years.</i>       | <i>Je ne leur parlerai de deux ans.</i>                  |

---

## CHAP. IX.

### *Rules and Observations upon Prepositions.*

**S**OME prepositions govern the first case; some the second; and some the third.

1. The following prepositions, as exemplified, govern the first case :

|          |   |                  |   |                            |
|----------|---|------------------|---|----------------------------|
| Avant    | - | le déluge,       | - | <i>before the deluge.</i>  |
| après    | - | vous,            | - | <i>after you.</i>          |
| devant   | - | lui,             | - | <i>before him.</i>         |
| avec     | - | son frère,       | - | <i>with his brother.</i>   |
| chez     | - | vous,            | - | <i>at your house.</i>      |
| contre   | - | la muraille,     | - | <i>against the wall.</i>   |
| dans     | - | la chambre,      | - | <i>in the room.</i>        |
| en       | - | Angleterre,      | - | <i>in England.</i>         |
| depuis   | - | son arrivée      | - | <i>since his arrival.</i>  |
| dès      | - | le commencement, | - | <i>from the beginning.</i> |
| derrière | - | le jardin,       | - | <i>behind the garden.</i>  |

|                   |   |                     |   |                                             |
|-------------------|---|---------------------|---|---------------------------------------------|
| dessus            | - | la table,           | - | over the table.                             |
| dessous           | - | la table,           | - | under the table.                            |
| entre             | - | amis,               | - | between friends.                            |
| envers            | - | son prochain,       | - | toward our neighbour.                       |
| environ           | - | cent guinées,       | - | { about a hundred guineas.                  |
| excepté ou hormis | - | son père,           | - | except his father.                          |
| moyennant         | - | une somme d'argent, | - | for a sum of money.                         |
| nonobstant, ou    | { | sa mère,            | { | notwithstanding, or in spite of his mother. |
| malgré.           |   |                     |   |                                             |
| malgré            | - | elle,               | - | again her will.                             |
| outre             | - | son logement,       | - | beside his lodging.                         |
| par               | - | terre,              | - | by land.                                    |
| parmi             | - | les riches,         | - | among the rich.                             |
| pendant           | - | l'hiver,            | - | during the winter.                          |
| durant            | - | la paix             | - | during the peace.                           |
| pour              | - | sa pension,         | - | for his board.                              |
| sans              | - | amis,               | - | without friends.                            |
| selon, ou suivant | - | votre avis,         | - | { according to your advice.                 |
| sous              | - | les décombres,      | - | under the rubbish.                          |
| sur               | - | le toit,            | - | upon the roof.                              |
| touchant          | - | cette affaire,      | - | { concerning that affair.                   |
| vers              | - | le soir             | - | about the evening.                          |
| par-deçà          | - | les Alpes,          | - | on this side the Alps.                      |
| par-delà          | - | les Alpes,          | - | beyond the Alps.                            |
| à travers         | - | le corps,           | - | through the body.                           |

2. The following prepositions govern the second case :

|                 |   |                  |   |                              |
|-----------------|---|------------------|---|------------------------------|
| Autour          | - | de la maison,    | - | { round, or about the house. |
| auprès          | - | de lui,          | - | near him.                    |
| faute           | - | d'argent,        | - | for want of money.           |
| le long         | - | de la haie,      | - | along the hedge.             |
| près, ou proche | - | du Palais Royal, | - | near the Royal Palace.       |
| ensuite         | - | de quoi,         | - | after which.                 |
| hors            | - | du cabinet,      | - | out of the closet.           |
| loin            | - | de ses ennemis,  | - | far from his enemies.        |
| vis-à-vis       | - | de la Bourse,    | - | opposite the Exchange.       |

And all others which are composed of a substantive preceded either by *à*, *au*, or *en*. Except *à travers*, which governs the first case; as above.

### 3. The following prepositions govern the third case :

|              |            |                  |                                    |
|--------------|------------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| Conformément | à l'usage, | -                | agreeable to custom.               |
| quant        | -          | à moi,           | - as for my part.                  |
| jusqu'aux    | -          | nues,            | - to the skies.                    |
| par rapport  | -          | à ses pratiques, | { by reason of his cus-<br>tomers. |

### Remarks on Prepositions.

1. Some prepositions are placed before infinitives, as well as before nouns; some, when placed before infinitives, have no preposition after them, others have the preposition *de*, and some the preposition *à*. Those which take no preposition after them before an infinitive, are *après*, *par*, *sans*, and *pour*; as, after having talked without knowing any thing of the matter, *après avoir parlé sans savoir ce qu'il disoit*. Those which take the preposition *de* after them before an infinitive, are, *hors*, *bormis*, *excepté*, *à la réserve*, *loin*, *au lieu*, *faute*, *à force*, *au péril*, and perhaps some others; as, far from blaming you, *loin de vous blâmer*. Those which take the participle *à* are, *sauf* and *jusque*; as, I can but begin again, *sauf à recommencer*.

2. *En* is never followed by the article, though we say, in a familiar way of speaking, he is dead; *il est allé en l'autre monde*; upon what account, *en l'honneur de quel saint*.

*Dans* is always followed by the article, except before possessive pronouns, proper names of authors quoted, and proper names of towns; as, I have read it in Cicero; *je l'ai lu dans Cicéron*; search in my pocket, *cherchez dans ma poche*. We indifferently make use of *en* or *dans* before personal pronouns; as, in him, *en lui*, or *dans lui*. But we say, *penser en soi-même*, to reflect within ourselves.

3. *En*, before nouns of time, signifies the time employed in doing a thing; and *dans*, the time after expiration of which the thing will be done; as, I could do it in a week, or I would spend no more than a week in doing it, *je le ferois en huit jours*; I will do it a week hence, *je le ferai dans huit jours*.

4. *Chez*, followed by a pronoun, or a proper name of a person, signifies somebody's house; as, he is at my house, at your house, &c.; *il est chez moi, chez vous*, &c. It is preceded by *de*, when it signifies coming from; as, I come from your house, *je viens de chez vous*.

5. *Dedans*, *dehors*, *dessus*, *dessous*, and *en avant*, are always adverbs, and never prepositions; consequently they have no case after



them, except when *dedans* and *debors*, *dessus* and *dessous*, are either joined together, or have the particle *de* or *par* before them; as, both within and without the house, *dedans et dehors la maison*; both upon and under the chair, *dessus et dessous la chaise*; from under the bed, *de dessous le lit*.

6. When the definite article precedes *dedans* or *debors*, *dessus* or *dessous*, those words are used substantively, and consequently require the following noun in the second case; as, the inside, or the outside of the house, *le dedans, ou le dehors de la maison*.

7. *Jusques*, or rather *jusque* (to, as far as, till) coming before the preposition *à*, it's final *e* or *es* is omitted, and an apostrophe is put in it's stead; as, to death, *jusqu'à la mort*. This is to be observed even in declamation; as, how long? *jusqu'à quand?* and not *jusques à quand?* as likewise the other conjunction, till, until; as, *jusqu'à ce que*, which governs the subjunctive, and not *jusques à ce que*.

8. *Even* or *very*, in English, is sometimes rendered in French by *jusqu'à*; as, even the king, *jusqu'au roi*. In this sense it signifies an emphatic expression of a collection, or universality of objects, either mentioned or understood; as, when I say, even kings are mortal, *jusqu'aux rois sont mortels*: it signifies all men, even kings are mortal, *tous les hommes, jusqu'aux rois, sont mortels*.

9. *Sauf*, which signifies an exception to something, governs the first case, speaking of things; as, without prejudice of his claim, *sauf son droit*. It governs the third case, speaking of persons; as, *sauf au demandeur à se pourvoir*, but the plaintiff, or petitioner, is at liberty to sue, or make application. A law expression.

10. When *before* signifies *opposite to*, or *in the presence of*, it must be rendered in French by *devant*: as, opposite to your house, *devant votre maison*; in the presence of the king, *devant le roi*. The opposite to *devant* is *derrière*, behind. When *before* signifies *to have precedence of*, it is rendered in French by *avoir le pas sur*; as, dukes are before earls, *les ducs ont le pas sur les comtes*. In all other cases, *before* is rendered into French by *avant*; as, we were happy before the war, *nous étions heureux avant la guerre*; virtue must be preferred to every thing, *la vertu doit aller avant tout*; it's opposite is *après*, after.

11. *Avant* followed by *que*, is a conjunction, which governs the subjunctive: as, before you were born, *avant que vous fussiez né*; followed by *de*, it governs the infinitive; as, before death, *avant de mourir*.

12. *Près*, *auprès*, near, govern the second case, though we may say, in common conversation, near St. Paul's, *près l'église St. Paul*. *Près* must always be used instead of *auprès*, speaking of time or age; as, it is near twelve o'clock, *il est près de midi*; she is near thirty years old, *elle a près de trente ans*.

13. As custom will not always suffer *auprès* to be used, when speaking of places, particularly after *trop*, *si*, *assez*, *plus*, *bien*, I advise the learner to make use of *près*; as, he lives near the church, *il demeure près de l'église*: though *auprès* may be indifferently used in such a case.

14. *Près*, in the sense of *save*, *excepting*, governs the third case, and must be placed after the noun which it governs; as, except one crown, *à un écu près*; excepting that, *à cela près*.

15. *Auprès* must always be used instead of *près*, 1st, when we speak

of somebody placed with another, as his master, friend, counsellor, or servant; as, *j'ai mis mon fils auprès de mon frère*, I have placed my son with my brother, viz. as his tutor, master, friend.

2dly. When we mention in what esteem a person is with another, or what interest he has with him: as, he is in favour with the king, my lord, that lady; *il est bien auprès du roi, de monseigneur, de cette dame*: he can do what he will with him, *il a tout pouvoir auprès de lui*.

3dly. When we mention by whom a person is entertained, sheltered, &c., as, he is gone to live with him, *il s'est retiré auprès de lui*; he is quite safe with him, *il est en sûreté auprès de lui*.

16. The prepositions *to* and *toward*, when they signify *in regard to*, must always be rendered in French by *envers*: as, he is ungrateful to God and men, *il est ingrat envers Dieu et envers les hommes*. In all other cases, *toward* must be rendered by *vers*; as, he went toward Islington, *il est allé vers Islington*. *Vers* signifies likewise *about*: as, about the beginning of the spring, *vers le commencement du printemps*.

17. When *from* and *to* denote simply the distance from one place to another, they are rendered in French by *de* and *à*; as, it is five miles from London to Greenwich, *il y a cinq milles de Londres à Greenwich*. When they denote the quality of the distance, they are rendered by *depuis* and *jusque*; as, he walked from London to Greenwich, *il alla à pied depuis Londres jusqu'à Greenwich*. When they denote succession of place, they are rendered by *de* and *en*; as, he goes from town to town, *il va de ville en ville*.

18. *A*, *each*, and *every*, before a noun denoting distribution of people, time, or place, are rendered in French by *par*; as, two crowns a piece, *deux écus par tête*: three guineas a week, *trois guinées par semaine*: four shillings a mile, *quatre schellings par mille*.

19. *Vis-à-vis* and *à l'opposite*, opposite, govern the second case, though we say in common conversation, *vis-à-vis l'hôtel de ville*, opposite Guildhall. The first is applied both to persons and things, the other to things only.

20. The participle active in English, preceded by *without*, is rendered in French by *sans*, sometimes followed by a substantive without an article; as, he spoke to him without fearing, *il lui parla sans crainte*. Sometimes by an infinitive without a preposition: as, *il lui parla sans craindre*. Sometimes by *que*, and the following verb in the subjunctive mood; as, *il lui parla sans qu'il craignût*: and this last must be used when the active participle in English is preceded either by a pronoun, or any other noun.

21. *As*, in English, with a verb in the indicative mood, or *on* and *upon* with an active participle, are rendered in French, sometimes by *sur* followed by *ce que*, as, as you wrote to me that... *sur ce que vous m'avez écrit que...* Sometimes by *comme*, as; as I walked into the Park, *comme je me promenois au Parc*. Sometimes by *à* followed by a substantive; as, on my arriving at London, *à mon arrivée à Londres*.

22. The prepositions *à*, *de*, *contre*, *sur*, *sous*, and *sans*, are commonly repeated in French, though they are not in English; as, there were

many books upon the table and chair; *il y avoit beaucoup de livres sur la table et sur la chaise.*

23. *Par, pour, avec, dans, &c.*, are commonly repeated when the nouns are not synonymous, or pretty nearly of the same signification, as, by mildness and reason; *par la douceur et par la raison*: *par* is repeated, because *douceur* and *raison* are neither synonymous, nor nearly of the same signification. But in this instance, in luxury and voluptuousness, *dans la mollesse et la volupté*, the preposition, for the contrary reason, is not repeated.

### *Farther Remarks upon the Prepositions à and de.*

*N. B.* The preposition *de*, and the article *le*, are contracted into *du*, *de* and *les* into *des*: of the father, *du père*, of the fathers, *des pères*; instead of *de le père*, *de les pères*, the same contraction of the article is made with the preposition *à*: to the father, *au père*, to the fathers, *aux pères*; instead of *à le père*, *à les pères*.

The preposition *de*, of, indicates the second case of the noun or pronoun following it, *à* is the sign of the third case, see page 62.

1. When two nouns substantive in English are joined together, making but one word, the first expressing the manner or form of a thing, or the use for which it is designed, the first must be the second in French, with the preposition *à* before it, or it must be changed into a verb in the infinitive mood; as, a dining room; *une salle à manger*: a patch-box, *une boîte à mouches*. But, if the first express the matter of which the thing spoken of is made, it requires the preposition *de*; as, silk stockings; *des bas de soie*: a silver pot: *un pot d'argent*.

2. *A* is sometimes used, 1st. instead of *at*, or *to* before names of places, which admit of no article; as, *vivre à Paris*, *aller à Londres*, *s'arrêter à Amsterdam*.

2dly. Instead of *with*; as, to paint with oil colours; *peindre à l'huile*.

3dly. Instead of *for*; as, a coach for six persons: *un carrosse à six places*.

4thly. Instead of *after*; as, to live after the English fashion: *vivre à l'Angloise*.

5thly. Instead of *on*; as, on the right hand, *à main droite*: on the left hand, *à main gauche*.

6thly. Instead of *in*; as, a suit in fashion, *un habit à la mode*.

7thly. Instead of *by*; as, step by step, *pas à pas*.

8thly. Instead of *according to*; followed by the substantive *avis*; as, according to my opinion, *à mon avis*.

9thly. Instead of *to*; as, to judge of him by his looks, *à juger de lui par la mine*.



10thly. Instead of *at* ; as, at two o'clock, *à deux heures*.

It is sometimes used without being expressed in English.

3. *De* is often put after a substantive instead of *some*, expressed or understood ; as, a bit of bread, of meat ; *un morceau de pain, de viande*. It is sometimes used likewise, 1st, after the indeterminate pronouns, *quelqu'un, personne, rien, quoi, &c.*, before an adjective ; as, there is nobody so lucky as he, *il n'y a personne de si heureux que lui* : there is something inexpressibly gracious in his discourse, *il y a je ne sais quoi de gracieux dans ses discours*.

2dly. Before the proper names of places having no article, which we are going or coming from ; as, *revenir de Paris, partir de Londres*.

3dly. Instead of *in* ; as, he went away in the night, *il partit de nuit*.

4thly. Before a past participle in the following and similar expressions ; as, there were ten thousand of them killed or wounded, *il y en eut dix mille de tués ou de blessés*.

5thly. Instead of *by* ; as, he is taller by the whole head, *il est plus grand de toute la tête*.

6thly. Instead of *with* ; as, he ran with all his might, *il courut de toutes ses forces*.

7thly. Instead of *in, after, instead of* ; as he behaves in, or after, this manner ; *il se conduit de cette manière* : were I in your stead, *si j'étois de vous*.

8thly. Instead of *on* ; as, to live on fish, *vivre de poisson*.

It is likewise used without being expressed in English.

There are some other uses of the prepositions *de* and *à* : but it would be too tedious to relate them here, as they have been sufficiently explained in the foregoing grammatical rules and observations.

### *Rules and Observations upon the Prepositions, exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

[1.] I was here *before* you.

You are come *after* me.

Get *out* of my sight.

I saw it *behind* the house.

He went *with* his brother.

I have been *at* your house.

Have you been *at* his house ?

I have not been *at* her house.

Why did you not come to our house ?

He has succeeded *against* all likelihood.

*J'étois ici avant* vous.

*Vous êtes venu après* moi.

*Otez-vous de devant* moi.

*Je l'ai vu derrière* la maison.

*Il est allé avec* son frère.

*J'ai été chez* vous.

*Avez-vous été chez* lui ?

*Je n'ai pas été chez* elle.

*Pourquoi n'êtes-vous pas venu chez* nous ?

*Il a réussi contre* toute apparence.



You will find my stockings  
*in* the closet.

He is *in* England.

Since his arrival he has al-  
ways been ill.

I foresaw the consequences  
of it, *from* the begin-  
ning.

My knife is *over* or *under*  
the table.

Let us share *between* us two.

Let us have charity *toward*  
our neighbours.

I have spent *about* a thou-  
sand guineas.

They are all dead, *except*  
my father.

He will do it *for* a sum of  
money.

She likes him *notwithstanding*  
his humour.

She would marry him *in spite*  
of all her relations.

I spend two guineas a week  
*beside* my lodging.

We travelled *by* land.

I left it *among* my papers.

We take a walk every day  
*during* the summer.

The people suffer a great  
deal *during* the war.

I gave it *for* you.

He is *without* friends and  
*without* money.

I have acted *according* to  
your advice.

Eight men were buried *un-  
der* the rubbish.

Vous trouverez mes bas *dans*  
le cabinet.

Il est *en* Angleterre.

*Depuis* son arrivé il a tou-  
jours été malade.

J'en prévis les conséquences  
*dès* le commencement.

Mon couteau est *dessus* ou  
*dessous* la table.

Partageons *entre* nous deux.

Ayons de la charité *envers*  
notre prochain.

J'ai dépensé *environ* mille  
guinées.

Ils sont tous morts, *excepté*  
ou *hormis* mon père.

Il le fera *moyennant* une  
somme d'argent.

Elle l'aime, *nonobstant* son  
humour.

Elle voulut l'épouser *malgré*  
tous ses parens.

Je dépense deux guinées  
*par* semaine, *outre* mon  
logement.

Nous voyageâmes *par* terre.  
Je l'ai laissé *parmi* mes pa-  
piers.

Nous nous promenons tous  
les jours *l'été*.

Le peuple souffre beaucoup  
*durant* la guerre.

Je l'ai donné *pour* vous.

Il est *sans* argent et *sans*  
amis.

J'ai agi *selon*, ou *suivant*  
votre avis.

Huit hommes ont été ense-  
velis *sous* les décombres.

|                                                         |                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Leave that dish <i>upon</i> the table.                  | Laissez ce plat <i>sur</i> la table.                    |
| He spoke to me <i>concerning</i> that affair.           | Il m'a parlé <i>touchant</i> cette affaire.             |
| I shall come and see you <i>to-ward</i> the evening.    | J'irai vous voir <i>vers</i> le soir.                   |
| He has been run <i>through</i> the body.                | Il a reçu un coup d'épée <i>à travers</i> le corps.     |
| [2.] He rambles every night <i>about</i> the house.     | Il rode toutes les nuits <i>au-tour</i> de la maison.   |
| A man starves <i>for want</i> of money.                 | <i>Faute</i> d'argent, on meurt de faim.                |
| He followed me <i>along</i> the hedge.                  | Il me suivit <i>le long</i> de la haie.                 |
| There are fine buildings <i>along</i> the Thames.       | Il y a de beaux bâtimens <i>le long</i> de la Tamise.   |
| Let us walk <i>along</i> the river.                     | Promenons-nous <i>le long</i> de la rivière.            |
| I met him <i>near</i> the royal palace.                 | Je l'ai rencontré <i>près</i> du palais royal.          |
| He followed me <i>out</i> of the city.                  | Il me suivit <i>hors</i> de la ville.                   |
| I am <i>far</i> from my own country.                    | Je suis <i>loin</i> de mon pays.                        |
| Come <i>near</i> me.                                    | Venez <i>auprès</i> de moi.                             |
| Keep yourself <i>near</i> the fire.                     | Tenez-vous <i>auprès</i> du feu.                        |
| She lives <i>opposite</i> the Exchange.                 | Elle demeure <i>vis-à-vis</i> de la Bourse.             |
| <i>After</i> which there was a ball.                    | <i>Ensuite</i> de quoi il y eut un bal.                 |
| I have suffered a great deal <i>on</i> her account.     | J'ai beaucoup souffert <i>à cause</i> d'elle.           |
| She died, <i>to the great regret</i> of all her family. | Elle mourut <i>au grand regret</i> de toute sa famille. |
| Cut them <i>close</i> to the ground.                    | Coupez-les <i>à fleur</i> de terre.                     |
| Sit down <i>near</i> my brother.                        | Asseyez-vous <i>à côté</i> de mon frère.                |
| He made his escape <i>by fa-vour</i> of the night.      | Il s'échappa <i>à la fa-vour</i> de la nuit.            |

The bridge was built *at the expense* of the city.

He pretends to be in the right, in *spite* of common sense.

They dress themselves *after the French fashion*.

*As to* what you say, I heard no talk about it.

She has done it *without the knowledge* of her mother.

You shall not have it *under* fifty guineas.

He has sold all his estate, *except* a small house.

We are *sheltered* here from the rain.

There has been a battle *on this side* of the Alps.

He went to *the other side* of the Pyrenees.

Nobody is *secure* from slander.

Dukes are *above* earls.

I am *below* you.

Let us go and *meet* him.

He has remembered all his family in his will, his wife *excepted*.

We have brought it about *by strength* of arms.

I shall defend you at the *peril* of my life.

He was stopped *in the middle* of the street.

Le pont fut bâti *aux dépens* de la ville.

Il veut avoir raison, *en dépit* du bon sens.

Ils s'habillent à *la mode* de France, ou à la *Françoise*.

*A l'égard* de ce que vous dites, je n'en ai pas entendu parler.

Elle l'a fait à *l'insu* de sa mère.

Vous ne l'aurez pas à *moins* de cinquante guinées.

Il a vendu tout son bien, à *la réserve* d'une petite maison.

Nous sommes ici à *l'abri* de la pluie.

Il y a eu une bataille *en deçà* des Alpes.

Il est allé *au-delà* des Pyrénées.

Personne n'est à *couvert* de la médisance.

Les ducs sont *au-dessus* des comtes.

Je suis *au-dessous* de vous.

Allons *au-devant* de lui.

Il a favorisé toute sa famille par son testament, à *l'exclusion* de sa femme.

Nous en sommes venus à bout à *force* de bras.

Je vous défendrai, *au péril* de ma vie.

Il fut arrêté *au milieu* de la rue.

He lends money *at the rate* of five per cent.

[3.] *As for* my part, I do not care for it.

They have been pursued *as far as* the wood.

I do not like to remove *on account* of my customers.

[Rem. 1.] *After* having talked *without* knowing any thing of the matter.

*To* show you how much I am concerned for all your interests.

I give you leave to do whatever you please, *except* going out.

*Far from* disapproving of your conduct, I would have done the same.

He does nothing but prattle, *instead* of learning his lesson.

*For want* of asking it of him, you will lose your money.

*By dint of* walking we arrived before night.

He has entered an action against him, *at the risk* of losing all his estate.

I shall tell her my sentiments *at the risk* of displeasing her.

I can *only* begin again.

He took so much liberty *as* to tell her, that she had told a lie.

[2.] I have read it *in* Virgil.

Il prête de l'argent *à raison* de cinq pour cent.

*Quant* à moi, je ne m'en soucie pas.

On les a poursuivis *jusqu'au* bois.

Je n'aime point à déloger, *par rapport* à mes pratiques.

*Après* avoir parlé *sans* savoir ce qu'il disoit.

*Pour* vous montrer combien je prends part à vos intérêts.

Je vous permets de faire tout ce qu'il vous plaira, *hormis* de sortir.

*Loin de* désapprouver votre conduite, j'aurois fait la même chose.

Il ne fait que causer, *au lieu* d'apprendre sa leçon.

*Faute de* le lui demander, vous perdrez votre argent.

*A force de* marcher, nous arrivâmes avant la nuit.

Il lui a intenté un procès, *au péril* de perdre tout son bien.

Je lui dirai mon sentiment, *au risque* de lui déplaire.

*Sauf* à recommencer.

Ils s'émancipa *jusqu'à* lui dire qu'elle en avoit menti.

Je l'ai lu *dans* Virgile.



- I am sure that she is now *in* Paris.  
 Je suis sûr qu'elle est à présent *dans* Paris.
- My father *is* not in town.  
 Mon père n'est pas *en* ville.
- Are you sure, that he is not *in* the city?  
 Etes-vous sûr qu'il ne soit pas *dans* la cité?
- I have left it *in* the chamber.  
 Je l'ai laissé *dans* la chambre.
- I have shut it up in my trunk.  
 Je l'ai enfermé *dans* mon coffre.
- Put that *into* my closet.  
 Mettez cela *dans* mon cabinet.
- There is nothing *in* the bottle.  
 Il n'y a rien *dans* la bouteille.
- Reflect well *within* yourself.  
 Réfléchissez bien *en* vous-même.
- I see nothing *in* him, that displeases me.  
 Je ne vois rien *en* lui qui me déplaît.
- There is nothing *in* her, that you can blame.  
 Il n'y a rien *en* elle que vous puissiez blâmer.
- Is there any thing *in* them, that can give occasion to your suspicions?  
 Y a-t-il quelque chose *en* eux qui puisse donner lieu à vos soupçons?
- [3.] I could do it *in* ten days.  
 Je le ferois *en* dix jours.
- You would spend more than a fortnight *in* doing it.  
 Vous ne le feriez pas *en* quinze jours.
- I shall have done in four days.  
 J'aurai fait *dans* quatre jours.
- I shall send it you *in* a week's time.  
 Je vous l'enverrai *dans* huit jours.
- [4.] I have come *from* your house.  
 Je viens *de* chez vous.
- I came *from* his or her house.  
 Je venois *de* chez lui, ou *de* chez elle.
- [5.] I have looked for it *within* and *without* the house.  
 Je l'ai cherché *dedans* et *dehors* la maison.
- There is Spanish leather both *upon* and *under* the chairs.  
 Il y a du marroquin *dessus* et *dessous* les chaises.

He drew him *from under* the table. Il le tira *de dessous* la table.

[6.] The *outside* of his country house is very pretty. *Le dehors* de sa maison de campagne est fort beau.

Give me the *upper side* of the bread. Donnez-moi le *dessus* du pain.

You will oblige me, if you give me the *under part* of the pie. Vous m'obligerez, si vous me donnez le *dessous* du pâté.

[7.] I shall love you *till* death. Je vous aimerai *jusqu'à* la mort.

[8.] All men, *even* kings themselves, are liable to sickness. Tous les hommes, *jusqu'aux* rois, sont sujets à des maladies.

All men despise him, *even* his relations. Tout le monde le méprise, *jusqu'à* ses parens.

[9.] *Without prejudice* to my claim. *Sauf* mon droit.

*But* the plaintiff is at liberty to sue. *Sauf* au demandeur à se pourvoir.

[10.] Why do you leave that heap of dirt *before* your house? Pourquoi laissez-vous ce tas de boue *devant* votre maison?

They are not covered *in the* presence of the king. On ne se couvre pas *devant* le roi.

You have the *precedency* of him. Vous êtes *devant* lui.

We were happy *before* the war. Nous étions heureux *avant* la guerre.

Virtue should be preferred *to* every thing. La vertu doit aller *avant* tout.

[12.] It is *near* two o'clock. Il est *près* de deux heures.

She is *near* twenty years old. Elle a *près* de vingt ans.

He lives *near* St. Paul's. Il demeure *près* de St. Paul.

[23.] Does he live *so near* you? Demeure-t-il *si près* de vous?

You live very *near* one another. Vous demeurez *bien près* l'un de l'autre.

Come *nearer* me.

You are not *near enough* to me.

[14.] She consented to every thing, that *excepted*.

He has paid me all, *except* six guineas.

[15.] I have put my daughter *under* her care.

He is in favour *with* the King.

He can do what he will *with* him.

She is gone *to live with* him.

You are safe *with* him.

[16.] He is ungrateful *to* me.

I have not been ungrateful *to* you.

I intend to go to France, *about* the beginning of the spring.

Come *about* midnight.

She went out *about* noon.

[17.] How many miles is it *from* London to Windsor?

Greenwich is five miles *from* London.

We walked *from* London to Greenwich.

We came in a coach *from* the Tower *to the Park*.

He goes *from town to town*.

They go *from house to house*.

Approchez-vous *plus près* de moi.

Vous n'êtes pas assez *près* de moi.

Elle consentit à tout, à cela *près*.

Il m'a tout payé, à six guinées. *près*.

J'ai mis ma fille *auprès* d'elle.

Il est bien *auprès* du Roi.

Il a tout pouvoir *auprès* de lui.

Elle est allée *auprès* de lui.

Vous êtes en sûreté *auprès* de lui.

Il est ingrat *envers* moi.

Je n'ai pas été ingrat *envers* vous.

J'ai dessein d'aller en France *vers* le commencement du printemps.

Venez *vers* minuit.

Elle sertit *vers* midi.

Combien de milles y a-t-il *de* Londres *à* Windsor?

Il y a cinq milles *de* Londres *à* Greenwich.

Nous allâmes à pied *depuis* Londres *jusqu'à* Greenwich.

Nous vînmes en carrosse *depuis* la Tour *jusqu'au* Parc.

Il va *de* ville *en* ville.

Ils vont *de* maison *en* maison.

- [18.] We spent ten shillings *a piece*.  
 They gave him two guineas *a month*.  
*Every* mile will cost you a shilling.
- [19.] Sit *opposite* me.
- I bought my ring *opposite* the Exchange.
- [20.] He went away, *without* telling me any more.  
 She spoke a long while, *without* my taking any notice of it.  
 We went out, *without* her perceiving it.  
 He wrote to you, *without* my knowing any thing of it.  
 He cheated us, *without* our suspecting any thing.
- She used him ill, *without* his complaining of it.
- [21.] As you wrote to me that - - -  
 As I walked in the Park.
- On my arriving at London.
- [22.] There are many books *upon* the table and the chair.  
 She has married him *against* your will, and *against* mine.  
 It was not the sentiment of her father and mother.  
 He threw some *under* the table and chairs.  
 He came to school *without* books or paper.
- Nous dépensâmes deux écus *par tête*.  
 Ils lui donnent deux guinées *par mois*.  
 Il vous en coûtera un schelling *par mille*.  
 Asseyez-vous *vis-à-vis* de moi.  
 J'ai acheté ma bague *vis-à-vis* de la Bourse.  
 Il partit, *sans* m'en dire davantage.  
 Elle parla long-temps, *sans* que j'y prisse garde.
- Nous sortîmes, *sans* qu'elle s'en aperçût.  
 Il vous écrivit, *sans* que j'en sasse la moindre chose.  
 Il nous trompa, *sans* que nous soupçonnassions la moindre chose.  
 Elle le maltraita, *sans* qu'il s'en plaignît.
- Sur ce que vous m'avez écrit que - - -  
 Comme je ne promenois au Parc.
- A mon arrivée à Londres.  
 Il y a beaucoup de livres *sur* la table et *sur* la chaise.  
 Elle l'a épousé *contre* votre volonté et *contre* la mienne.
- Ce n'étoit pas le sentiment de son père et de sa mère.  
 Il en a jeté *sous* la table et *sous* les chaises.  
 Il est venu à l'école *sans* livres et *sans* papier.



[23.] He has succeeded in  
it *by* his opulence and  
riches.

He makes himself feared *by*  
his wealth and violence.

Go into the dining room ?  
Where have you put my  
patch-box ?

He has made her a present  
of a diamond ring.

Bring the vinegar-bottle.

Where is the powder-box ?  
Give me my gold fringed  
petticoat.

I go *to* Paris.

It is dear living *in* London.

He had been *in* Amsterdam.

The wainscot is painted in  
oil.

She works *with* the needle.

We had a coach *for* six per-  
sons.

Let us take a coach *for* four  
persons.

He has a coach and four.

I like to live *after* the Eng-  
lish fashion.

She is dressed *after* the  
French fashion.

Go *to* the right hand, after-  
ward you will go on *to*  
the left.

I ordered a fashionable suit  
to be made for me.

How ! you are in the fashion.

Let us go step *by* step.

Go two *and* two.

Il y a réussi *par* son opu-  
lence et ses richesses.

Il se fait craindre *par* son  
opulence et *par* ses vio-  
lences.

Entrez dans la salle *à* manger.  
Où avez-vous mis ma boîte  
*à* mouches ?

Il lui a fait présent d'une  
bague *à* diamans.

Apportez la bouteille *à* vi-  
naigre.

Où est la boîte *à* poudre ?

Donnez-moi ma jupe *à*  
franges d'or.

Je vais *à* Paris.

Il fait cher vivre *à* Londres.

Il a été *à* Amsterdam.

Le lambris est peint *à*  
l'huile.

Elle travaille *à* l'aiguille.

Nous avons un carrosse *à*  
six places.

Prenons un carrosse *à* quatre  
places.

Il a un carrosse *à* quatre  
chevaux.

J'aime *à* vivre *à* l'Angloise.

Elle est vêtue *à* la Française.

Allez *à* droite, ensuite vous  
prendrez *à* gauche.

Je me suis fait faire un ha-  
bit *à* la mode.

Comment ! vous voilà *à* la  
mode.

Allons pas *à* pas.

Allez deux *à* deux.

|                                                             |                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>According</i> to my opinion, she is not in the wrong.    | <i>A</i> mon avis, elle n'a pas tort.                        |
| To judge of him by his looks, he is an honest man.          | <i>A</i> juger de lui par la mine, il est honnête homme.     |
| I was here <i>at</i> ten o'clock.                           | J'étois ici <i>à</i> dix heures.                             |
| He wears silk stockings.                                    | Il porte des bas <i>de</i> soie.                             |
| He has a fine marble slab in his room.                      | Il a dans sa chambre une belle table <i>de</i> marbre.       |
| Give me my black velvet petticoat.                          | Donnez-moi ma jupe <i>de</i> velours noir.                   |
| Give him a bit <i>of</i> bread.                             | Donnez-lui un morceau <i>de</i> pain.                        |
| Do you choose a bit of meat?                                | Souhaitez-vous un morceau <i>de</i> viande?                  |
| A bit <i>of</i> cheese will be sufficient.                  | Un morceau <i>de</i> fromage suffira.                        |
| There is something inexpressibly gracious in his discourse. | Il y a je ne sais quoi <i>de</i> gracieux dans ses discours. |
| Somebody will be punished.                                  | Il y aura quelqu'un <i>de</i> puni.                          |
| Is there any thing more beautiful than the sky?             | Y a-t-il rien <i>de</i> plus beau que le firmament?          |
| I shall leave London next year.                             | Je partirai <i>de</i> Londres l'année prochaine.             |
| I come <i>from</i> Paris.                                   | Je viens <i>de</i> Paris.                                    |
| He went away <i>in</i> the night.                           | Il partit <i>de</i> nuit.                                    |
| We shall arrive there <i>in</i> the daytime.                | Nous y arriverons <i>de</i> jour.                            |
| I shall set out to morrow early <i>in</i> the morning.      | Je partirai demain <i>de</i> grand matin.                    |
| She is taller <i>by</i> the whole head.                     | Elle est plus grande <i>de</i> toute la tête.                |
| She is beloved <i>by</i> every body.                        | Elle est aimée <i>de</i> tout le monde.                      |
| He ran <i>with</i> all his might.                           | Il courut <i>de</i> toutes ses forces.                       |
| I love you <i>with</i> all my heart.                        | Je vous aime <i>de</i> tout mon cœur.                        |
| Does he behave <i>in</i> that manner?                       | Se conduit-il <i>de</i> cette manière?                       |
| Were I <i>in</i> your stead.                                | Si j'étois <i>de</i> vous.                                   |
| We live <i>on</i> fish.                                     | Nous vivons <i>de</i> poisson.                               |

|                                                 |                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| They live <i>on</i> nothing but meat.           | Ils ne se nourrissent que <i>de</i> viande.        |
| It is the greatest folly in the world.          | C'est <i>de</i> la dernière folie.                 |
| My rascally servant told him every thing.       | Mon coquin <i>de</i> valet lui a tout dit.         |
| I shall not come back <i>these</i> four months. | Je ne reviendrai <i>de</i> quatre mois.            |
| There is no such thing.                         | Il n'y a rien <i>de</i> tel.                       |
| He goes on better and better.                   | Il va <i>de</i> mieux en mieux.                    |
| She goes on worse and worse.                    | Elle va <i>de</i> pis en pis.                      |
| I learn music <i>every</i> other day.           | J'apprends la musique <i>de</i> deux jours l'un.   |
| They meet <i>every</i> third year.              | Ils s'assemblent <i>de</i> trois ans en trois ans. |
| I shall be married a year <i>hence</i> .        | Je serai marié dans un an d'ici.                   |

---

## CHAP. X.

### *Observations upon the Conjunctions si and que.*

1. **T**HE verb following the conditional *si*, when it signifies *if*, is never put in the subjunctive mood; and it is put in any tense of the indicative but the future; consequently the future in English is changed into the present in French; as, you shall be satisfied if you call to morrow; *vous serez satisfait si vous venez demain*. The conditional is changed into the imperfect of the indicative; as, if you would call to morrow, *si vous veniez demain*, or *si vous vouliez venir demain*; and not *si vous viendriez*, nor *si vous voudriez venir*.

2. Sometimes, instead of the compound of the imperfect of the indicative, we elegantly make use of the compound of the preterit of the subjunctive mood after *si*; as, if I had known it sooner, that would not have happened, *si je l'eusse su plus tôt, cela ne seroit pas arrivé*, instead of *si je l'avois su, &c.*

3. When *si* signifies *whether*, it may be used in the same tense as when signifying *if*, or in the future, or conditional; as, do you not know whether he would come, if —, *ne savez-vous pas s'il viendrait, si —*; I do not know, whether he will come to day, *je ne sais s'il viendra aujourd'hui* \*.

\* See the exception to the 9th observation on the use of the subjunctive mood, page 232.

4. From the last observation it follows, that the conjunctions *whether* and *or* are most commonly rendered in French by *si*, and *ou*; as, ask him whether he have done that or not, *demandez-lui s'il a fait cela ou non*. They are sometimes rendered in French, *whether*, by *que*, and *or*, by *ou que*, or *que* alone; as, you will not be punished, whether you have done that or not: *que vous ayez fait cela, que, ou que vous ne l'ayez pas fait, vous ne serez pas puni*. It may likewise be rendered this way: *vous ne serez pas puni, soit que vous ayez fait cela, soit que, or ou que vous ne l'ayez pas fait*. It is better not to repeat *soit*, at least in conversation. Take notice, that *whether* and *or*, rendered by *que*, or *soit que*, govern the subjunctive mood in the French.

5. We make use of *que*, instead of repeating the conjunction *si*, or some of the other conjunctions, but more particularly those of which *que* makes a part. In the first case *que* is followed by the subjunctive mood: as, if he come, and if you speak to him, *s'il vient, et que vous lui parliez*. In the second case, the verb is put in the subjunctive mood, when *que* supplies the place of a conjunction which requires this mood: and in the indicative mood, if it supply the place of a conjunction which requires the indicative: so that it follows the nature of the conjunction of which it is a part\*.

Examples where *que* governs the indicative. When I have told and assured you, *quand je vous ai dit, et que je vous ai assuré*; as he maintained it, and I did not believe it, *comme il le soutenoit et que je ne le croyois pas*.

Examples of the subjunctive. He is very far from reading and writing well; *il s'en faut bien qu'il lise et qu'il écrive bien*; provided he comes, and is in good health, *pourvu qu'il vienne, et qu'il soit en bonne santé*. Many more instances will be met with in the following examples.

As the first three observations have been sufficiently exemplified in the tenses and moods of the verbs, I shall here exemplify only the fourth observation, and the conjunction *que* throughout it's different significations and purposes.

### *The Conjunction que exemplified for the Scholar's Practice.*

|                                                               |                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| [4.] I do not know <i>whether</i> he will come <i>or</i> not. | Je ne sais s'il viendra <i>ou</i> non.     |
| Do you know <i>whether</i> he have done that <i>or</i> not?   | Savez-vous s'il a fait cela <i>ou</i> non? |
| Tell me <i>whether</i> he have done it <i>or</i> not.         | Dites-moi s'il l'a fait <i>ou</i> non.     |

\* This distinction is very nice, yet neglected by all grammarians; some of them give inadequate and contradictory rules.



I do not know *whether* it be on the right hand *or* the left.

I do not know *whether* he speak true *or* not.

I doubt *whether* she will accept the offer they make her *or* not.

[5.] It matters little *whether* he goes away *or* stays.

*Whether* he win *or* lose, he is always of a cheerful temper.

*So that* you did see him, and speak to him.

*In such a manner*, that you have sold your goods in time, and made a great profit.

*When* I saw him, and told him my reasons, he approved of my behaviour.

*While* you play, and lose your time, he learns his lesson.

*While* I was speaking to him, and showed him he was in the wrong, our discourse was suddenly interrupted by an unforeseen accident.

*Because* you would not follow my advice, and would listen only to your own whim, you do not deserve, that I should concern myself farther about you.

*As soon as* I have dined, and written a letter, I shall go and speak to him.

Je ne sais *si* c'est à droite *ou* à gauche.

On ne sait *s'il* dit vrai *ou* non.

Je doute *si* elle acceptera *ou* non l'offre qu'on lui fait.

Il importe peu *qu'il* parte *ou* *qu'il* demeure.

*Soit qu'il* gagne *ou qu'il* perde, il est toujours de bonne humeur.

*Si bien que* vous l'avez vu, et *que* vous lui avez parlé.

*De manière que* vous avez vendu vos marchandises à temps et *que* vous avez fait un grand profit.

*Quand* je le vis, et *que* je lui dis mes raisons, il approuva ma conduite.

*Pendant que* vous jouez, et *que* vous perdez votre temps, il apprend sa leçon.

*Tandis que* je lui parlois, et *que* je lui faisois voir le tort qu'il avoit, un accident imprévu interrompit tout à coup notre discours.

*Parce que* vous n'avez pas voulu suivre mon avis, et *que* vous n'avez voulu écouter que votre caprice, vous ne méritez pas que je m'intéresse davantage à vous.

*Dès que* j'aurai diné, et *que* j'aurai écrit une lettre, j'irai lui parler.

*As soon as* I saw, that I could not make him listen to reason, and that he *was* too much prejudiced against me, I went away without saying any thing.

*Why* do you not imitate your sister, and *apply* yourself to the French tongue as she does?

Is it not *because* you are lazy, and you *shun* labour and pain?

*After* we had drank tea and played at cards, we went a walking.

*Perhaps* he will come and see you to day, and give you an account of his reasons.

*Beside* that her brother does not study, and *that* he *loves* play too much, he has not so much wit as she.

*As long as* we have wealth, and live expensively, we never want friends.

*In proportion as* you study, and learn the French tongue, you will find more beauties in it.

*Since* we are together, and it is very fine weather, let us go and take a little walk in the country.

*God forbid*, that I should

*Aussitôt que* je vis que je ne pouvois lui faire entendre raison, et *qu'il étoit* trop prévenu contre moi, je sortis sans dire mot.

*D'où vient que* vous n'imitiez pas votre sœur, et *que* vous ne vous *appliquiez* pas au François comme elle?

N'est-cé pas *parce que* vous êtes paresseux, et *que* vous évitez le travail et la peine?

*Après que* nous eûmes pris le thé, et *que* nous *eûmes* joué aux cartes, nous allâmes à la promenade.

*Peu-être qu'il* viendra vous voir aujourd'hui, et *qu'il* vous *rendra* compte de ses raisons.

*Outre que* son frère n'étudie pas, et *qu'il aime* trop à jouer, il n'a pas tant d'esprit qu'elle.

*Tant qu'on* a du bien, et *qu'on* fait de la dépense, on ne manque jamais d'amis.

*Amesure que* vous étudierez, et *que* vous apprendrez le François, vous y trouverez plus de beautés.

*Puisque* nous sommes ensemble, et *qu'il fait* fort beau temps, allons faire un petit tour de promenade à la campagne.

*A Dieu ne plaise que* je

blame your behaviour,  
and reproach you with it.

*God grant, that you may  
be in good health, and  
succeed in all your enter-  
prises.*

*Notwithstanding that you  
know him, and he has  
cheated you, you still  
converse with him.*

*He is far from being happy  
and living contented in the  
midst of his wealth.*

*Go and speak to him, lest  
he should be angry and  
reproach you.*

*Unless you go and see him,  
and speak to him, he will  
not be pleased with you.*

*I shall go into the country  
next week, provided I be  
well, and it be fair.*

*Not that I praise him, and  
approve of his arrogance.*

*In case that he comes, and  
asks news of my brother,  
tell him that he will be  
here in a week.*

*Though he denies it, and de-  
clares that he has not seen  
it, I can assure you of the  
contrary.*

*In order that you may be  
contented, and have no  
occasion to complain of  
me, I will give you more  
than I promised you.*

blâme votre conduite, et  
*que je veuille vous en  
faire un reproche.*

*Plaise à Dieu que vous vous  
portiez bien, et que vous  
réussissiez dans toutes vos  
entreprises.*

*Malgré que vous le connois-  
siez et qu'il vous ait trom-  
pé, vous ne cessez de lui  
parler.*

*Il s'en faut bien qu'il soit  
heureux et qu'il vive con-  
tent au milieu de ses ri-  
chesses.*

*Allez lui parler, de crainte  
qu'il ne soit fâché, et qu'il  
ne vous fasse des re-  
proches.*

*A moins que vous n'alliez le  
voir, et que vous ne lui  
parliez, il ne sera pas  
content de vous.*

*J'irai à la campagne la se-  
maine prochaine, pourvu  
que je me porte bien, et  
qu'il fasse beau.*

*Non pas que je le loue, ni que  
j'approuve son arrogance.*

*Au cas qu'il vienne, et qu'il  
demande des nouvelles de  
mon frère, dites-lui qu'il  
arrivera dans huit jours.*

*Quoiqu'il le nie, et qu'il dé-  
clare ne l'avoir pas vu, je  
puis vous assurer du con-  
traire.*

*Afin que vous soyez content,  
et que vous n'ayez pas sujet  
de vous plaindre de moi,  
je vous donnerai plus que  
je ne vous ai promis.*

*Though* he told me of it,  
and his brother confirmed  
it, I believe nothing of it.

*Though* he is young and  
rich, she does not love  
him.

*Before* you give your opi-  
nion, and determine, be  
without partiality and  
prejudice.

*Bien* qu'il me l'ait dit, et *que*  
son frère me l'ait con-  
firmé, je n'en crois rien.

*Encore* qu'il soit jeune et  
qu'il ait du bien, elle ne  
l'aime pas.

*Avant* que vous disiez votre  
sentiment, et *que* vous dé-  
cidiez, soyez sans partia-  
lité et sans prévention.



## PART IV.

---

Practical Irregularities of the FRENCH TONGUE,  
 ALPHABETICALLY DISPOSED,  
 WITH THE APPROPRIATE USES OF  
 PARTICULAR WORDS AND PHRASES,  
 APPROVED BY THE BEST AUTHORS,  
 AND ESPECIALLY  
 BY THE DECISION OF THE FRENCH  
 ACADEMY.

---

### *Abandonné.*

THIS word in the masculine gender, commonly signifies forsaken, given over; as, *un homme abandonné*, a man who is forsaken; *un malade abandonné*, a sick person given over by his physicians. When it is applied in the feminine gender to persons, it always signifies a bad woman.

### *Affectionner.*

We say *affectionner une chose*, to love, to like a thing; but we do not say *affectionner une personne*, to love, to like a person, if the person be of an equal, or higher rank: the genius of the French tongue does not allow it. However, *affectionné*, in a passive signification, may be used, speaking of an inferior, with regard to his superior; as, *ce serviteur est fort affectionné à son maître*, this servant is much attached to his master.

*Boubours* and *Corneille* observe, that *votre affectionné serviteur*, your affectionate servant, is used only to persons of an inferior rank.

### *Aider.*

When the verb *aider* governs the first case, it is taken in the sense of to assist a person with money, counsel, or some thing; as, *il l'a aidé dans cette affaire*, he assisted him in that affair, viz. with money. But when it governs the third case, it is taken in the sense of to help a man overloaded; - as, *il lui a aidé à porter sa charge*, he helped him to carry his burthen.

### *Aller. Venir.*

The first is said of the place where a person is, with relation to the place where he is not. The second, on the contrary, is said of a place where a person is not, with a relation to the place where he is; as, supposing the person speaking in London, he will say, *un courier est allé de Londres à Paris en trois jours, et il est venu de Paris à Londres dans le même espace de temps*; a courier went from London to Paris in three days, and came from Paris to London in the same space of time.

This verb is likewise used, when speaking of the place where a person dwells; as, meeting somebody, I say to him; *je vous prie, Monsieur, de venir dîner demain chez moi*, pray, sir, come and dine with me to morrow.

However, there is a distinction to be made here; if it be another person's house, *aller* must be used; as, if, meeting somebody; I say, *Monsieur A. vous prie d'aller demain dîner chez lui*. But, in this case, when the person who speaks is likewise to go to the other person's house, *venir* is used; as, *Monsieur A. vous prie de venir demain avec moi dîner chez lui*.

This verb *aller* is likewise used to denote what is, or was to happen immediately; it signifies to be going, to be ready; as, *je vais écrire*, I am going to write, *il va sortir*, he is just going out; *il alloit rendre l'âme*, he was ready to breathe his last.

*Venir*, on the contrary, signify, a thing just done; as,

*je viens de lui écrire*, I have just written to him ; *je venois de dîner, quand vous . . .* I have just dined, when you . . .

*Ne faire que* de may be used instead of *venir* in the aforesaid sense ; as, *je ne fais que de lui écrire ; je ne faisois que de dîner quand vous . . .* These three verbs are used in this sense only in the present and imperfect tenses of the indicative mood.

*Venir*, followed by an infinitive with *à*, signifies, as I observed elsewhere, Part III, Sect. 3, p. 252, to begin or to set about doing something ; as, *quand je vins à lui parler*, when I began to speak to him. This verb may be used in all it's tenses.

Again, though the verb *aller* is neuter, it seems to be, in some cases, an active one, or, at least, to have an active signification ; as, *aller son chemin*, to go his way ; *aller son train*, to be the same, to continue in the same way ; *aller son même pas*, to go on in the same manner ; but in this case a preposition is understood before the substantive.

*Aller*, joined with the participle *y*, and used impersonally, signifies to be at stake, to be concerned ; as, your fortune is at stake, *il y va de votre fortune* ; your life was concerned in it, *il y alloit de votre vie*.

In this signification, and every other of the verb *aller*, *y* is left out before the future and the conditional ; as, though my fortune should be at stake, *quand il iroit de ma fortune* ; though my life should be concerned in it, *quand il iroit de ma vie*. When will you go to Windsor ? we shall go there to-morrow, *quand irez-vous à Windsor ? nous irons demain*. FRENCH ACADEMY.

### *Alors, Lors.*

The second is never used without being followed by *que*, unless it be preceded by these two participles *dès* or *pour* ; in these cases, *dès-lors* signifies from that time, and *pour lors*, then. *Lorsque* signifies when ; as, *lorsque je le vis*, when I saw him. Some say *dès-lors que je le vis*, as soon as I saw him : but this expression is very bad ; we say, *dès que je le vis*. *Alors* signifies then, and is never followed by *que*.

*Ancien. Vieux. Antique.*

The second is commonly used in speaking of old persons and things worn by use; as, this man is very old, *cette homme est très-vieux*; this suit of clothes is very old, *cet habit est très-vieux*. The first has a relation to the century a person lived in; as, *Aristotle est plus ancien que Cicéron*, Aristotle is more ancient than Tully. It signifies, likewise, an advantage acquired by time; as, *c'est une maison ancienne*, or, *une famille ancienne*, it is an ancient family. But, when we speak of a building, we say, *une vieille maison*, an old house; and not *une maison ancienne*.

Though we equally say, *le Vieux*, or *l'Ancien Testament*, the Old Testament; *d'anciennes*, or *de vieilles histoires*, old histories; *de vieux*, or *d'anciens manuscrits*; *de vieux*, or *d'anciens romans*, &c.: however, we do not equally say, *le Jeune*, for *le Nouveau Testament*; and so for the others; though *jeune* is the opposite of *vieux*, which may be used equally with *ancien* in such cases as above.

Neither do we equally say, *d'anciens*, or *de vieux livres*; *d'anciens*, or *de vieux tableaux*. We say, *d'anciens livres*, *d'anciens tableaux*, of books or pictures which the authors and painters of antiquity made; and *vieux livres*, *vieux tableaux*, of books or pictures grown old and spoiled by time, of whatever age they may be.

The third is used in speaking of medals, statutes, and pictures, when we speak of them as monuments of antiquity. It is likewise used in speaking of some pieces of architecture executed in the ancient style.

When we speak of a collection of the laws of the Visigoths, Burgundians, &c., we say *les lois antiques*. But when we speak of other Roman or French law, we say, *les lois anciennes*. We say likewise, *coutumes anciennes*, *les cérémonies anciennes*.

*Année passée. Année qui vient.*

*L'année passée* is used only with relation to the year which immediately precedes that we live in; as, *je fus malade l'année passée*, I was sick last year. *L'année qui*



*vient* is used when we speak of the year immediately following that we live in; as, *j'irai à Amsterdam l'année qui vient*, I shall go to Amsterdam next year.

*Au cas.*

This word signifying in case, is always followed by *que*: as, *au cas qu'il meure*, in case he should die. We equally say, *en cas qu'il meure*. If after *cas* a substantive follow, we make use of *en cas*, followed by *de*: *en cas de mort*, in case of death, and not *au cas de mort*.

*Beaucoup.*

This word signifying *many*, is seldom used alone; as, we do not say, *il donnoit peu à beaucoup*, he gave little to many; we add, *à beaucoup de personnes*, or *à beaucoup de gens*.

When a personal pronoun comes before *beaucoup*, in such a case it may be used alone; as, *nous sommes beaucoup*, *vous êtes beaucoup*, we are many, you are many; because *beaucoup* has a relation to the foregoing pronoun. The same is to be said when the indeterminate pronoun *en* is before *beaucoup*; as *il y en a beaucoup*, there are many. *En* is in the place of *gens*, *personnes*, or any thing mentioned before; as in the foregoing example, *il y a beaucoup de gens*.

When *beaucoup* is taken in the sense of *much*, a great deal, and comes after an adjective, it must always be preceded by the particle *de*; as, *votre bouquet est plus beau de beaucoup que celui de votre frère*, your nosegay is much finer than that of your brother. But when *beaucoup* is before the adjective *de* may be left out.

We say, *il s'en faut beaucoup*, to express, that there is a great difference between persons or things, and it signifies to be far from, to come short of something: as, he comes far short of being so handsome as you, *il n'est pas si beau que vous, il s'en faut beaucoup*. The latter gallicism may begin the sentence, and then the first is preceded by *que*, and the following verb is put in the subjunctive mood; as, *il s'en faut beaucoup qu'il soit aussi beau que vous*.

We say, *il s'en faut de beaucoup*, to express a deficiency in something; as, you think that you returned me every thing, but there is a great deal wanting, *vous croyez m'avoir tout payé, il s'en faut de beaucoup*. FRENCH ACADEMY.

### Champ.

This word, in the singular, signifies a piece of arable ground, commonly not encompassed by walls. But when it is taken in the plural, it is applied to all sorts of ground, such as meadows, woods, &c., taken together: thus we say, to lead the cattle into the fields, *mener les bestiaux aux champs*. It likewise signifies every other place, which is not in the city or suburbs; thus we equally say, *une maison de campagne*, or *une maison des champs*, a country house: however, the first is in most use.

### Cœur.

When this word is joined to the verb *avoir*, and preceded by the article, it signifies to have courage; thus, we say of a man who is not a coward, *il a du cœur*. When it is preceded by the preposition *à*, it signifies to espouse an affair; *avoir une affaire à cœur*. When it is preceded by the preposition *sur*, it signifies to resent a thing, *avoir une chose sur le cœur*.

When we make use of the word *cœur* to express generosity or goodness, we join to that word an adjective, or some other word; as, *il a le cœur bien fait, il a le cœur bon, c'est un bon cœur*, he is a good-natured man.

Likewise, though *c'est un homme de cœur* signifies he is a courageous man; yet, when we add *tout* to the word *cœur*, it signifies a generous man; as, *il est tout cœur*, he is a very generous man.

### Comme.

This word is used in different manners: it is used instead of *ainsi que, de même que, dans le temps que, par exemple, à cause que ou parce que, presque, en quelque sorte*; as, like, as it were, in the time that, for-example, because, in some manner.

*Il sera puni comme les autres.*

He shall be punished like others.

*Cela paroît comme vieux.*

This seems as if it were old.

*Comme il arrivoit.*

As he was coming.

*Comme il a toujours aimé le bien public, il n'a jamais voulu consentir, &c.*

As he always loved the public good, he never would consent, &c.

*Il est comme le ressort de tout cette intrigue.*

He is in some measure the spring of this intrigue.

It is likewise used instead of *comment*, signifying how, or in what manner, after some other phrase; as, *il verra comme je lui parlerai*, he will see in what manner, I shall speak to him. But when, how, or in what manner, begins a phrase, *comment* must be used; as, in what manner did he succeed? *comment a-t-il réussi?* and not *comme*.

### *D'avantage. Plus.*

*Plus* is never used at the end in an affirmative sentence; as, give me some more, *donnez m'en d'avantage*, and not *plus*. Unless it is preceded by *de*; as, I will give you something more for it, *je vous en donnerai quelque chose de plus*.

*Plus* and *d'avantage* are used indifferently at the end of a negative sentence; but *plus* requires only *ne* before it, whereas *d'avantage* requires *ne* and *pas*; as, *je n'en veux pas d'avantage*, or *je n'en veux plus*, I will have no more of it.

*D'avantage* is never put in the middle of a sentence before a substantive, but *plus* may be; as, the Romans have more plain dealing than the Greeks, *les Romains ont plus de bonne foi que les Grecs*, and not *d'avantage de bonne foi*.

*D'avantage* must never be used in the middle of a sentence before *que*; thus we say, you are in the wrong to reproach me with being hasty, I am not more so than you; *vous avez tort de me reprocher d'être vif, je ne le suis pas plus que vous*, and not *d'avantage que vous*.

*Durant.*

This preposition is sometimes indifferently put either before or after it's regimen; as, *durant deux mois*, or *deux mois durant*, during two months; during his life, *sa vie durant*. But we always say, *durant le jour*, *durant la nuit*.

*Enclin.*

This word signifies *inclined*. It is used in morals, and commonly speaking of something bad; as, *il est enclin au jeu*, he is inclined to gaming.

Though we say *enclin*, yet we say, *incliner*, *inclination*.

*Ensuiure (s').*

This verb is used only in the third person singular and plural; as, *tout ce qui s'ensuit*, all that follows thence; *les accidens qui s'ensuivroient*, the accidents which would ensue.

*Evitable.*

Some French authors have made use of this word, and it has been inserted in the last edition of the dictionary of the French academy, but it is very seldom used. However we say *inévitabile*, unavoidable.

We have in the French tongue several compounded words, which are used, though the simple words from which they are formed are not; as, *inexorable*, inexorable; *implacable*, implacable; *irréconciliable*, irreconcilable; *insatiable*, insatiable; *indubitable*, unquestionable; *ineffable*, ineffable; *immanquable*, infallible, &c.

*Excepté.*

When this word comes before a noun, it is a preposition, consequently indeclinable: as, *excepté ceux-là*, except those; *excepté ma sœur*, except my sister. But when it comes after the noun, it is a past participle,



consequently declinable ; as, *ma sœur exceptée*, my sister excepted.

### *Fable.*

When this word is used to signify the fabulous history of the gods and demigods, it has no plural ; as, *un poète doit savoir la Fable*, a poet ought to know the history of the gods and demigods ; *la Fable est fort amusante*, Mythology is very entertaining.

But if we say in the plural, *les fables sont agréables et utiles*, fables are pleasant and useful, we understand the fables of *Æsop*, *Phædrus*, *la Fontaine*, *Gay*, and other authors.

The word *fable* is sometimes used in a figurative sense ; as, *le pauvre homme sert de fable et de risée à tout le monde*, the poor simpleton makes himself a common talk and a laughing-stock.

### *Fleurir.*

This verb may be taken in a proper or figurative sense ; in the first, it signifies to blossom ; in the second, it signifies to flourish, to be in repute.

When it is in it's proper sense it has no irregularity at all ; but when it is used in it's figurative sense, it has an irregularity in all the persons of the imperfect tense, and in the participle of the present ; as, *une armée florissante*, a flourishing army ; *Horace florissoit sous Auguste*, Horace flourished in the time of Augustus.

In the present tense we say, *flourissent* ; as, *les arts et les sciences fleurissent dans notre siècle* ; arts and sciences flourish in our age.

### *Gagner.*

Though we say *gagner une bataille*, to gain the victory in a battle, yet we do not say *gagner un combat*, to express the same thing. We may say *être victorieux dans un combat*.

### *Gens.*

There is scarce another word to be met with liable to

so many irregularities. See page 159, where notice is taken of some of them.

*Gens* is never said, as in English, of a determinate number of people, unless it be attended with an adjective; as, two honest people, *deux honnêtes gens*. However, we say, a thousand people believe it, *mille gens le croient*. In this case *mille* is taken for an indeterminate number, viz. a great many.

*Gens* sometimes signifies a person's retinue; in this case it may be used with a determinate number, but always followed by the preposition *de*; as, I see but four of my servants, where are the others? *je ne vois que quatre de mes gens, où sont les autres?*

*Gens* sometimes signifies people who are of the same party or club; in this sense it is likewise used with a determinate number; as, four of our club are come, *quatre de nos gens sont arrivés*.

*Gens*, in the sense of nation, is only used in this phrase; the law of nations, *le droit des gens*. It is still used in the same sense, in the singular number, in some pieces of poetry, such as fables: as, *la gent aquotique*, to express fishes, and whatever lives in the water. *La Fontaine*.

### Grâce.

When this word is alone with the verb *faire* and an article, it signifies favour, kindness; as, do me the favour, *faites-moi la grâce*.

When it is without an article, it signifies to forgive, to remit; as, the king has forgiven him, *le roi lui a fait grâce*; you owe me a hundred guineas, but I remit you the half, *vous me devez cent guinées, mais je vous fais grâce de la moitié*.

When *grâce* is used in the singular with *de* before it, it signifies pray, or be so kind as - - -; as pray tell me, *de grâce, dites-moi*.

*Grâce*, used in the singular, alone or with the adjective *bonne*, signifies gracefulness; as, he salutes with gracefulness, *il salue de bonne grâce*, or *avec grâce*: she is very graceful, *elle a bonne grâce*, or *elle a de la grâce*.

When in the same number it is preceded by the adject-

tive *mauvaise*, it signifies quite the contrary; as, admire his awkwardness, *admirez sa mauvaise grâce*. Sometimes, in this latter sense, it only signifies what is contrary to propriety, to reason; as, there is no reason to complain of me, *vous avez mauvaise grâce de vous plaindre de moi*.

When *grâces* is used in the plural, it signifies the Graces (three goddesses, who, according to the Poets, were the companions of *Venus*); also, the beauties of language; as, *les grâces de la langue Française*, or the gracefulness of a person; as, do you not admire the gracefulness of that lady? *n'admirez vous pas les grâces de cette dame?*

If, in the same number, the word *bonnes* be added to it, it signifies good will; as, he has the good will of his master, *il a les bonnes grâces de son maître*.

*Bouhours* observes here, that, though we say *gagner les bonnes grâces de quelqu'un*, to gain the good will of a person; yet we do not say, to express the contrary, either *gagner* or *encourir les mauvaises grâces de quelqu'un*; custom, says he, allows the one, and not the other; in such a case we say *perdre les bonnes grâces de quelqu'un*, to lose the good will of a person.

*Etre en grâces après du Prince ou de quelque personne puissante*, signifies to be in favour with the King, or some powerful person.

*Etre dans les bonnes grâces d'une dame*, signifies to be beloved by a lady.

*J'ai été, je suis allé.*

We make use of the first expression to signify that we are not, or were not any longer in the place we are speaking of; as, Madam went to the play yesterday, *Madame a été à la comédie hier*; but when somebody is or was still in the place we are speaking of, then we use the compound of *aller*; as, Madam is gone to the play, *Madame est allée à la comédie*.

Moreover, if some word denoting motion be added to it, we make use of the compound of *aller*, though the person is no longer in the place we are speaking of; as, he went to Paris in two days, *il est allé à Paris en deux jours*. We likewise say in conversation, *j'aurais été*, or

*je serois allé vous voir*, I would have gone to see you; *je fus*, or *j'allai hier à l'opéra*, I went yesterday to the opera.  
FRENCH ACADEMY.

### Main.

This word has many curious significations.

*Donner la main à une chose*, to consent to a thing.

*Tendre la main*, to beg alms, also so lend a helping hand, to assist a person: as, lend him your assistance, *tendez-lui la main*. However, *donner*, or *prêter la main à quelqu'un* is less equivocal.

*En venir aux mains avec l'ennemi*, to fight with the enemy.

*Faire main basse sur l'ennemi*, to put all to the sword.

*Mettre la main sur quelqu'un (le battre)* to lay hands upon a person, to beat him.

*Tenir la main haute*, to keep a strict hand over a person, to treat him severely.

*Prendre en main la cause de quelqu'un*, to take a person's part.

*Prendre à toutes mains*, to catch every way.

*Donner la main à un cheval*, to give a horse the reins.

*Donner de main en main*, to hand about.

*Mettre la main à la plume*, to begin to write.

*Mettre la main au chapeau, à l'épée*, to put the hand to the hat, in order to salute somebody; to put the hand to the sword.

*Mettre le chapeau à la main*, to pull off the hat.

*Mettre l'épée à la main*, to draw a sword; also to fight with a sword.

*Etre en main pour faire une chose*, to be at hand, or in a convenient situation to do a thing.

*Lever la main*, to make an oath before a judge, to lay our hand upon the Bible, to lift up our hand.

*Avoir les armes bien à la main*, to be skilful in bodily exercises with weapons.

*Faire crédit de la main à la bourse*, to trust no farther than we can see.

*Un coup de main* signifies a bold action; in this sense it is joined to the verb *faire*. When it is joined to the verb *donner*, it signifies to put our hand to something.



in order to assist a person; as, *donnez-nous un coup de main*.

*Un homme de main* signifies a man who is fit for a bold and hazardous enterprise.

*Des coups de main*, blows with the hand or fist.

*A pleines mains*, largely, plentifully.

*Sous main*, underhand, secretly.

*Combat de main*, a close fight.

*Sous la main*, under a person's nose.

*Cela est fait à la main*, that is done in concert.

### *Maison.*

Speaking of people of quality, or of gentlemen of an ancient and noble extraction, we say, *maison*; as, he is of the house of Montmorency, *il est de la maison de Montmorenci*. But speaking of citizens and people of business, we make use of the word *famille*.

Sometimes we make use of the word *famille*, instead of *maison*, when some following words heighten the signification; as, the royal family, *la famille royale*.

Take notice, that when we say, *la famille royale*, we mean by this expression, the king, the queen, their children, and grandchildren. But, when we say *la maison royale*, we commonly mean the other princes and princesses of the blood.

*La maison du roi* signifies the king's household, servants, or troops.

Take notice, likewise, that, though we say *la maison royale*, or *la maison du roi*, we never say, *la famille du roi*.

*Famille* is used instead of *maison*, even speaking of ancient nobility, when we mention it with relation to medals; as, the consular medals are distinguished by the Roman families, *les médailles consulaires se distinguent par les familles Romaines*. It is for this reason, perhaps, that we say, *la famille des Scipions*, *la famille des Césars*, &c., and not *la maison des Scipions*, even when we do not speak of medals.

The word *famille* is likewise used, when we speak of a person's nearest relations; as, he has fallen out with his relations, *il s'est brouillé avec sa famille*.

*Maison* and *famille* are sometimes used promiscuously speaking of person's servants and household; as, she is a woman who takes care of the household, *c'est une femme qui a soin de sa maison*, or *famille*. However the first seems to have a more extensive signification, and to relate more immediately to household affairs.

We always say, *établir sa maison*, and *faire une bonne maison*, and not *famille*, when we would express to grow rich.

### *Métier.*

This word is low in its proper, and elegant in it's figurative sense. According to *Balzac* painters are offended at this word, for we do not say, *le métier de peintre*, the profession of a painter.

However generals of the army boast of their calling; as, the profession of arms, the profession of war; *le métier des armes*, *le métier de la guerre*.

We likewise say, speaking of works; there are only people of that calling, who can be judges of it; *il n'y a que les gens du métier, qui en soient bons juges*.

In this sense it must be used with the definite article, because *gens de métier* signifies quite another thing, viz. handicraftsmen.

### *Mont.*

This verb is never used alone, except when we speak of the mountains that separate France from Italy; for we say *les Alpes*, or *les munts* only, after some prepositions, but very seldom; as, on the side the Alps, *en deçà des munts*.

In other circumstances we say, *le mont Olympe*, *le mont Liban*, *le mont Etna*, *le mont St. Gothard*; but we say, *la montagne du Calvaire*.

### *Noms de Nations et de Langues.*

There is, perhaps, nothing where variety of custom is more visible, than in the names of some nations and languages.

*Arabe*, *Arabesque*. The first is applied to men and

women; as, *une Arabe, une femme Arabe*. The second is never applied to persons, but to the Arabian characters. Speaking of the language, we say, *l'Arabe, or la langue Arabe*. We say, *une figure Arabesque*, an Arabic figure.

*Barbarie*. We use the word *Barbaresque*, to express a man of Barbary, or something belonging to that country; as, *un navire barbaresque*, a Barbary vessel. *Un Barbare* is always taken figuratively, and signifies a barbarous man. *Barbe* signifies a Barbary horse.

*Chaldéan, Chaldaïque*. The first is said of the persons and their language; the second of their language only.

*Dorien, Dorique; Ionien, Ionique*. The first is applied only to persons; as, *les Dorien, les Ioniens; une Dorienne, une Ionienne*. The second is applied to the language. Speaking of the architecture, we say, *ordre Dorique, ordre Ionique*.

*Hébreu, Hébraïque*. We say, speaking of the people, *un Hébreu, les Hébreux*. This word is not used in the feminine gender; thus we must say, *la femme d'un Hébreu, la fille d'un Hébreu, les femmes et les filles des Hébreux*. Speaking of the language, we say, *l'Hébreu, or la langue Hébraïque*. Speaking of manuscripts, we only say, *des manuscrits Hébreux*; but, speaking of Hebrew types, we say, *des caractères Hébraïques*.

*Juif, Judaïque*. We say *un Juif, une Juive*, speaking of the modern Jews. We say *vivre à la Juive*, to live like the Jews, with relation to their manners; and *vivre à la Judaïque*, with relation to their ceremonies.

*More, Moresque*. We say *un More*, a Moor; *une Moresque*, a Moorish woman, and not *une More*; though we say, *une femme More*. We say *le More*, speaking of the language. *Moresque* signifies a Moorish dance, also Morisco work in painting.

*Perse, Persan, Persien, Persique*. We commonly say *les Perses*, speaking of the ancient people of Persia; and *Persans*, speaking of the modern.

In the singular we always say *un Persan*, and not *un Perse*. Printed cloth of Persia is called *de la Perse*, and not *Persienne*. The latter is applied to Venetian blinds.

However, when we speak of Persian stuffs, we may say, *une étoffe de Perse*, as we say, *une étoffe de la Chine*.

We say, *la langue Persienne*, or *le Persien*, speaking of the ancient language; but we say, *la langue Persane*, or *le Persan*, speaking of the modern language.

We always say, *à la Persienne*, to signify after the Persian manner.

*Persique* is said of the gulf that separates Persia from Arabia; as, *le golphe Persique*. It likewise signifies a species of architecture.

Speaking of the ancient kings, *Cyrus*, *Darius*, &c., we call them indifferently *roi de Perse*, or *roi des Perses*; but of the moderns we say only *le roi de Perse*.

*Syrien*, *Syriaque*. The first is used speaking of the people, *un Syrien*, *une Syrienne*; the second speaking of the language, *le Syriaque*, or *la langue Syriaque*.

*Teuton*, *Teutonique*, *Tudesque*. The first is said of the people and of the language; the second of the language, and when we speak of the order: as *l'ordre Teutonique*, the Teutonic order. *Tudesque* is only used speaking of the language of the ancient Germans.

These are the irregular nouns relating to nations and languages. The rest are equally applied to the people and to their language; as, *les Ethiopiens*, *l'Ethiopien*; *les Moscovites*, *le Moscovite*; *les Grecs*, *le Grec*; *les Latins*, *le Latin*, &c.

#### *Des Nombres cardinaux.*

What belongs to the manner of counting them has been said already, see p. 28. However, there are many other remarks to be made concerning these numbers.

It is to be observed, that *vingt*, when it is multiplied by another preceding number, whether followed by a substantive or not, takes an *s* after the *t*: as, *quatre-vingts*, eighty; *quatre-vingts guinées*, eighty guineas; but the *s* is omitted when it is followed by another cardinal number; as, *quatre-vingt-trois*, eighty-three.

To know in what cases the other numbers are either declinable or indeclinable, see page 30.

Instead of *septante*, seventy; *octante*, eighty; and *nonante*, ninety; we always say *soixante et dix*, *quatre-vingts*, *quatre-vingt-dix*. Except when we speak of the interpreters of the Bible, we say *les septante*, though



they were seventy-two; but when we add *interprètes de la Bible*, we say, *les soixante et douze interprètes de la Bible*.

We likewise say *les septante semaines de Daniel*, the seventy weeks of the prophet Daniel. We may say *six-vingts*, one hundred and twenty; and sometimes *sept-vingt*, one hundred and forty; *huit-vingts*, one hundred and sixty; but we never say *deux-vingts*, forty; *trois-vingts*, sixty; *cinq-vingts*, a hundred; *dix-vingts*, two hundred. After *six-vingts*, we say *cent vingt et un*, *cent vingt deux*, &c.

After *mille* we say *onze cent*, *douze cent* . . . to *deux mille*. When we speak of the year of our Lord, we write *mil*, and not *mille*: after *mil* we say *l'an onze cent*, one thousand one hundred; *l'an mil deux cent*, one thousand two hundred; *l'an mil trois cent*, one thousand three hundred, &c. However we say *douze cents hommes*, twelve hundred men; *trieze cents hommes*, thirteen hundred men, &c.

When we speak of the place endowed at Paris by *Lewis IX*, king of France, for three hundred blind, or, when we speak of the blind themselves, we say, *les quinze-vingts*, and not *les trois cents*.

Sometimes we make use of *couple* and *paire* instead of *deux*, but not indifferently; *couple* and *paire* are said of things of the same kind which may be separated; as, a brace of partridges, a couple of chickens; *une couple*, or *une paire de perdrix*, *une couple*, or *une paire de poulets*. *Couple* is never said of things which are considered as inseparable; as, a pair of gloves, a pair of ruffles, a pair of stockings, &c., *une paire de gants*, *une paire de manchettes*, *une paire de bas*, &c., and not *une couple de gants*, &c. *Couple* is likewise said of persons united together by love or marriage; in this sense it is always in the masculine gender; as, *beau couple*, *couple fidèle*.

We make use of the word *quarteron*, when we are speaking of things which are reckoned *per cent*. It signifies the fourth part of a hundred; as, a quarter of a hundred pins, *un quarteron d'épingles*. The word is likewise said of things which are weighed; it then signifies the fourth part of a pound; as, a quarter of a pound of butter, *un quarteron de beurre*.

We make use of the word *quintal*, to express a hundred weight; it is used only when we are speaking of some commodities that are weighed.

*Millier* is said of a thousand weight; as, a thousand weight of iron, brass, &c. *un millier de fer, de cuivre, &c.*

When we speak of time, we say *huit jours*, or *une semaine*, for a week; *quinze jours*, or *deux semaines*, for a fortnight. However, we always say *trois semaines*, three weeks; *un mois*, a month; *cinq, six, sept semaines*, five, six, seven weeks; *deux mois*, two months; *neuf semaines*, nine weeks; *deux mois et demi*, ten weeks; *trois mois*, three months, and not *un quart d'an*; *quatre, cinq, six mois*, four, five, six months, and so on to *un an*. Thence we commonly reckon by months, as *treize mois, quatorze, quinze mois, &c.* to *deux ans*; though we may say, this child is one year and one month, or eighteen months old; *cet enfant a un an et un mois*, or *un an et demi* in these two cases only.

We never say *il est douze heures*, it is twelve o'clock, but *il est midi, il est minuit*.

### *Des Nombres collectifs.*

The numbers which grammarians call collective, are *huitaine, neuvaine, dizaine, douzaine, quinzaine, vingtaine, trentaine, quarantaine, cinquante, soixante, sentaine*.

*Huitaine* signifies eight days; it is used in law; *à la huitaine*, eight days hence.

*Neuvaine* signifies a nine days devotion; it is now never used in poetry, as it was formerly, to signify the nine Muses.

*Dizaine* and *douzaine* signify a collection of ten and twelve; as, *une dizaine ou une douzaine de pommes*, half a score, or a dozen apples; *douzaine* signifies a dozen, and *demi-douzaine*, half a dozen; but we never say *demi-huitaine, demi-dizaine*, to signify four or five.

*Quinzaine, vingtaine, trentaine, &c.* a collection of fifteen, twenty, thirty, &c.

*Quarantaine* is likewise said of the forty days, which

persons, coming from a place where the plague is, are obliged to spend, before they are admitted into the town, to which they intend to go, in English *quarantine*.

There are some other collective numbers; as, *tercet*, *quatrain*, *sizain*, *buitain*, *dizain*, *quinzain*, *trentain*.

The first five are used only in speaking of some pieces of poetry. The first signifies a triplet, the second a stanza of four verses, the third a stanza of six verses, &c.

*Quinzain* and *trentain*\* are used at tennis. *Quinzain* is said when both players have fifteen, and *trentain* when they have thirty. In this sense they are indeclinable; as, they are fifteen all, *ils sont quinzain*.

### *Des Nombres ordinaux.*

The ordinal numbers are *premier*, *second*, *troisième*, *quatrième*, *cinquième*, *sixième*, &c.

Though we do not say *unième* alone, it is, however, used after other numbers; instead of *premier*; as, we do not say *vingt et premier* twenty-first; *trente et premier*, &c.; but we say *vingt et unième*, *trente et unième*.

Neither do we say *vingt et second*, *trente et second*; but we say *vingt-deuxième*, *trente-deuxième*.

Speaking of a sovereign, we make use of the cardinal numbers; as, *Guillaume trois*, *George trois*, *Louis quinze*, and not *Guillaume troisième*, &c., as in *Boyer's Grammar*. However, for the first and second we make use of the ordinal numbers; as, *George premier*, *Frédéric second*. Speaking of the emperor *Charles V*, and of the pope *Sixte V*, we say, *Charles-Quint*, *Sixte-Quint*.

We commonly say *livre trois*, *chapitre quatre*, *article cinq*, *verset huit*, *nombre dix*, *paragraphe cinq*, *page soixante*; however, speaking regularly, we make use of the ordinal numbers in such cases; as, *livre troisième*, *chapitre quatrième*, &c.

When two uncertain numbers follow one another; the first is a cardinal, the second an ordinal number; as, this

\* The words *quinzain* and *trentain* are formed by corruption from *quinze-à*, *trente-à*, to signify *quinze-à-quinze*, *trente-à-trente*.



is in the third or fourth chapter, *cela est dans le trois ou quatrième chapitre*; he is the seventh or eighth earl in the kingdom, *il est le sept ou huitième Comte du royaume*. Except *premier et second*, which are always to be used in such cases.

After *moitié*, half, *tiers*, third, *quart*, fourth, we use the ordinal numbers *cinquième*, *sixième*, &c.

When *cinquième*, *sixième*, &c. are preceded by the indefinite article *un*, they signify the fifth, sixth, &c. part of a thing; as, I took a sixteenth in the lottery, *j'ai pris un seizième à la loterie*; but when they are preceded by the definite article *le*, they must be followed by the preposition *de*; as, *le cinquième*, *le sixième*, the twelfth part of sixty is five, *le douzième de soixante est cinq*. When speaking of the divisions of an ell, we say *un demi-tiers* or *un six*, *un demi-quart* or *un huit*, *un douze*, *un seize*, *un vingt-quatre*, *un trente-deux*.

When we ask for the day of the month, we commonly say *quel quantième avons-nous du mois?* or *quel jour avons-nous du mois?* We likewise say, *le quantième êtes-vous de votre classe?* what place have you in your school? When we speak of the day of the month, we always make use of the cardinal numbers; as, it is the fourth day of the month; *c'est le quatre du mois*, except for the first day of the month; *c'est le premier du mois*.

### *Des Noms propres.*

It would be too tedious, and to no purpose, to relate all the proper names that undergo an alteration in French.

*Vauglas*, and particularly *Ménage*, have made a complete list of them. They who are desirous to know such irregularities may consult these two authors. I will lay down here some general rules concerning this matter.

1st. Proper names of kingdoms, empires, provinces, &c. commonly take the French appellation; thus, England is called *l'Angleterre*; Wales, *la province de Galles*; Ireland, *l'Irlande*; Scotland, *l'Ecosse*.

2dly. Proper names of cities and towns have commonly no variation, though sometimes pronounced in a different



manner; as, Bristol, &c. Except a few of the most renowned places; as, London, *Londres*.

Neither are foreign proper names of men ever subject to any alteration of the whole word; thus, Mr. White, in English, is *Monsieur White* in French; Mr. Black is *Monsieur Black*, &c.; and not *Monsieur le Blanc*, *Monsieur le Noir*, &c.

3dly. Such ancient foreign names as are much celebrated are commonly adapted to the genius of the French language; as, *Homère*, *Pindare*, *Virgile*, *Horace*, &c.

4thly. A compound name commonly does not change it's termination; as, *Petronius Priscus*; *Marcus Varro*, &c. But if one or other of the two names be much celebrated, it commonly follows the genius of the French tongue; as, *Jules-César*, *Marc-Antoine*, *Quinte-Curce*, &c. If the name be composed of three, the two first never change their termination; as, *Marcus Tullius Cicéron*; *Caius-Julius-César*, &c.

### *Nuage, Nuée, Nue.*

These words, taken in a proper sense, signify nearly the same thing; but, when they are taken in a figurative sense, they are not used indifferently, and as synonymous expressions; for we say, to extol somebody to the skies, *élever quelqu'un jusqu'aux nues*, and not, *nuages*; and we say, truth dissipates the clouds of error, *la vérité dissipe les nuages de l'erreur*, and not *nues*; the clouds which darken the understanding, *les magues qui offusquent l'entendement*; a cloud of dust, *un nuage de poussière*.

We say, figuratively, he has a mist before his eyes, *il a un nuage devant les yeux*, and not *nue*.

To wear out a man's patience, to put him into a passion, *faire sauter quelqu'un aux nues*, and not *nuages*.

To be extremely surprised and astonished, *tomber des nues*, and not *nuages*.

We say of a person who is out of countenance, not knowing to whom he is to address himself in a company, *il semble tomber des nues*, and not *nuages*; and of a man who is not known to, or owned by any body, *il est tombé des nues*.

We likewise say, in a bad sense, of a man who, in his writings or discourse, soars in such a manner as to lose himself, and make others lose the main subject of his writings or speech, *il se perd dans les nues*, and not *nuages*.

We say, in a figurative sense, *une nuée se forme, la nuée crovera*, and not *nuage*, nor *nue*, to express that an enterprise, a plot, a conspiracy, a punishment, or a war, &c., is ready, and near breaking out.

We likewise make use of the word *nuée*, to express a multitude of persons, birds, or animals, that are supposed to be in flocks; as, there came a cloud of barbarians, who laid waste the country; *il vint une nuée de barbares qui désolèrent tout le pays*; a multitude of witnesses, *une nuée de témoins*, and not *un nuage* or *nue*.

Generally speaking, we make use of the word *nuage*, when speaking of what dims the sight, and hinders it from seeing objects distinctly. It is likewise used to express the doubt, the uncertainty, or ignorance of the mind.

### Original.

This word, used adjectively, is said of something new, not done after a model; as, an original picture, *un tableau original*; that is not a copy, it is original; *cela n'est pas imité, cela est original*.

We likewise say *pensée originale*, a new thought, a thought not taken from any author.

When this word is used substantively, it is said, of things which are the first in their kind, and are not copied after others; such are master-pieces of art, ancient manuscript, or letters written or signed by those who are the authors of them; as, this picture is an original; *ce tableau est un original*; *l'original Hébreu*; *l'original d'une lettre*.

We likewise say, speaking in mockery, of a ninny and ridiculous fellow, *c'est un original*.

This word is likewise used in a good sense, speaking seriously; as, it is after so great an original, than Plato become a philosopher; *c'est sur un si grand original, que*

*Platon est devenu philosophe.* In this sense it is always attended by an adjective expressing the meaning of it.

This word is likewise used in speaking of languages, of texts, or of writings; as, *les langues originales, les textes originaux, les pièces originales.*

*Original* is sometimes applied to a person, whose picture has been drawn; thus, on seeing a picture, you may say: I like the original better than the copy; *j'aime mieux l'original que la copie.*

### *Part, Partie.*

These two words, signifying a part, a share, a portion of a whole, have several odd constructions, and are not to be used indifferently the one for the other. We say *une partie d'un livre, une partie du corps humain*, a part of a book, a part of the human body; *une part d'enfant dans la succession*, a child's portion in the succession.

As these words are used several ways in a proper sense, it will not be amiss to set the most part down, without the English annexed to them, as these words are easily understood, when a learner comes so far as to learn this part.

We say: *on a fait trois parts de tout le bien de la succession. Quand il y a tant d'héritiers, les parts sont petites. Voilà votre part, et voici la mienne, &c. Céder sa part. Prendre sa part. Il a eu tant pour sa part et portion. Donnez-moi ma part. Prendre sa part. Le plus fort fait la part au plus foible. Il en a eu tant à sa part, tant pour sa part. Entrer en part avec quelqu'un, être de part avec lui. S'il y a du profit, j'en aurai ma part, &c.* and not *partie*.

We say: *partie d'un corps politique. Le tout est plus grand que sa partie. Les parties subtiles, grossières, homogènes, hétérogènes, &c. L'union des parties, l'arrangement des parties. Les quatre parties du monde. Ce prince perdit une partie de son royaume. Cette grammaire est en quatre parties. Une partie de l'armée étoit encore campée, l'autre étoit en marche. Il n'avoit qu'une partie de ses troupes. Il avoit tant d'argent, mais il en a donné une partie. Il a vendu une partie de ses livres. Il a employé une partie de sa vie à cela, &c.* and not *part*.



We say indifferently *la plupart*, *la plus grande part*, *la plus grande partie*, to express the greatest number, the most part.

Beside the foregoing irregularities, *part* and *partie* are used, both in a proper and figurative sense, in several other expressions, the chief of which are to be met with in dictionaries.

### *Parti,*

This word joined to the verb *prendre* has many significations.

*Prendre parti* signifies to turn soldier; in this sense it is commonly followed by the verb *régiment*; as, *il a pris parti dans un tel régiment*. It likewise signifies to engage in a person's service; but then we express with whom; as, he has engaged himself in the service of my Lord N., *il a pris parti avec milord N.*

*Prendre son parti* signifies to resolve, to take a final resolution; as, *j'ai pris mon parti*, I am resolved upon it. When it is used in this sense, it is followed by nothing else, and the verb *prendre* and the possessive pronoun which follows must relate to the same person; but when they relate to different persons, it signifies to defend, to take a person's part; as, I took his part, *j'ai pris son parti*.

*Prendre un parti* likewise signifies to take a resolution, with this difference, that it requires always after it either an adjective or a personal pronoun, to make a complete sense; as, *il a pris un parti avantageux*, or *un parti qui est avantageux*, he took an advantageous resolution.

*Prendre le parti* signifies to take a resolution, to choose, and is commonly followed either by a verb in the infinitive mood preceded by *de*, or by a relative pronoun: as, I choose to be silent; *j'ai pris le parti de me taire*.

When *prendre le parti* is followed by a noun in the second case, it signifies to defend, to protect; as, we ought to protect oppressed innocence; *il faut prendre le parti de l'innocence opprimée*.

*Prendre le parti*, followed by a noun in the second



case, likewise signifies to embrace a calling, profession, &c.; thus we say *prendre le parti de l'église, le parti des armes, le parti de la robe*, to turn clergyman, soldier, lawyer.

*Passer:*

This verb is liable to several irregularities. We say sometimes indifferently *passer* and *se passer*; *le temps passe*, or *le temps se passe*, time passes away; *la beauté passe*, or *la beauté se passe bien vite*, beauty fades very soon. In this sense it is conjugated in its compound tenses by the auxiliary *être*; as, *le temps est passé*.

However, the one is sometimes better used than the other. When we speak of beauty in general, we lay *la beauté passe*; but, when we speak of a handsome person, whose beauty decays, it is better to say, *sa beauté se passe*.

We say *des couleurs qui se passent*, preferably to *des couleurs qui passent*, colours that fade.

When we speak of time, merely to express the rapidity with which it flies away, and without mentioning in what manner we spend it, we say *le temps passe*; *les jours passent*; *les années passent*.

But when we speak of time with relation to the use we make of it, we say *se passer*; one part of our life flies away in desiring the future, and the other part in lamenting the past; *une partie de notre vie se passe à désirer l'avenir, l'autre, à regretter le passé*.

We do not say indifferently *il est passé* and *il a passé*, he is gone by.

When *passer* has either a case governed, or relation to places or persons, we say *il a passé*, either in a proper or figurative sense; as, he passed this way, *il a passé par ici*; the troops have passed through Germany; *les troupes ont passé par l'Allemagne*.

*Passer* is conjugated in it's compound tenses, by the help of the verb *avoir*, when it is used in the figurative sense, and has a relation to something; as, after his second part he passed to his conclusion; *après son second point il a passé à sa conclusion*.

When *passer* has neither a case governed, nor relation, it is conjugated by the help of *être*; as, the troops have passed by; *les troupes sont passées*.

The two following expressions, *a passé, est passé* speaking of words or expressions used in a language, have a quite contrary signification; as, for example, *ce mot a passé*, signifies that this word took, or was received into use; whereas the other expression, *ce mot est passé*, signifies, that this word is obsolete, and quite out of use.

Generally the word *passer* is conjugated in it's compound tenses with the verb *avoir*, when it is used actively.

Likewise, when it signifies to be reputed, accounted for, though in this sense it is not used actively; as Cromwell was reputed the greatest politician of his age; *Cromwell a passé pour le plus grand politique de son siècle*.

### *Passionner.*

*Passionné*, used adjectively, is said both of persons, and things which have relation to persons; as, *une homme passionné; des sentimens passionnés; des expressions passionnées: un air passionné*.

When this word is said of things, it never has a case governed after it; as *des sentimens passionnés, &c.* But if it be said of persons, sometimes it has a case, sometimes not; when it has no case, it is commonly taken in a bad sense; as, *un homme passionné*, a passionate man; when it has a case after it, it signifies fond of a thing, and then it has a good or bad sense according to its case; as, *un homme passionné pour la volupté, pour la gloire, pour l'honneur, &c.* a man fond of pleasure, of glory, of honour.

### *Personnage.*

This word is applied only to men, not to women; as, the greatest men of antiquity, *les plus grands personnages de l'antiquité*; he is one of the most illustrious men of this age, *c'est un des plus illustres personnages de ce siècle*.

We say, in familiar discourse, in ridicule of a person, *c'est un sot personnage, c'est un ridicule personnage*, he is a silly fellow, a ridiculous man.

When *personnage* is preceded by the definite article, without some modifying word before or after it, it is commonly taken in a bad sense; as, I know the fellow, *je connois le personnage*.

### *Peinture, Portrait, Tableau.*

These three words, when they are taken figuratively, have the same sense, and signify a description, a picture of some person or thing; but when they are taken in a proper sense, they signify different things.

The first is said, 1st, of what is painted upon a wall, wainscot, &c.; 2dly, of the art of painting; 3dly, of the colour in general which is made use of in painting.

The second is said of a picture, which is drawn to represent any thing after life.

The third is said of any picture upon wood, cloth, brass, &c., representing a history, landscape, building, hunting, storm, shipwreck, &c. Even what is drawn after a statue, bust, medal, &c., is called *tableau*, and not *portrait*, the latter always signifying a picture drawn after life.

### *Persuader.*

When this verb signifies to convince, it commonly governs the first case of the person, and the second case of the thing; as, I have convinced him of this truth; *je l'ai persuadé de cette vérité*; he convinced me of the sincerity of his intentions, *il m'a persuadé de la sincérité de ses intentions*.

But when this verb signifies to advise, it governs the third case of the person, and is always followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, preceded by the preposition *de*; as, I will advise him to go thither; *je lui persuaderai d'y aller*; I have advised him to study; *je lui ai persuadé d'étudier*.

*Perturbateur.*

This word is not joined with all sorts of substantives. We say *un perturbateur du repos public, de l'état, de l'église*; a disturber of public repose, of the state, of the church; but we do not say *un perturbateur du peuple*, a disturber of the people.

Likewise we say *troubler le repos public, l'ordre, l'état, l'église, un royaume*, to disturb public repose, order, the state, the church, a kingdom; but we do not say *troubler le peuple, un état, une province*, to disturb the people, a state, a province; though we say *exciter des troubles parmi le peuple*, to excite disturbances among the people; *exciter des troubles dans un état, dans une province, &c.*

According to the FRENCH ACADEMY, *perturbateur* is scarcely used but in this phrase, *perturbateur du repos public*.

*Piquer (se).*

This verb signifies, 1st, to be offended, to be angry at; as, he is offended at the least thing, *il se pique de la moindre chose*.

2dly. It signifies to pretend to, to set up for; as, a truly learned man knows every thing, and pretends to nothing; *un homme véritablement savant sait tout, et ne se pique de rien*; he pretends to write and speak well, *il se pique de bien écrire et de bien parler*.

We say of a man, who has displayed his generosity in emulation of another; *il s'est piqué d'honneur*. This verb, in the three foregoing cases, is always followed by the preposition *de*.

*Politesse.*

This word is used in a figurative sense only; for we say: the politeness of the court; *la politesse de la cour*; and we do not say, *la politesse des perles, la politesse du marbre*, but *le poli*; though we say, *du marbre poli*, polished marble.

What we have said of the word *politesse* may be applied to many other substantives, which are used only



in a figurative sense, though the adjective from which they are derived is used both in a proper and figurative sense; such are, among others, *tendresse*, *droiture*. Though we say, *du pain tendre*, new bread, and *colonne droite*, a straight column; yet we do not say, *la tendresse du pain*, *la droiture d'une colonne*.

### *Précis.*

When this word is used adjectively, it signifies precise, fixed; as, a fixed time, *temps précis*; a fixed day, *jour précis*; a fixed hour, *heure précise*.

We say of a man who is concise and exact in his discourses: *il est fort précis dans ses discours*; what you say is very plain, *ce que vous dites là est fort précis*.

But when it is used substantively, it signifies the substance, the summary, of what is the main, the chief, the most important thing in an affair, science, book, &c.; as, there is the whole substance of this book; *voilà tout le précis de ce livre*.

### *Près de, Prêt à.*

These two expressions followed by a verb are very often mistaken one for the other, even by authors of repute.

*Près de* signifies near, at the point of: he is at the point of death, *il est près de mourir*.

*Prêt à* signifies prepared, disposed; as, he is prepared to die, *il est prêt à mourir*.

### *Propre.*

When this word signifies fit, good, apt, it is followed either by the preposition *à* or *pour*; as, a man fit for war, *un homme propre à la guerre*; or, *pour la guerre*; an herb good for healing wounds, *un herbe propre à guérir des plaies*; or, *pour guérir des plaies*.

However, when it is followed by an active verb having a passive signification, it is always followed by *à*; as, a truth fit to be preached, *une vérité propre à prêcher*; fruit good to be preserved, *du fruit propre à confire*, or, *à être confit*.

When *propre* is taken substantively, it signifies a particular quality, which distinguishes a thing from all others; as, the property of birds is to fly; *le propre des oiseaux est de voler.*

### *Raillerie.*

When this word is used with the verb *entendre*, and without any article, as, *entendre raillerie*, it signifies to give a good interpretation to raillery, not to be offended at any thing.

When it is used with the same verb *entendre*, and with the definite article, as, *entendre la raillerie*, it signifies to be acquainted with the art of raillery; as, *il entend la raillerie.*

We sometimes say, *raillerie à part*, seriously, in earnest.

### *Recherche.*

This word is not equally applied to all things; for we do not say, *faire la recherche d'une chose perdu, d'une chose égarée*, to inquire after a thing that is lost or mislaid; though we say, *faire la recherche de la vie de quelqu'un*, to make an inquiry into the life and actions of a person; *faire la recherche d'une fille*, to court a girl for a wife. In this sense we likewise say, *rechercher une fille en mariage*, or only *rechercher*.

We do not say, in a proper sense, the seeking after the treasures which the sea encloses in its depths, *la recherche des trésors que la mer renferme dans ses abîmes*. However, we say, in a figurative sense, *la recherche des biens de la terre et des trésors*, the pursuit after wealth and treasures.

We likewise say *les recherches de l'antiquité*, the inquiry into antiquity; *il faut toujours travailler à la recherche de la vérité*, we should always be occupied in the search of truth.

It is applied likewise to curious researches; as, this book is full of curious inquiries; *ce livre est plein de recherches curieuses.*

Though we do not say of a thing lost or mislaid, *faire la recherche*; yet we may make use of *rechercher*, to

seek again, to look for a second time ; as, you did not seek well every where, you must seek again ; *vous n'avez pas bien cherché partout, il faut rechercher.*

### *Réglé, Régulier.*

These two words have many odd constructions. They are both said of persons and things, but with different significations.

We say for a man regular in his study and conduct ; *un homme réglé dans ses études, et dans sa conduite.*

We likewise say *des mœurs réglées*, good manners ; *une vie réglée*, a pure and innocent life ; *une horloge bien réglée*, a clock that goes well ; *un repas réglé*, a repast not too expensive ; *des heures réglées*, stated hours, &c.

We say, *une femme très-pieuse et très-régulière* ; *sa conduite a toujours été fort régulière* ; to express, that a woman is very pious and regular in her conduct. We do not say, in this sense, *c'est une femme réglée* ; this word has quite a different meaning ; however, we say, *c'est un homme réglé*, he is a sober man.

We say *régulier* of things done in an uniform and regular manner, particularly of those which are done according to the rules of art. Thus we say, *une procédure régulière*, a regular proceeding ; *une beauté régulière*, a regular beauty ; *un mouvement régulier*, a great and uniform motion ; *verbes réguliers* ; *bâtiment régulier*, *Les mouvements réguliers des corps célestes*, &c.

*Dérégulé* is the contrary of *réglé* ; it is applied, 1st, to matters of morality ; as, *un homme déréglé*, a disorderly man ; *des mœurs déréglées*, *une vie déréglée*, disorderly manners, or life ; 2dly, to things which are not according to the ordinary course of nature and art ; thus we say, *un temps déréglé*, *avoir le pouls déréglé*, *une horloge déréglée*, *une montre déréglée*.

*Irrégulier* is the contrary of *régulier*. It is scarcely applied to persons, but in ecclesiastical matters. It signifies one who, by reason of some misdemeanor, some natural defect, or some ecclesiastical law, cannot be admitted into orders, or officiate if he be in orders.

However, *irrégulier* is frequently used in speaking of

things ; as, *une procédure irrégulière, un bâtiment irrégulier, un discours irrégulier, des manières irrégulières, fortification irrégulière, poème irrégulier, &c.*

### Rendre.

*Rendre justice à quelqu'un* signifies to do a man justice, to give him his due. *Rendre la justice* signifies to exercise or to administer justice.

This verb is never followed by a participle passive ; as, for these are the means to make you known, we must not say, *c'est le moyen de vous rendre connu* ; but, *de vous faire connoître*.

Some French authors have put a participle after this verb, as, for example, one of them says, *la vertu rend chéri de Dieu*, virtue makes you beloved by God.

Such expressions are very faulty. The verb *rendre*, in this sense, is to be joined only with pure adjectives ; as, *bon, amiable, illustre, ridicule, odieux, célèbre, &c.* or with substantives.

Neither do we say, with a certain French author, *rendre la guérison*, to cure a person ; because people had no cure before they were sick ; and we use, in this sense, the verb *rendre*, only speaking of things which are lost, or of which we have been deprived.

Hence it follows, that we may say *rendre la santé*, to restore health ; *rendre la vie*, to restore life, because we enjoy health and life before we are deprived of them. Thus too we say, *rendre la vue, les forces, la liberté, l'appétit*.

### Richesse.

This word, used in the singular, signifies sometimes opulence, riches ; as, commerce makes all the riches of that country, *le commerce fait toute la richesse de ce pays-là*. Sometimes it signifies, in poetry, the exactness and justness of the rhymes ; as, the exactness of rhyme contributes a great deal to the beauty of poetry ; *la richesse de la rime contribue beaucoup à la beauté de la poésie*.

Sometimes it signifies the copiousness of a language, as the copiousness of the English language ; *la richesse de la langue Angloise*.



*Richesses*, in the plural, and in a proper sense, always signifies great riches.

*Satisfaire.*

This verb sometimes governs the first case, and sometimes the third. There are some occasions, on which it governs the first case, and not the third; as, all the wealth in the world is not able to satisfy the human heart, *tous les biens du monde ne sont pas capables de satisfaire le cœur humain.*

We likewise say, *satisfaire ses passions, sa colère, son ambition, sa vanité, sa curiosité, &c.*; and not *satisfaire à ses passions, &c.*; to satisfy, to content our passions, anger, ambition, &c.

There are some others, on which it governs the third, and not the first case; as, *satisfaire à son devoir*, to discharge our duty; *satisfaire à une obligation*, to acquit an obligation; *satisfaire aux personnes qu'on a offensées*, to make reparation to persons we have offended.

However, we say, in the first case, *satisfaire les personnes à qui on doit*, to pay people to whom we are indebted.

The general rule to know whether *satisfaire* govern the first or the third case, is this; when it is used in the sense of to pay or content, it governs the first case; and when it is used in the sense of make reparation, or discharge a duty, it governs the third case.

*Supplier.*

Though this word be more respectful and submissive than *prier*, yet we do not say *supplier Dieu*, to beseech God; we say *prier Dieu*. However, speaking to God, we say with propriety, *je te supplie, ô mon Dieu! nous te supplions, ô Dieu de miséricorde!*

Such is the caprice of custom in the use of this word, that we dare not employ the word *prier*, speaking of a king, or of persons of a much higher station than ours; though we use it speaking of God; for we do not say, *prier le roi*, but *supplier le roi*.

*Tel.*

Some persons say *j'aime tous les bons livres, tels qu'ils soient*; I like all good books, whatever they may be. But this is wrong: we ought to say *quels qu'ils soient*; for *tels qu'ils soient* would signify such as they are. Moreover it governs the indicative, and not the subjunctive mood; consequently, it should be, *tels qu'ils sont*.

*Vaillant. Valant.*

These two words are subject to the caprice of custom. There are some cases where we make use of the first, and others where we make use of the second; as, for example, we say: *il a cent mille écus vaillant*, he is worth a hundred thousand crowns; *il a en meubles dix mille écus vaillant*, his personal estate is worth ten thousand crowns. But we say, *je lui ai donné dix tableaux valant deux guinées la pièce*, and not *vaillant*; I have given him ten pictures worth two guineas a piece.

When it signifies what a man is worth, either in his real or personal estate, we make use of *vaillant*; but, when it implies what a thing is worth, we make use of *valant*. This reflection may easily be applied to the foregoing examples.

*Veiller.*

*Veiller une personne*, to watch a person, has two different significations: it signifies to spend a night with a sick person to take care of him: it likewise signifies to watch, to observe, to have a watchful eye upon a person.

In this sense we likewise say *veiller sur une personne, sur les actions, sur la conduite de quelqu'un*.

*Veiller* governs sometimes the third case; it then signifies to take care, and is properly applied only to things: as, *je veillerai à vos affaires*, I will take care of your affairs.

*Venir à bout.*

When this verb is applied to things; as, *venir à bout d'une chose*, it signifies to bring a thing about, to succeed; as, *il est venu à bout de son dessein*.

When it is applied to persons, it signifies sometimes to reclaim a person; as, this child cannot be reclaimed, *on ne sauroit venir à bout de cet enfant.*

Sometimes it signifies to overcome a man's enemies; as, *il viendra à bout de tous ses ennemis.*

### *Vent.*

Though we say, with the article, *vent du nord*, north wind; *vent du sud*, south wind; yet we say, with the preposition *de* only, *vent d'est*, east wind; *vent d'ouest*, west wind.

### *Ville.*

We say in familiar discourse of a person, *il est à la ville*, to express that he is not in the country; and *il est en ville*, that he is not at home, when we are speaking.

### *Vin.*

We say *vin de Bourgogne*, *de Champagne*, *d'Espagne*, *de Portugal*, *de Piémont*, &c.; and we say, *vin du Rhin*, and not *vin de Rhin*.

### *Vouloir.*

This word, which commonly signifies to be willing, to have a mind to, has several other significations: it signifies first, to command; as, the king commands you to obey, *le roi veut que vous obéissiez.*

Secondly, to desire, to wish; as, they will give you whatever you desire; *on vous donnera tout ce que vous voudrez.*

Thirdly, to consent, to agree; as, yes, I consent to it, *oui, je le veux bien*; if you agree to it, he will likewise; *si vous le voulez, il le voudra aussi.*

Fourthly, a necessity; as, this affair must be conducted with prudence; *cette affaire veut être conduite avec prudence*; this picture must be seen in its proper light, *ce tableau veut être vu dans son jour.*

When the word *bien*, preceded by the article, is added to it, it signifies to have a regard for somebody, to wish him well; as, *il vous veut du bien.* When the word

*mal* is added to it, it signifies the contrary; as, *il vous veut du mal*.

We say *en vouloir à quelqu'un*, to express a desire of hurting somebody; as, I know that he seeks to injure you, *je sais qu'il vous en veut*.

We say *à qui en voulez-vous?* Whom do you ask, whom do you look for? *A qui en veut-il?* What ails him? What does he complain of?

*Que veut dire cet homme* signifies, what means this man? What does he want? And, to express mere surprise, we sometimes say *que veut dire cela?* What is that? In the same manner, we say, of words or things which we do not understand, *que veut dire ce mot?* *Que veut dire ce procédé?*

### Vue.

This word, besides it's various significations, which are to be met with in dictionaries, has several others. *Perdre une chose de vue*, signifies to cease to see a thing; as, *le vaisseau s'éloigna en peu de temps, et nous le perdîmes de vue*. We likewise say of an affair, *on l'a perdue de vue*, to express that we do not know how it has gone on.

*Avoir vue sur quelqu'un* signifies, in a figurative sense, to have a right to observe somebody, in order to rule and conduct him; and *avoir la vue sur quelqu'un* signifies to have a watchful eye upon somebody, to watch his conduct. We say, *avoir des vues pour quelqu'un*, to have a design to procure somebody an advantage; *avoir des vues sur quelqu'un*, to have a design to employ him to do something; and *avoir des vues sur quelque chose*, to have a design to obtain a thing.

There are some other practical irregularities; the greater part of which have been noticed in the third part of this Grammar.

THE END.



# *Of the Publishers of this Grammar*

MAY BE HAD THE FOLLOWING

## **B O O K S,**

**BY THE SAME AUTHOR.**

---

1. **EXERCISES**, Entertaining and Instructive, with the Rules of the French Syntax. The Twelfth Edition, revised and corrected agreeably to the Thirteenth Edition of the Author's Grammar, by C. GROS. Price 3s. 6d. bound.

This Edition is improved, by adding some Cards and familiar Letters; likewise an Index to assist the Pupil in learning his Exercises.

2. **A NEW METHOD** of learning the Spelling and Pronunciation of the FRENCH LANGUAGE. In Two Parts.—Part I. Containing French Words arranged in Alphabetical Order, with their Significations in English, &c —Part II. A clear and concise Introduction to the Grammar, a Vocabulary of Words most generally used in both Languages, some familiar Phrases and short Dialogues, serving as an Introduction to the Elements of Conversation, and a New Dialogue upon Geography. A New Edition, revised and corrected, by C. GROS. Price 2s. bound.

3. **ELEMENTS OF FRENCH CONVERSATION**, with Familiar and Easy Dialogues, each preceded by a suitable Vocabulary in English and French. The Seventeenth Edition, revised and corrected, by C. GROS. Price 1s. 6d. bound.

4. **THE FRENCH VERBS**, Regular and Irregular, alphabetically conjugated, with Figures and preliminary Observations, in a new, plain, and easy Manner. Principally designed for those who are taught privately, to avoid the tedious learning of the Verbs. Price 1s. 6d.

5. Likewise the particular and common Terminations of all the French Verbs, engraved on an Octavo-page. Price 6d.

6. **FABLES AMUSANTES**; avec un Table générale et particulière des Mots, et de leur Signification en Anglois, selon l'ordre des Fables, pour en rendre la Traduction plus facile à l'Ecolier. Quinzième Edition. Price 2s. 6d. bound.

7. FRENCH PRONUNCIATION, alphabetically exhibited, with Spelling Vocabularies, and new Fables. French and English. By C. GROS. Price 2s.

8. FRENCH DELECTUS; consisting of a Variety of short Sentences, Historical Anecdotes, Geographical Descriptions, and Passages from Natural History and Philosophy, intermixed with Pieces of Poetry; on a Plan similar to that of Dr. Valpy's Latin Delectus. By JAMES FOLEY, of the University of Paris, Classical Master, and, during some Years past, Teacher of the French Language at Reading School. Price 2s. bound.

9. INTRODUCTION à la CONNOISSANCE de la NATURE; et à la Lecture de l'Ecriture Sainte. Par Mrs. TRIMMER. Traduite de la Treizième Edition. Par C. GROS. Price 2s. bound.

10. VISITE D'UNE SEMAINE. Ouvrage Traduit de l'Anglois. Par J. E. Le FEBVRE. Prix 4s. 6d. relié.

11. LETTRES DE MADAME DU MONTIER, recueillies par MADAME LE PRINCE DE BEAUMONT, Auteur du Magasin des Enfans, des Adolescentes, &c. Nouvelle Edition, Soigneusement revue et corrigée d'après les Meilleures Editions de France. Prix 5s. relié.

12. AN INTRODUCTION to the EPISTOLARY STYLE of the FRENCH; or a Selection of Familiar Notes and Letters in French; for the Use of Schools. With an alphabetical Index explanatory of the Words and idiomatical Expressions. By GEORGE SAULEZ, D.F.I.M. Farnham, Surry; Author of Theory and Practice of the French Language, and several other School Books. Price 3s. bound.

13. FIRST STEP TO FRENCH CONVERSATION; in two Parts. 1. New methodical Vocabulary of the most useful Words. 2. A Series of Lessons, containing the most common Phrases. By C. GROS. Price 2s. 6d. bound.

14. NEW ELEMENTS OF CONVERSATION; in two Parts. 1. The several ways of saluting, addressing, enquiring, &c. 2. Familiar Dialogues, on the most interesting Subjects. By C. GROS. Price 2s. 6d. bound.

15. A FRENCH DICTIONARY, on a Plan entirely new; wherein all the Words are so arranged and divided as to render their Pronunciation both easy and accurate. With an Index pointing out the Place of each: producing what in the Author's opinion was necessary and wanting toward the perfect Knowledge of this Language. By WILLIAM SMITH, A.M. Price 3s. 6d. boards.









Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process  
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide  
Treatment Date: Sept. 2006

**PreservationTechnologies**

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive  
Cranberry Township, PA 16066  
(724) 779-2111



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 582 3

